The Herbal
Or
General History of Plants
By
John Gerard
and
Thomas Johnson

Volume 4
(Book 2 Part 3)

Published by the Ex-classics Project, 2020
http://www.exclassics.com
Public Domain
CHAP. 430. Of Wild and Water Hemlocks .............................................................. 278
CHAP. 429. Of Hemlocks, or Herb Bennet .............................................................. 274
CHAP. 428. Of Dropwort, or Filipendula ................................................................. 270
CHAP. 427. Of Herb Ferula, or Fennel-Giant .......................................................... 266
CHAP. 426. Of Harstrang or Sulphurwort ................................................................ 262
CHAP. 425. Of Spignel, Spicknel, or Meu ............................................................... 260
CHAP. 424. Of Seselios, or Heartwort of Candy ..................................................... 257
CHAP. 423. Of Siler Mountain or Bastard Lovage .................................................. 255
CHAP. 422. Of English Saxifrage ............................................................................ 253
CHAP. 421. Of Burnet .............................................................................................. 250
CHAP. 420. Of Burnet Saxifrage ............................................................................ 247
CHAP. 419. Of Meadow-Sweet, or Queen of the Meadows .................................... 245
CHAP. 418. Of Toothpick Chervil ........................................................................... 243
CHAP. 417. Of Shepherd's Needle or Wild Chervil ............................................... 241
CHAP. 416. Of Chervil ............................................................................................. 237
CHAP. 415. Of Bishop's Weed, Herb-William, or Ameos ....................................... 234
CHAP. 414. Of Anise ............................................................................................... 231
CHAP. 413. Of Caraway .......................................................................................... 230
CHAP. 412. Of Dill .................................................................................................. 228
CHAP. 411. Of Fennel .............................................................................................. 226
CHAP. 410. Of Stinking and Deadly Carrots ........................................................... 223
CHAP. 409. Of Candy Carrots ................................................................................. 221
CHAP. 408. Of Wild Carrot .................................................................................... 219
CHAP. 407. Of Carrots ............................................................................................. 217
CHAP. 406. Of Skirret .............................................................................................. 215
CHAP. 405. Of Parsnips .......................................................................................... 213
CHAP. 404. Of Candy Alexanders .......................................................................... 211
CHAP. 403. Of Bastard Parsley ............................................................................. 207
CHAP. 402. Of Wild Parsley .................................................................................... 205
CHAP. 401. Of Alexanders ...................................................................................... 203
CHAP. 400. Of Corn Parsley, or Honewort .............................................................. 201
CHAP. 399. Of Stone Parsley of Macedonia ............................................................ 199
CHAP. 398. Of Mountain Parsley ............................................................................ 197
CHAP. 397. Of Water Parsley, or Smallage ............................................................. 195
CHAP. 396. Of Parsley ............................................................................................ 193
CHAP. 395. Of Coriander ......................................................................................... 191
CHAP. 394. Of Herb Frankincense .......................................................................... 188
CHAP. 393. Of Cow Parsnip .................................................................................... 186
CHAP. 392. Of Common Lovage ............................................................................ 184
CHAP. 391. Of Magydare, or Laserwort ................................................................. 181
CHAP. 390. Of Clown's Woundwort or All-Heal ..................................................... 178
CHAP. 389. Of Hercules' Woundwort, or All-Heal .................................................. 176
CHAP. 388. Of Masterwort and Herb Gerard .......................................................... 173
CHAP. 387. Of Angelica ......................................................................................... 169
CHAP. 386. Of Strawberries .................................................................................... 166
CHAP. 385. Of Avens, or Herb Bennet ................................................................... 162
CHAP. 384. Of Wild Tansy or Silverweed ............................................................... 160
CHAP. 383. Of Septfoil, or Tormentil ...................................................................... 158
CHAP. 382. Of Cinquefoil, or Five-Finger Grass ..................................................... 150
CHAP. 381. Of Toothed Violets or Coralworts ....................................................... 147
CHAP. 380. Of Herb Tagetes, or Tagetes ................................................................ 144
CHAP. 379. Of Herba Spina Coeli, or St. John's Wort .......................................... 141
CHAP. 378. Of Forest Aloe ..................................................................................... 138
CHAP. 377. Of Agasa, or Chelidonium ................................................................. 134
CHAP. 376. Of Pettyfort, or Euphorbia ................................................................. 131
CHAP. 375. Of Quassia, or Senna ............................................................................ 128
CHAP. 374. Of Asarum, or Wild Ginger ................................................................. 125
CHAP. 373. Of Kalmia, or Balsamroot ................................................................. 122
CHAP. 372. Of Equisetum, or Horsetail ................................................................. 119
CHAP. 371. Of Oud, or Frankincense .................................................................... 116
CHAP. 370. Of Celandine, or Wood Anemone ....................................................... 113
CHAP. 369. Of Erysimum, or Honesty .................................................................... 110
CHAP. 368. Of Paeonia, or Peony .......................................................................... 107
CHAP. 367. Of Malva, or Malva ............................................................................. 104
CHAP. 366. Of Parnassus ....................................................................................... 101
CHAP. 365. Of Cannabis, or Hemp ....................................................................... 98
CHAP. 364. Of Cannabis Sativa.............................................................................. 95
CHAP. 363. Of Sucea, or Guinness ....................................................................... 92
CHAP. 362. Of Skunkgrass .................................................................................... 89
CHAP. 361. Of Blackberry ..................................................................................... 86
CHAP. 360. Of Wild Garlic .................................................................................... 83
CHAP. 359. Of Salad Burnet ................................................................................... 80
CHAP. 358. Of Salad Burnet Grass ....................................................................... 77
CHAP. 357. Of Origanum, or Oregano .................................................................. 74
CHAP. 356. Of Anise ............................................................................................... 71
CHAP. 355. Of Fennel ............................................................................................. 68
CHAP. 354. Of Cuminum, or Cumin ...................................................................... 65
CHAP. 353. Of Galium, or Bedstraw ...................................................................... 62
CHAP. 352. Of Salvia, or Sage ................................................................................ 59
CHAP. 351. Of Thymus, or Thyme ........................................................................ 56
CHAP. 350. Of Canada Thyme ................................................................................ 53
CHAP. 349. Of Tussilago, or Hemlock ................................................................. 50
CHAP. 348. Of Cephalis, or Rampion ................................................................. 47
CHAP. 347. Of Camelthorn .................................................................................... 44
CHAP. 346. Of Chickweed ...................................................................................... 41
CHAP. 345. Of Bluebells ......................................................................................... 38
CHAP. 344. Of Hemlock ......................................................................................... 35
CHAP. 343. Of Water Hemlock ............................................................................. 32
CHAP. 342. Of Common Hemlock .......................................................................... 29
CHAP. 341. Of Oregon Hemlock ........................................................................... 26
CHAP. 340. Of Wild and Water Hemlocks .............................................................. 23

Gerard's Herbal

-3-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>447</td>
<td>Of Wall-Fern</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446</td>
<td>Of Water-Fern, or Osmund the Waterman</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>445</td>
<td>Of Fumitory</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>444</td>
<td>Of Cockle</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Of Lady's Bedstraw</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442</td>
<td>Of Lark's Heel, or Larkspur</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441</td>
<td>Of Mountain Setwall, or Nardus</td>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>440</td>
<td>Of Valerian, or Setwall</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>439</td>
<td>Of Holy Wormwood</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>438</td>
<td>Of Oak of Jerusalem, and Oak of Cappadocia</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>437</td>
<td>Of Sea-Grape</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436</td>
<td>Of Madder</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>435</td>
<td>Of Sea-Wormwood</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>434</td>
<td>Of Wormwood</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>433</td>
<td>Of Sperage, or Asparagus</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>432</td>
<td>Of Wild Cumin</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>431</td>
<td>Of Earthnut, Earth Chestnut, or Kipper-nut</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>447</td>
<td>Of Columbine</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446</td>
<td>Of Bulbous Fumitory, or Hollow-Root</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>445</td>
<td>Of Crosswort</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>444</td>
<td>Of Oak-Fern</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Of Woodruff</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442</td>
<td>Of Gith, or Nigella</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441</td>
<td>Of Lark's Heel, or Larkspur</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>440</td>
<td>Of Mountain Setwall, or Nardus</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>439</td>
<td>Of Holy Wormwood</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>438</td>
<td>Of Oak of Jerusalem, and Oak of Cappadocia</td>
<td>309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>437</td>
<td>Of Sea-Grape</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>435</td>
<td>Of Sea-Wormwood</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>434</td>
<td>Of Wormwood</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>433</td>
<td>Of Sperage, or Asparagus</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>432</td>
<td>Of Wild Cumin</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>431</td>
<td>Of Earthnut, Earth Chestnut, or Kipper-nut</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>447</td>
<td>Of Wall-Fern</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>446</td>
<td>Of Water-Fern, or Osmund the Waterman</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>445</td>
<td>Of Fumitory</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>444</td>
<td>Of Cockle</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Of Lady's Bedstraw</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>442</td>
<td>Of Lark's Heel, or Larkspur</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441</td>
<td>Of Mountain Setwall, or Nardus</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>440</td>
<td>Of Valerian, or Setwall</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>439</td>
<td>Of Holy Wormwood</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>438</td>
<td>Of Oak of Jerusalem, and Oak of Cappadocia</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>437</td>
<td>Of Sea-Grape</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>436</td>
<td>Of Madder</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>435</td>
<td>Of Sea-Wormwood</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>434</td>
<td>Of Wormwood</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>433</td>
<td>Of Sperage, or Asparagus</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>432</td>
<td>Of Wild Cumin</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>431</td>
<td>Of Earthnut, Earth Chestnut, or Kipper-nut</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAP. 531. Of Rue, or Herb-Grace.................................................................578
CHAP. 332. Of Bean Capers.

This plant which the Germans call Fabago, and Dodonæus savouring of Dutch, calleth it in his last edition Capparis fabago, and properly: Lobel calleth it Capparis leguminosa: between which there is no great difference, who labour to refer this plant unto the kinds of Capers, which is but a low and base herb, and not a shrubby bush, as are the true Capers. It bringeth forth smooth stalks tender and branched, whereupon do grow long thick leaves, lesser than those of the true Capers, and not unlike to the leaves of Purslane, coming out of the branches by couples, of a light green colour. The flowers before they be opened are like to those of the precedent, but when they be come to maturity and full ripeness they wax white, with some yellow chives in the midst: which being past, there appear long cods, wherein is contained small flat seed. The root is tender, branching hither and thither.

The Place.

It groweth of itself in corn fields of the Low Countries, from whence I have received seeds for my garden, where they flourish.

The Time.

It flowereth when the Caper doth.

The Names.

It is called in Latin of the later herbarists Capparis fabago: of most, Capparis leguminosa: it is thought to be that herb which Avicenna describeth in his 28th chapter, by the name of Ardifrigi: we may content ourselves that Capparis fabago
retain that name still, and seek for none other, unless it be for an English name, by which it may be called after the Latin, Bean Caper.

The Temperature and Virtues.

Touching the faculties thereof we have nothing left in writing worth the remembrance.
CHAP. 333. Of Swallow-wort.

The Description.

1. Swallow-Wort with white flowers hath divers upright branches of a brownish colour, of the height of two cubits, beset with leaves not unlike to those of *Dulcamara* or Woody Nightshade, somewhat long, broad, sharp-pointed, of a blackish green colour, and strong savour: among which come forth very many small white flowers star-fashion, hanging upon little slender footstalks: after which come in place thereof long sharp pointed cuds, stuffed full of a most perfect white cotton resembling silk, as well in show as handling; (our London gentlewomen have named it Silken Cicely) among which is wrapped soft brownish seed. The roots are very many, white, thready, and of a strong savour.

2. The second kind is oftentimes found with stalks much longer, climbing up on props or such things as stand near unto it, attaining to the height of five or six cubits, wrapping itself upon them with many and sundry foldings: the flowers hereof are black; the leaves, cuds, and roots be like those of the former.

The Place.

Both these kinds do grow in my garden, but not wild in England; yet have I heard it reported that it groweth in the fields about Northampton, but as yet I am not certain of it.
The Time.

They flower about June, in autumn the down hangeth out of the cuds, and the seed falleth to the ground.

The Names.

It is called of the later herbarists *Vincetoxicum*: of Ruellius, *Hederalis*: in High Dutch, *Swalluwte Wortele*, that is to say in Latin *Hirundinaria*: in English, Swallow-wort: of our gentlewomen it is called Silken Cecily; Æsculapius (who is said to be the first inventer of physic, whom therefore the Greeks and Gentiles honored as a God) called it after his own name *Asclepias*, or Æsculapius' herb, for that he was the first that wrote thereof, and now it is called in shops *Hirundinaria*.

The Temperature.

The roots of Swallow-wort are hot and dry; they are thought to be good against poison.

The Virtues.

A. Dioscorides writeth, that the roots of *Asclepias* or Swallow-Wort boiled in wine, and the decoction drunk, are a remedy against the gripings of the belly, the stingings of serpents, and against deadly poison, being one of the especiallest herbs against the same.

B. The leaves boiled and applied in form of a poultice, cure the evil sores of the paps or dugs, and matrix, that are hard to be cured.
CHAP. 334. Of Indian Swallow-Wort.

The Description

1. There groweth in that part of Virginia, or Norembega, where our Englishmen dwelled (intending there to erect a certain colony) a kind of *Asclepias*, or Swallow-wort, which the Savages call *Wisank*: there riseth up from a single crooked root one upright stalk a foot high, slender, and of a greenish colour: whereupon do grow fair broad leaves sharp pointed, with many ribs or nerves running through the same like those of Ribwort or Plantain, set together by couples at certain distances. The flowers come forth at the top of the stalks, which as yet are not observed, by reason the man that brought the seeds and plants hereof did not regard them. After which, there come in place two cods (seldom more) sharp pointed like those of our Swallow-Wort, but greater, stuffed full of a most pure silk of a shining white colour: among which silk appeareth a small long tongue (which is the seed) resembling the tongue of a bird, or that of the herb called Adder's Tongue. The cods are not only full of silk, but every nerve or sinew wherewith the leaves be ribbed are likewise most pure silk; and also the pilling of the stems, even as flax is torn from his stalks. This considered, behold the justice of God, that as he hath shut up those people and nations in infidelity and nakedness, so hath he not as yet given them understanding to cover their nakedness, nor matter wherewith to do the same; notwithstanding the earth is covered over with this silk, which daily they tread under their feet, which were sufficient to apparel many kingdoms, if they were carefully manured and cherished.
2. This plant, which is kept in some gardens by the name of Virginia Silk Grass, I take to be the same, or very like the Beidelsar of Alpinus; and the Apocynum Syriacum of Clusius: at Padua they call it Esula indica by reason of the hot milky juice. Bauhinus hath very unfitly named it Lapathum aegyptiacum lactescens siliqua asclepiadis. But he is to be pardoned; for Iohannes Carolus Rosenburgus, of his Animad. Exerc. Medice, or Rosa Nobilis Iatrica, hath taken upon him the credit and invention of this absurd denomination: I may call it absurd, for that neither any way in shape or quality it resembles or participates anything with a Dock. I have given you the figure of our author with his title, and that of Clusius with his: in the former the cods are only well expressed; in the latter the leaves and flowers reasonably well, but that they are too few in number, and set too far asunder. Upon the sight of the growing and flowering plant I took this description: The root is long and creeping; the stalks two or three cubits high, square, hollow, a finger thick, and of a light green colour, sending out towards the top some few branches: upon this at certain spaces grow by couples leaves some half foot long, and three inches broad, dark green on their upper sides, more whitish below, and full of large and eminent veins: at the top of the stalk and branches it carries most commonly an hundred or more flowers, growing upon footstalks some inch long, all close thrust together after the manner of the Hyacinth of Peru at the first flowering: each flower is thus composed: first it hath five small green leaves bending back; which serve for the cup: then hath it other five leaves four times larger than the former, which bend back and cover them; and these are green on the underside, and of a pale colour with some redness above: then are there five little grains (as I may so term them) of a pleasant red colour, and on their outside like corns of Millet, but hollow on their insides, with a little thread or chive coming forth of each of them: these five ingirt a small head like a button, greenish underneath, and whitish above. I have given you the figure of one flower by the side of our author's figure. The leaves and stalks of this plant are very full of a milky juice.

The Place.

It groweth, as before is rehearsed, in the countries of Norembega, now called Virginia by the honourable Knight Sir Walter Raleigh, who hath bestowed great sums of money in the discovery thereof; where are dwelling at this present Englishmen.

The Time.

It springeth up, flowereth, and flourisheth both winter and summer, as do many or most of the plants of that country. It dies down with us every winter and comes up in the spring, and flowers in August, but never bringeth forth the cods with us, by reason of the coldness of our climate.

The Names.

The silk is used of the people of Pomeioc and other of the provinces adjoining, being parts of Virginia, to cover the secret parts of maidens that never tasted man; as in other places they use a white kind of moss Wisanck: we have thought Asclepias Virginiana, or Vinctotoxicum Indianum fit and proper names for it: in English, Virginia Swallow-Wort, or the Silk-Wort of Norembega.

The Nature and Virtues.

A. We find nothing by report, or otherwise of our own knowledge, of his physical virtues, but only report of the abundance of most pure silk wherewith the whole plant is possessed.
B. The leaves beaten either crude, or boiled in water, and applied as a poultice, are good against swellings and pains proceeding of a cold cause.

C. The milky juice, which is very hot, purges violently; and outwardly applied is good against tetters, to fetch hair off skins, if they be steeped in it, and the like.

*Alpinus.*
CHAP. 335. Of the Bombast or Cotton-Plant.

The Cotton bush is a low and base plant, having small stalks of a cubit high, and sometimes higher; divided from the lowest part to the top into sundry small branches, whereupon are set confusedly or without order a few broad leaves, cut for the most part into three sections, and sometimes more, as Nature list to bestow, somewhat indented about the edges, not unlike to the leaves of the Vine, or rather the Vervein Mallow, but lesser, softer, and of a greyish colour: among which come forth the flowers, standing upon slender footstalks, the brims or edges whereof are of a yellow colour, the middle part purple: after which appeareth the fruit, round, and of the bigness of a tennis ball, wherein is thrust together a great quantity of fine white cotton wool; among which is wrapped up black seed of the bigness of peas, in shape like the trattles or dung of a cony. The fruit being come to maturity or ripeness, the husk or cod opens itself into four parts or divisions, and casteth forth his wool and seed upon the ground, if it be not gathered in his time and season. The root is small and single, with few threads annexed thereto, and of a woody substance, as is all the rest of the plant.

The Place.

It groweth in India, in Arabia, Egypt, and in certain Islands of the Mediterranean sea, as Cyprus, Candy, Malta, Sicilia, and in other provinces of the continent adjacent. It groweth about Tripolis and Aleppo in Syria, from whence the factor of a worshipful merchant in London, Master Nicholas Lete before remembered, did send unto his said master divers pounds weight of the seed; whereof some were committed to the earth at the impression hereof, the success we leave to the Lord. Notwithstanding myself 3 years past did sow of the seed, which did grow very
frankly, but perished before it came to perfection, by reason of the cold frost that overtook it in the time of flowering.

The Time.

Cotton seed is sown in ploughed fields in the spring of the year, and reaped and cut down in harvest, even as corn with us; and the ground must be tilled and sown new again the next year, and used in such sort at we do the tillage for corn and grain: for it is a plant of one year, and perisheth when it hath perfected his fruit, as many other plants do.

The Names.

Cotton is called in Latin, Xylum, and Gossipium after the Greek; in shops, Lanugo, Bombax, and Cotum: in Italian, Bombagia: in Spanish, Algodon: in High Dutch, Baumwool: in English and French, Cotton, Bombaste and Bombace.

Theophrastus hath made mention hereof in his fourth book, cap. 9, but without a name; and he saith it is a tree in Tylus which bears wool. Neither is it any marvel if he took an unknown shrub or plant, and that groweth in countries far off, for a tree: seeing also in this age (in which very many things come to be better known than in times past) the cotton or wool hereof is called of the Germans (as we have aid) Baum wooll, that is, wool of a tree, whereas indeed it is rather an herb or small shrub, and not to be numbered among trees.

Of this Theophrastus writeth thus; It is reported that the same island (viz. Tylus) doth bring forth many trees that bear wool, which have leaves like those of the Vine, &c.

Pliny writing of the same, lib. 19. cap. 1, saith thus: The upper part of Egypt toward Arabia bringeth forth a shrub which is called Gossipion, or Xylon, and therefore the linen that is made of it is called Xylina. It is (saith he) the plant that beareth that wool wherewith the garments are made which the priests of Egypt do weave.

The Temperature.

The seed of Cotton (according to the opinion of Serapio) is hot and moist: the wool itself is hot and dry.

The Virtues.

A. The seed of Cotton is good against the cough, and for them that are short winded: it also stirreth up the lust of the body by increasing natural seed, wherefore it surpasseth.

B. The oil pressed out of the seed taketh away freckles, spots, and other blemishes of the skin.

C. The ashes of the wool burned stancheth the bleeding of wounds, used in restrictive medicines, as Bole Armeniac, (check spelling) and is more restrictive than Bole itself.

D. To speak of the commodities of the wool of this plant were superfluous, common experience, and the daily use and benefit we receive by it show them. So that it were impertinent to our history to speak of the making of fustian, bombasies, and many other things that are made of the wool thereof.

The Kinds.

There be two kinds of Dog's-banes: the one a climbing or clambering plant; the other an upright shrub.

The Description.

1. Dog's-Bane riseth up like unto a small hedge bush, upright and straight, until it have attained to a certain height; then doth it clasp and climb with his tender branches as do the Bindweeds, taking hold upon props or poles, or whatsoever standeth next unto it: whereupon do grow fair broad leaves, sharp pointed like those of the Bay tree, of a deep green colour. The flowers come forth at the top of the stalks, consisting of five small white leaves: which being past, there succeed long cods, set upon a slender footstalk by couples, joining themselves together at the extreme point, and likewise at the stalk, making of two pieces knit together one entire cod; which cod is full of such downy matter and seed as that of Asclepias, but more in quantity by reason the cods are greater; which being dry and ripe, the silken cotton hanceth forth, and by little and little shedeth, until the whole be fallen upon the ground. The whole plant yieldeth that yellow stinking milky juice that the other doth, and sometimes it is of a white colour, according to the climate where it growtheth; for the more cold the country is, the whiter is the juice; and the more hot, the yellower. The root is long and single, with some threads anexed thereto.
2. There is another Dog's-bane that hath long and slender stalks like those of the Vine, but of a brown reddish colour, wherewith it windeth itself about such things as stand near unto it, in manner of a Bindweed: whereupon are set leaves not unlike to those of the Ivy, but not so much cornered, of a dark green colour, and of a rank smell being bruised between the fingers, yielding forth a stinking yellow milky juice when it is so broken: amongst which come forth little white flowers, standing scatteringly upon little husks: after the flowers come long pods, very like unto Asclepias or Swallow-Wort, but greater, stuffed with the like soft downy silk; among which down is wrapped up flat black seed. The roots are many and thready, creeping all about within the ground, budding forth new shoots in sundry places, whereby it greatly increaseth.

The Place.

They grow naturally in Syria, and also in Italy, as Matthiolus reporteth: my loving friend John Robin, herbarist in Paris did send plants of both the kinds for my garden, where they flower and flourish; but whether they grow in France, or that he procured them from some other region, as yet I have no certain knowledge.

The Times.

They begin to bud forth their leaves in the beginning of May, and show their flowers in September.

The Names.

Dog's-Bane is called by the learned of our age Periploca: it is evident that they are to be referred to the Apocynum of Dioscorides. The former of the two hath been likewise called Brassica canina, or Dog's-Cole: notwithstanding there is another Dog's-Cole, which is a kind of wild Mercury. We may call the first Creeping Dog's-bane; and the other, Upright or Syrian Dog's-Bane.

The Temperature.

These plants are of the nature of that pestilent or poisonous herb Thora, which being eaten of dogs or any other living creature doth certainly kill them, except there be in readiness an antidote or preservative against poison, and given, which by probability is the herb described in the former chapter, called Vincetoxicum; even as Anthora is the antidote and remedy against the poison of Thora; and Herba Paris against Pardalianches.

The Virtues.

A. Dog's-bane is a deadly and dangerous plant, especially to four-footed beasts; for as Dioscorides writeth, the leaves hereof being mixed with bread and given, killeth dogs, wolves, foxes, and leopards, the use of their legs and huckle-bones being presently taken from them, and death itself followeth incontinent, and therefore not to be used in medicine.
CHAP. 337. Of Solomon's Seal.

![Fig. 1319. Solomon's Seal (1)](image1)

![Fig. 1320. Small Solomon's Seal (2)](image2)

The Description.

1. The first kind of Solomon's Seal hath long round stalks, set for the most part with long leaves somewhat furrowed and ribbed, not much unlike Plantain, but narrower, which for the most part stand all upon one side of the stalk, and hath small white flowers resembling the flowers of Lily Convall: on the other side when the flowers be faded there come forth round berries, which at the first are green, and of a black colour tending to blueness and when they be ripe be of the bigness of Ivy berries, of a very sweet and pleasant taste. The root is white and thick, full of knobs or joints, which in some places resemble the mark of a seal, whereof I think it took the name *Sigillum Solomonis*; and is sweet at the first, but afterward of a bitter taste, with some sharpness.

2. The second kind of *Polygonatum* doth not much vary from the former, saving in the leaves, which be narrower, and grow round about the stalk like a spur, in fashion like unto Woodruff or Red Madder: among the leaves come forth flowers like the former, but of a greener white colour: which being past, there succeed berries like the former, but of a reddish colour: which being past, there succeed berries like the former, but of a reddish colour: the roots are thick and knobby like the former, with some fibres annexed thereto.
3. The third kind of Solomon's Seal, which Carolus Clusius found in the woody mountains of Leitenberg, above Mandersdorf; and in many other mountains beyond the river Danube, especially among the stones, he sent to London to Mr Garth a worshipful gentleman, and one that greatly delighteth in strange plants, who very lovingly imparted the same unto me. This plant hath stalks very like unto the common Solomon's Seal, a foot high, beset with leaves upon one side of the stalk like the first and common kind; but larger, and more approaching to the bigness of the Broad-Leaved Plantain, the taste whereof is not very pleasant: from the bosom of which leaves come forth small well-smelling greenish white flowers not much unlike the first: which being past, there follow seeds or berries that are at the first green, but afterward black, containing within the same berries a small seed as big as a Vetch, and as hard as a stone. The roots are like unto the other of his kind, yet not so thick as the first.

4. The fourth kind according to my account, but the third of Clusius (which he found also in the mountains aforesaid) growtheth a foot high, but seldom a cubit, differing from all the others of his kind; for his stalks divide themselves into sundry other branches, which are garnished with goodly leaves, larger and sharper pointed than any of the rest, which do embrace the stalks about after the manner of *Perfoliata* or Thoroughwax, yet very like unto the kinds of Solomon's Seal in show, save that they are somewhat hoary underneath the leaves; which at the first are sweet in taste, but somewhat acid or biting towards the later end. From the back part of the leaves shoot forth small long tender and crooked stems, bearing at the end little gaping white flowers not much unlike *Lilium convallium*, savouring like hawthorn flowers, spotted
on the inner side with black spots: which being past, there come forth three-cornered
berries like the Narrow-Leaved Solomon's Seal, green at the first, and red when they
be ripe, containing many white hard grains. The roots differ from all the other kinds,
and are like unto the crambling roots of *Thalictrum*, which the graver hath omitted in
the picture.

5. *Polygonatum multiflorum* ferox,
Narrow leaved Solomon's Seal.

Fig. 1323. Narrow-Leaved Solomon's Seal (5)

5. This rare sort of Solomon's Seal rises up from his tuberous or knobby root,
with a straight upright stalk jointed at certain distances, leaving between each joint a
bare and naked stalk, smooth, and of a greenish colour tending to yellowness; from
the which joints thrust forth divers small branches, with four narrow teams set about
like a star or the herb Woodruff: upon which tender branches are set about the stalks
by certain spaces long narrow leaves enclosing the same round about: among which
leaves come forth small whitish flowers of little regard. The fruit is small, and of a red
colour, full of pulp or meat; among which is contained a hard stony seed like that of
the first Solomon's Seal.

6. There is kept in our gardens, and said to be brought from some part of
America another *Polygonatum*, which sends a stalk some foot and more high, and it
hath leaves long, nervous, and very green and shining, growing one by another
without any order upon the stalk, which is somewhat crested, crooked, and very
green; bearing at the very top thereof, above the highest leaf, upon little footstalks,
some eight or nine little white flowers, consisting of six leaves apiece, which are
succeeded by berries, as in the former. This flowers in May, and is vulgarly named
*Polygonatum Virginianum*, or Virginian Solomon's Seal.

The Place.

The first sort of Solomon's Seal grows naturally wild in Somersetshire, upon
the North side of a place called Mendip, in the parish of Shepton Mallet: also in Kent
by a village called Crayford, upon Rough or Row hill: also in Odiham Park in Hampshire; in Bradford's Wood, near to a town in Wiltshire four miles from Bath; in a wood near to a village called Horsley, five miles from Guildford in Surrey, and in divers other places.

That sort of Solomon's Seal with broad leaves growth in certain woods in Yorkshire called Clapdale woods, three miles from a village named Settle.

The Time.

They spring up in March, and show their flowers in May: the fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.


The Temperature.

The roots of Solomon's Seal, as Galen saith, have both a mixed faculty and quality also: For they have (saith he) a certain kind of astriction or binding, and biting withal, and likewise a certain loathsome bitterness, as the same author affirmeth: which is not to be found in those that do grow in our climate.

The Virtues.

A. Dioscorides writeth, That the roots are excellent good for to seal or close up green wounds, being stamped and laid thereon; whereupon it was called *Sigillum Solomonis*, of the singular virtue that it hath in sealing or healing up wounds, broken bones, and such like. Some have thought it took the name *Sigillum* of the marks upon the roots: but the first reason seems to me more probable.

B. The root of Solomon's Seal stamped while it is fresh and green, and applied, taketh away in one night, or two at the most, any bruise, black or blue spots gotten by falls or women's wilfulness, in stumbling upon their hasty husbands' fists, or such like.

C. Galen saith, that neither herb nor root hereof is to be given inwardly: but note what experience hath found out, and of late days, especially among the vulgar sort of people in Hampshire, which Galen, Dioscorides, or any other that have written of plants have not so much as dreamed of; which is, That if any of what sex or age soever chance to have any bones broken, in what part of their bodies soever; their refuge is to stamp the roots hereof, and give it unto the patient in ale to drink: which soldereth and glues together the bones in very short space, and very strangely, yea although the bones be but slenderly and unhandsomely placed and wrapped up. Moreover, the said people do give it in like manner unto their cattle, if they chance to have any bones broken, with good success; which they do also stamp and apply outwardly in manner of a poultice, as well unto themselves as their cattle.

D. The root stamped and applied in manner of a poultice, and laid upon members that have been out of joint, and newly restored to their places, driveth away the pain, and knitteth the joint very firmly, and taketh away the inflammation, if there chance to be any.
E. The same stamped, and the juice given to drink with ale or white wine, as aforesaid, or the decoction thereof made in wine, helps any inward bruise, disperseth the congealed and clotted blood in very short space.

F. That which might be written of this herb as touching the knitting of bones, and that truly, would seem unto some incredible; but common experience teacheth, that in the world there is not to be found another herb comparable to it for the purposes aforesaid: and therefore in brief, if it be for bruises inward the roots must be stamped, sour ale or wine put thereto, strained, and given to drink.

G. It must be given in the same manner to knit broken bones, against bruises, black or blue marks gotten by stripes, falls, or such like; against inflammation, tumors or swellings that happen unto members whose bones are broken, or members out of joint, after restoration: the roots are to be stamped small, and applied poultice or plasterwise, wherewith many great works have been performed beyond credit.

H. Matthiolus teacheth, That a water is drawn out of the roots, wherewith the women of Italy use to scour their faces from sun-burning, freckles, morpew, or any such deformities of the skin.
CHAP. 338. Of Knee-Holm, or Butcher's Broom.

Knee-Holm is a low woody plant, having divers small branches, or rather stems, rising immediately from the ground, of the height of a foot; whereupon are set many leaves like unto those of the Box tree, or rather of the Myrtle, but sharp and pricking at the point. The fruit groweth upon the middle rib of the leaf, green at the first, and red as coral when it is ripe, like those of Asparagus, but bigger. The roots are white, branched, of a mean thickness, and full of tough sprouting shoots thrusting forth in other places, whereby it greatly increaseth.

The Place.

It groweth plentifully in most places in England in rough and barren grounds, especially upon Hampsted Heath four miles from London; in divers places of Kent, Essex, and Berkshire, almost in every copse and low wood.

The Time.

The young and tender sprouts come forth at the first of the spring, which are eaten in some places, as the young tender stalks of Asparagus and such like herbs. The berries are ripe in August.

The Names

There be some (saith Pliny, lib. 25. cap. 13.) that call it Oxymyrsine.

Serapio, cap. 288, supposeth that Myrtus Agria, or wild Myrtle, is the same that Cubebe are: he alledge a reason, because Galen hath not described Myrtus Agria, or Knee-holm; neither Dioscorides Cubebe. Which as it is a reason of no account, so is it also without truth: for Galen doth nowhere make mention of Cubebe; and be it that he had, it should not therefore follow that Knee-holm is Cubebe. Galen speaketh of Carpesium, which Avicenna in his 137th chapter maketh to be Cubebe, and that Carpesium doth much differ from Knee-Holm, those things do evidently declare which Galen hath left written hereof in his first book Of Counterpoisons. Carpesium (saith he) is an herb like in kind to that which is called Phu, or Setwall, but of greater force, and more aromatical or spicy. This groweth very plentifully in Sida a city of Pamphilia. Also he saith further, that some of the sticks of Carpesium are like to those of Cinnamon: there be two kinds thereof, one which is named Laërtium; and another that is called Ponticum. They both take their names of the mountains on which they grow: but Ponticum is the better, which is put into medicines in which the herb Phu ought to be put. For Carpesium, as I have said, is like unto Phu, or Setwall, yet is it stronger, and yieldeth a certain aromatical quality both in taste and smell. Thus far Galen. By which it plainly appeareth, that Knee-holm is not Carpesium, that is to say, Avicenna his Cubebe, as shall be further declared in the chapter of Cubebe. Herein Serapio was likewise deceived, who suspected it to be such a like thing; saying, There be certain fruits or grains called Cubebe, not sticks: yet do they neither agree with Knee-Holm, neither yet were they known unto Galen.

Isaac in the second book of his Practise doth number it among the grains: and likewise Hali-abbas in the second book of his Practise also, num. 62. The later Grecians, among whom is Nicolaus Myrepsus, call them Cubebe.

The Temperature.

The roots of Knee-Holm, which be chiefly used, are of temperature hot, and meanly dry, with a thinness of essence.

The Virtues.

A. The decoction of the roots of Knee-Hholm made in wine and drunken, provoketh urine, breaketh the stone, driveth forth gravel and sand, and easeth those that make their water with great pain.

B. Dioscorides writeth the same things of the leaves and berries, which moreover (saith he) bring down the desired sickness, help the headache and the yellow jaundice. Over and besides, the roots do serve to raise up gently tough and gross phlegm which sticketh in the lungs and chest, and do concoct the same.
CHAP. 339. Of Horse-Tongue or Double-Tongue.

The Description.

1. Horse-Tongue sendeth forth round stalks of a span long; whereupon are set long broad and sharp pointed leaves, but not pricking as are those of Knee-holm, not unlike to the leaves of the Bay tree, but lesser; greater than those of Knee-holm: out of the middle rib whereof cometh forth another leaf, sharp pointed also, but small, and of the bigness of the leaf of Knee-Holm, resembling a little tongue. From the bosom of which two leaves cometh forth a berry of the bigness of a pea, of colour red when it is ripe, which is sometimes in a manner all hid under the leaf. The root is white, long, and tough, and of a sweet and pleasant smell.

2. The female Horse-Tongue differeth not from the precedent but in stature and colour of the fruit: it riseth up (saith my author) four or five handfuls high: the berries come forth of the middle part of the greater leaf, and the setting on of the lesser, of a faint yellowish red colour, wherein consisteth the difference.
3. There is likewise another sort of Double-Tongue set forth by Matthiolus, which seems unto some not to differ from the first described or best known Horse-Tongue, being in truth the selfsame plant without any difference: notwithstanding I have set forth the figure, that it may appear to be the same, or very little different, and that not to be distinguished: but Matthiolus may not escape without reprehension, who knowing the untrue translation of Ruellius, would set forth so false a picture in his Commentaries.

The Place.

They are found on the Alps of Liguria, and on the mountains of Austria. Bellonius writeth, that they do grow very plentifully about the hill Athos.

The first of the Horse-Tongues grows in my garden very plentifully.

The Time.

That which groweth in my garden flowered in the beginning of May: the fruit is ripe in the fall of the leaf.

The Names.

Horse-Tongue is called of the later herbarists, Bonifacia, Uvularia, Bisinglua, Lingua Pagana, and Victoriola. The same is also named Daphen Idea, of Ida a mountain of Troy, which is called Alexander's Troy: of some, Laurus Alexandrina, or the Bay of Alexandria, and Laurus Idea.

This Hippoglossum Bonifacia is called in High Dutch, Zapflinkraut: in Low Dutch, Tonghenbladt: in Spanish, Lengua de Cavallo: in English, Horse-Tongue, Tongue-Blade, Double-Tongue, and Laurel of Alexandria.
Gerard's Herbal

The Temperature.

Horse-Tongue is evidently hot in the second degree, and dry in the first.

The Virtues.

A. The roots of Double-Tongue boiled in wine, and the decoction drunk, helpeth the strangury, provoketh urine, easeth women that have hard travail in childbearing. It expelleth the secondine or afterbirth. The root beaten to powder, whereof six drams given in sweet wine, doth help the diseases aforesaid: it bringeth down the terms, as Dioscorides teacheth. The like writeth Pliny also: adding further, That it causeth women to have speedy deliverance, especially if half an ounce of the powder of the root be given to drink in a draught of sweet wine.

B. Baptista Sardus doth notably commend this herb for the diseases of the mother; by giving, saith he, a little spoonful of the powder either of the herb, the fruit, or of the root, to her that is troubled with the mother, she is thereby forthwith recovered. He also writeth, that the same is a singular good medicine for those that be bursten, if a spoonful of the powder of the root be drunk in the broth of flesh certain days together.
CHAP. 340. Of Cucumbers.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Cucumber; some greater, others lesser; some of the Garden, some wild; some of one fashion, and some of another, as shall be declared in the following chapters.

The Description.

1. The Cucumber creeps alongst upon the ground all about, with long rough branches; whereupon do grow broad rough leaves uneven about the edges: from the bosom whereof come forth crooked clasping tendrils like those of the Vine. The flowers shoot forth between the stalks and the leaves, set upon tender footstalks, composed of five small yellow leaves: which being past, the fruit succeedeth, long, cornered, rough, and set with certain bumps or strings, green at the first, and yellow when they be ripe, wherein is contained a firm and solid pulp or substance transparent or through-shining, which together with the seed is eaten a little before they be fully ripe. The seeds be white, long, and flat.

2. There be also certain long cucumbers, which were first made (as is said) by art and manuring, which Nature afterwards did preserve: for at the first, when as the fruit is very little, it is put into some hollow cane, or other thing made of purpose, in which the cucumber growtheth very long, by reason of that narrow hollowness, which being filled up, the cucumber increaseth in length. The seeds of this kind of cucumber being sown bringeth forth not such as were before, but such as art hath framed; which
of their own growth are found long, and oftentimes very crookedly turned: and thereupon they have been called *Anguini*, or Long Cucumbers.

3. The Pear-Fashioned Cucumber hath many trailing branches lying flat upon the ground, rough and prickly; whereon do stand at each joint one rough leaf, sharp pointed, and of an overworn green colour; among which come forth clasping tendrils, and also slender footstalks, whereon do grow yellow star-like flowers. The fruit succeeds, shaped like a pear, as big as a great Warden. The root is thready.

4. There hath been not long since sent out of Spain some seeds of a rare & beautiful cucumber, into Strasbourg a city in Germany, which there brought forth long trailing branches, rough & hairy, set with very large rough leaves sharp pointed, fashioned like unto the leaves of the Great Burdock, but more cut in or divided: amongst which come forth fair yellow flowers growing nakedly upon their tender footstalks: the which being past, the fruit cometh in place, of a foot in length, green on the side toward the ground, yellow to the sunward, streaked with many spots and lines of divers colours. The pulp or meat is hard and fast like that of our Pumpkin.

**The Place.**

These kinds of Cucumbers are planted in gardens in most countries of the world.

**The Time.**

According to my promise heretofore made, I have thought it good and convenient in this place to set down not only the time of sowing and setting of Cucumbers, Musk-Melons, Citruls, Pumpkins, Gourds, and such like, but also how to set or sow all manner and kinds of other cold seeds, as also whatsoever strange seeds are brought unto us from the Indies, or other hot regions.

-29-
First of all in the midst of April or somewhat sooner (if the weather be anything temperate) you shall cause to be made a bed or bank of hot and new horse dung taken forth of the stable (and not from the dunghill) of an ell in breadth, and the like in depth or thickness, of what length you please according to the quantity of your seed: the which bank you shall cover with hoops or poles, that you may the more conveniently cover the whole bed or bank with mats, old painted cloth, straw or such like, to keep it from the injury of the cold frosty nights, and not hurt the things planted in the bed: then shall you cover the bed all over with the most fertilest earth finely sifted, half a foot thick, wherein you shall set or sow your seeds: that being done, cast your straw or other coverture over the same; and so let it rest without looking upon it, or taking away of your covering for the space of seven or eight days at the most, for commonly in that space they will thrust themselves up nakedly forth of the ground: then must you cast upon them in the hottest time of the day some water that hath stood in the house or in the sun a day before, because the water so cast upon them newly taken forth of a well or pump, will so chill and cool them being brought and nourished up in such a hot place, that presently in one day you have lost all your labour; I mean not only your seed, but your bank also; for in this space the great heat of the dung is soft and spent, keeping in memory that every night they must be covered and opened when the day is warmed with the sunbeams: this must be done from time to time until that the plants have four or six leaves apiece, and that the danger of the cold nights is past: then must they be replanted very curiously, with the earth sticking to the plant, as near as may be unto the most fruitful place, and where the sun hath most force in the garden; provided that upon the removing of them you must cover them with some Dock leaves or wisps of straw, propped up with forked sticks, as well to keep them from the cold of the night, as also the heat of the sun: for they cannot whilst they be young and newly planted, endure neither overmuch cold nor overmuch heat, until they are well rooted in their new place or dwelling.

Oftentimes it falleth out that some seeds are more franker and forwarder than the rest, which commonly do rise up very nakedly with long necks not unlike to the stalk of a small mushroom, of a night old. This naked stalk must you cover with the like fine earth even to the green leaves, having regard to place your bank so that it may be defended from the north winds.

Observe these instructions diligently, and then you shall not have cause to complain that your seeds were not good, nor of the intemperancy of the climate (by reason whereof you can get no fruit) although it were in the furthest parts of the North of Scotland.

The Names.


The Temperature and virtues.

A. All the Cucumbers are of temperature cold and moist in the second degree. They putrefy soon in the stomach, and yield unto the body a cold and moist nourishment, and that very little, and the same not good.

B. Those Cucumbers must be chosen which are green and not yet ripe: for when they are ripe and yellow they be unfit to be eaten.
Gerard's Herbal

C. The seed is cold, but nothing so much as the fruit. It openeth and cleanseth, provoketh urine, openeth the stoppings of the liver, helpeth the chest and lungs that are inflamed; and being stamped and outwardly applied instead of a cleanser, it maketh the skin smooth and fair.

D. Cucumber (saith my author) taken in meats, is good for the stomach and other parts troubled with heat. It yieldeth not any nourishment that is good, insomuch as the unmeasurable use thereof filleth the veins with naughty cold humours.

E. The seed stamped and made into milk like as they do with almonds, or strained with milk or sweet wine and drunk, looseth the belly gently, and is excellent against the exulceration of the bladder.

F. The fruit cut in pieces or chopped as herbs to the pot and boiled in a small pipkin with a piece of mutton, being made into pottage with oatmeal, even as herb pottage are made, whereof a mess eaten to breakfast, as much to dinner, and the like to supper; taken in this manner for the space of three weeks together without intermission, doth perfectly cure all manner of saucefleme and copper faces, red and shining fiery noses (as red as red Roses) with pimples, rubies, and such like precious faces.

G. Provided always that during the time of curing you do use to wash or bathe the face with this liquor following.

H. Take a pint of strong white wine vinegar, powder of the roots of Ireos or Orrice three drams, searced or bolted into most fine dust, brimstone in fine powder half an ounce, camphor two drams, stamped with two blanched almonds, four oak-apples cut through the middle, and the juice of four lemons: put them all together in a strong double glass, shake them together very strongly, setting the same in the sun for the space of ten days: with which let the face be washed and bathed daily, suffering it to dry of itself without wiping it away. This doth not only help fiery faces, but also taketh away lentils, spots, morphew, sunburn, and all other deformities of the face.
CHAP. 341. Of Wild Cucumber.

The Description.

The Wild Cucumber hath many fat hairy branches, very rough and full of juice, creeping or trailing upon the ground, whereupon are set very rough leaves, hairy, sharp pointed, & of an overworn greyish green colour: from the bosom of which come forth long tender footstalks: on the ends whereof do grow small flowers composed of five small leaves of a pale yellow colour: after which cometh forth the fruit, of the bigness of the smallest pullet's egg, but somewhat longer, very rough and hairy on the outside, and of the colour and substance of the stalks, wherein is contained very much water and small hard blackish seeds also, of the bigness of tares; which being come to maturity and ripeness, it casteth or squirtetth forth his water with the seeds, either of its own accord, or being touched with the most tender or delicate hand never so gently, and oftentimes striketh so hard against those that touch it (especially if it chance to hit against the face) that the place smarteth long after: whereupon of some it hath been called Noli me tangere, Touch-Me-Not. The root is thick, white and long-lasting.

The Place.

It is found in most of the hot countries among rubbish, gravel, & other untilled places: it is planted in gardens in the Low Countries, and being once planted, saith Dodonæus, it easily cometh up again many years after (which is true:) and yet saith he further, that it doth not spring again of the root, but of the seeds spirited or cast about: which may likewise be true where he hath observed it, but in my garden it is otherwise, for as I said before, the root is long lasting, and continueth from year to year.
The Time.

It springeth up in May, it flowereth and is ripe in autumn; and is to be gathered at the same time, to make that excellent composition called Elaterium.

The Names.


The Temperature.

The leaves of wild Cucumbers, roots and their rinds as they are bitter in taste, so they be likewise hot and cleansing. The juice is hot in the second degree, as Galen witnesseth, and of thin parts. It cleanseth and wasteth away.

The Virtues.

A. The juice called Elaterium doth purge forth choler, phlegm, and watery humours, and that with force, and not only by siege, but sometimes also by vomit.

B. The quantity that is to be taken at one time is from five grains to ten, according to the strength of the patient.

C. The juice dried or hardened, and the quantity of half a scruple taken, driveth forth by siege gross phlegm, choleric humours, and prevaleth mightily against the dropsy, and shortness of breath.

D. The same drawn up into the nostrils mixed with a little milk, taketh away the redness of the eyes.

E. The juice of the root doth also purge phlegm, choleric and waterish humours, and is good for the dropsy: but not of such force as Elaterium, which is made of the juice of the fruit: the making whereof I commend to the learned and curious apothecaries: among which number, Mr William Wright in Bucklersbury my loving friend hath taken more pains in curious composing of it, and hath more exactly performed the same, than any other whatsoever that I have had knowledge of.
CHAP. 342. Of Citrul Cucumbers.

Fig. 1332. Citrul Cucumber (1)  
Fig. 1333. Small Citrul (2)

The Description.

1. The Citrul Cucumber hath many long, flexible, and tender stalks trailing upon the ground, branched like unto the Vine, set with certain great leaves deeply cut and very much jagged: among which come forth long clasping tendrils, and also tender footstalks, on the ends whereof do grow flowers of a gold yellow colour: the fruit is somewhat round, streaked or ribbed with certain deep furrows alongst the same, of a green colour above, and underneath on that side that lieth upon the ground something white: the outward skin whereof is very smooth; the meat within is indifferent hard, more like to that of the Pumpkin than of the Cucumber or Musk Melon: the pulp wherein the seed lieth, is spongy, and of a slimy substance: the seed is long, flat, and greater than those of the Cucumbers: the shell or outward bark is blackish, sometimes of an overworn reddish colour. The fruit of the Citrul doth not so easily rot or putrefy as doth the Melon, which being gathered in a fair dry day may be kept a long time, especially being covered in a heap of wheat, as Matthiolius saith: but according to my practise you may keep them much longer and better in a heap of dry sand.

2. The second kind of Citrul differeth not from the former, saving that it is altogether lesser, and the leaves are not so deeply cut or jagged, wherein consisteth the difference.
The Place and Time.

The Citrul prospereth best in hot regions, as in Sicily, Apulia, Calabria, and Syria about Aleppo and Tripoli. We have many times sown the seeds, and diligently observed the order prescribed in planting of Cucumbers.

The Names.

The later herbarists do call it Anguria: in shops, Citrullus, and Cucumus Citrullus: in English, Citruls, and Cucumber Citruls, and the seed is known by the name of Semen Citrulli: or Citrul seed. But if Cucumis Citrullus, be so called of the yellow colour of the Citron, then is the common Cucumber properly Cucumis Citrulus: which is known unto all to be contrary.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The meat or pulp of Cucumber Citrul which is next unto the bark is eaten raw, but more commonly boiled: it yieldeth to the body little nourishment, and the same cold: it engendereth a waterish blood, mitigateth the extremity of heat of the inner parts, and tempereth the sharpness and fervent heat of choler: being raw and held in the mouth, it takes away the roughness of the tongue in agues, and quencheth thirst.

B. The seeds are of the like faculty with those of Cucumbers.
CHAP. 343. Of the Wild Citrul called Colocynthis.

The Description.

1. Coloquintida hath been taken of many to be a kind of the wild Gourd, it lieth along creeping on the ground as do the Cucumbers and Melons, coming nearest of all to that which in those days of some herbarists is called Citrul Cucumber: it bringeth forth upon his long branches small crooked tendrils like the Vine, and also very great broad leaves deeply cut or jagged: among which come forth small flowers of a pale yellow colour; then cometh the fruit round as a bowl covered with a thin rind, of a yellow colour when it is ripe, which when it is peeled or pared off, the white pulp or spongy substance appeareth full of seeds, of a white or else an overworn brown colour; the fruit so pared or peeled, is dried for medicine; the which is most extreme bitter, and likewise the seed, and the whole plant itself in all his parts.

2. The second kind of Coloquintida hath likewise many long branches and clasping tendrils, wherewith it taketh hold of such things as are near unto it. It bringeth forth the like leaves, but not so much jagged. The flowers are small and yellow: the fruit is fashioned like a pear, and the other sort round, wherein the especial difference consisteth.

The Place.

Coloquintida is sown and cometh to perfection in hot regions, but seldom or never in these Northerly and cold countries.
Gerard's Herbal

The Time.

It is sown in the spring, and bringeth his fruit to perfection in August.

It hath been divers times delivered unto me for a truth, that they do grow in the sands of the Mediterranean sea shore, or very near unto it, wild, for every man to gather that list, especially on the coast of Barbary, as also without the mouth of the Straights near to Santa Cruz and other places adjacent; from whence divers surgeons of London that have travelled thither for the curing of sick and hurt men in the ship have brought great quantities thereof at their return.

The Names.

It is vulgarly called Coloquintida: the Latin translators for Colocynthis do oftentimes set down Cucurbita sylvestris: notwithstanding there is a Cucurbita sylvestris that differeth from Colocynthis, or Coloquintida: for Cucurbita sylvestris is called in Greek kolokyntha agria, or wild Coloquintida, whereof shall be set forth a peculiar chapter next after the Cucurbita or Gourd: in English it is called Coloquintida, or Apple of Coloquintida.

The Temperature.

Coloquintida as it is in his whole nature and in all his parts bitter, so is it likewise hot and dry in the latter end of the second degree; and therefore it purgeth, cleanseth, openeth and performeth all those things that most bitter things do: but that the strong quality which it hath to purge by the stool, is, as Galen saith, of more force than the rest of his operations.

The Virtues.

A. Which operation of purging it worketh so violently, that it doth not only draw forth phlegm and choler marvellous speedily, and in very great quantity: but oftentimes fetcheth forth blood and bloody excrements, by shaving the guts, and opening the ends of the mesaraical veins.

B. So that therefore the same is not to be used either rashly, or without some dangerous and extreme disease constrain thereunto: neither yet at all, unless some tough and clammy thing be mixed therewith, whereby the vehemency thereof may be repressed, the hurtful force dulled, and the same speedily passing through the belly, the guts be not fret or shaved. Mesues teacheth to mix with it either Mastic, or gum Tragacanth.

C. There be made of it trochisks, or little flat cakes with Mastic, gum Arabic, Tragacanth and Bdellium, of these, Mastic hath a manifest binding quality: but tough and clammy things are much better, which have no astriction at all in them, or very little.

D. For by such binding or astringent things violent medicines being restrained and bridled, do afterward work their operation with more violence and trouble: but such as have not binding things mixed with them do easier work, and with lesser pain, as be those pills which Rhasis in his ninth book of Almanzor calleth illiace: which are compounded of Coloquintida and Scammony, two of the strongest medicines that are; and of a third called gum Sagapene, which through his clamminess doth as it were daub the entrails and guts, and defend them from the harm that might have some of either of them.
E. The which composition, although it be wonderful strong, and not to be used without very great necessity urge thereunto, doth notwithstanding easily purge, and without any great trouble, and with lesser torment than most of the mildest and gentlest medicines which have Mastic and other things mixed with them that are astringent.

F. And for this cause it is very like that Galen in his first book of Medicines, according to the places affected, would not suffer Mastic and Bdellium to be in the pills, which are surnamed cochiæ: the which notwithstanding his schoolmaster Quintus was also wont before to add unto the same.

G. But Coloquintida is not only good for purgations in which it is a remedy for the dizziness or the turning sickness, the megrim, continual headache, the apoplexy, the falling sickness, the stuffing of the lungs, the gnawings and gripings of the guts and entrails, and other most dangerous diseases, but also it doth outwardsly work his operations, which are not altogether to be rejected.

H. Common oil wherein the same is boiled, is good against the singing in the ears, and deafness: the same killeth and driveth forth all manner of worms of the belly, and doth oftentimes provoke to the stool, if the navel and bottom of the belly be therewith anointed.

J. Being boiled in vinegar, and the teeth washed therewith, it is a remedy for the toothache, as Mesues teacheth.

K. The seed is very profitable to keep and preserve dead bodies with; especially if Aloes and Myrrh be mixed with it.

L. The white pulp or spongy pith taken in the weight of a scruple openeth the belly mightily, and purgeth gross phlegm, and choleric humours.

M. It hath the like force if it be boiled and laid to infuse in wine or ale, and given to drink.

N. Being taken after the same manner it profiteth the diseases before remembered, that is, the apoplexy, falling sickness, giddiness of the head, the colic, looseness of sinews, and places out of joint, and all diseases proceeding of cold.

O. For the same purposes it may be used in clysters.

P. The same boiled in oil, and applied with cotton or wool, taketh away the pain of the haemorrhoids.

Q. The decoction made in wine, and used as a fomentation or bath, bringeth down the desired sickness.
CHAP. 344. Of Musk Melon, or Million.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Melons found at this day, differing very notably in shape and proportion, as also in taste, according to the climate and country where they grow; but of the ancients there was only one and no more, which is that \textit{Melopepo} called of Galen, \textit{Cucumis}, or Galen's Cucumber: notwithstanding some have comprehended the Musk Melons under the kinds of Citruls, wherein they have greatly erred: for doubtless the Musk Melon is a kind of Cucumber, according to the best approved authors.

The Description.

1. That which the later herbarists do call Musk Melons is like to the common Cucumber in stalks, lying flat upon the ground, long, branched, and rough. The leaves be much alike, yet are they lesser, rounder, and not so cornered: the flowers in like manner be yellow: the fruit is bigger, at the first somewhat hairy, something long, now and then somewhat round; oftentimes greater, and many times lesser: the bark or rind is of an overworn russet green colour, ribbed and furrowed very deeply, having often chaps or chinks, and a confused roughness: the pulp or inner substance which is to be eaten, is of a faint yellow colour. The middle part whereof is full of slimy moisture, among which is contained the seed, like unto those of the Cucumber, but lesser, and of a browner colour.
2. The Sugar Melon hath long trailing stalks lying upon the ground, whereon are set small clasping tendrils like those of the Vine; and also leaves like unto the common Cucumber, but of a greener colour: the fruit cometh forth among those leaves, standing upon slender footstalks, round as the fruit of Coloquintida, and of the same bigness, of a most pleasant taste like Sugar, whereof it took the surname *Saccharatus*.

3. The Pear-Fashioned Melon hath many long viny branches, whereupon do grow cornered leaves like those of the Vine, and likewise great store of long tendrils, clasping and taking hold of each thing that it toucheth: the fruit growth upon slender footstalks, fashioned like unto a Pear, of the bigness of a great Quince.

![Fig. 1338. Spanish Melon (4)](image)

4. The Spanish Melon bringeth forth long trailing branches, whereon are set broad leaves slightly indented about the edges, not divided at all, as are all the rest of the Melons. The fruit growth near unto the stalk, like unto the common Pumpkin, very long, not crested or furrowed at all, but spotted with very many such marks as are on the back side of the Hart's-Tongue leaf. The pulp or meat is not so pleasing in taste as the other.

**The Place.**

They delight in hot regions, notwithstanding I have seen at the Queen's house at Saint James very many of the first sort ripe, through the diligent and curious nourishing of them by a skilful gentleman the keeper of the said house, called Mr. Fowle, and in other places near unto the Right Honorable the Lord of Sussex' house, of Bermondsey by London, where from year to year there is very great plenty, especially if the weather be anything temperate.
Gerard's Herbal

The Time.

They are set or sown in April as I have already shown in the chapter of Cucumbers: their fruit is ripe in the end of August, and sometimes sooner.

The Names.

The Musk Melon is called in Latin, *Melo*: in Italian, *Mellone*: in Spanish, *Melon*: in French, *Melons*: in High Dutch, *Melau*: in low Dutch, *Meloenen*: in Greek, *Melon*, which doth signify an apple; and therefore this kind of Cucumber is more truely called *Melopepon*: by reason that *Pepo* hath the smell of an apple, whereto the smell of this fruit is like; having withal the smell as it were of Musk: which for that cause are also named *Melones Muschatellini*, or Musk Melons.

The Temperature.

The meat of the Musk Melon, is very cold and moist.

The Virtues.

A. It is harder of digestion than is any of the rest of Cucumbers: and if it remain long in the stomach it putrefieth, and is occasion of pestilent fevers: which thing also Aëtius witnesseth in the first book of his *Tetrabibles*, writing that the use of *Cucumeres*, or Cucumbers, breedeth pestilent fevers; for he also taketh *Cucumis* to be that which is commonly called a Melon: which is usually eaten of the Italians and Spaniards rather to repress the rage of lust, than for any other physical virtue.

B. The seed is of like operation with that of the former Cucumber.
CHAP. 345. Of Melons, or Pumpkins.

The Kinds.

There be found divers kinds of Pumpkins which differ either in bigness or form: it shall be therefore sufficient to describe some one or two of them, and refer the rest unto the view of the figures, which most lively do express their differences; especially because this volume waxeth great, the description of no moment, and I hasten to an end.

Fig. 1339. Great Long Pumpkin (1)  
Fig. 1340. Great round Pumpkin (2)

The Description.

1. The great Pumpkin bringeth forth thick and rough prickly stalks, which with their clasping tendrills take hold upon such things as are near unto them, as poles, arbours, pales, and ledges, which unless they were near unto them would creep along upon the ground; the leaves be wild, and great, very rough, and cut with certain deep gashes, nicked also on the edges like a saw; the flowers be very great like unto a bell cup, of yellow colour like gold, having five corners standing out like teeth: the fruit is great, thick, round, set with thick ribbes, like edges sticking forth. The pulp or meat whereof which is next under the rind is white, and of a mean hardness: the pith or substance in the middle is spongy, and slimy: the seed is great, broad, flat, something white, much greater than that of the Cucumber, otherwise not differing at all in form. The colour of the bark or rind is oftentimes of an obscure green, sometimes grey. The rind of the green Pumpkin is harder, and as it were of a woody substance: the rind of the grey is softer and tenderer.
2. The second kind of Melons or Pumpkins is like unto the former in stalks and leaves, and also in clasping tendrils: but the gashes of the leaves are not so deep, and the stalks be tenderer: the flowers are in like manner yellow, gaping, and cornered at the top, as be those of the former: but the fruit is somewhat rounder; sometimes greater, and many times lesser: and oftentimes of a green colour with an harder bark; now and then softer and whiter. The meat within is like the former: the seeds have also the same form, but they be somewhat lesser.
Fig 1341. Kinds of Pumpkin (3-6)

3. Of this kind there is also another Pumpkin like unto the former in rough stalks, and in gashed and nicked leaves: the flower is also great and yellow, like those of the others: the fruit is of a great bigness, whose bark is full of little bunnies or hilly welts, as is the rind of the Citron, which is in like manner yellow when it is ripe.

4. The fourth Pumpkin doth very much differ from the others in form: the stalks, leaves, and flowers are like those of the rest: but the fruit is not long or round, but altogether broad, and in a manner flat like unto a shield or buckler; thicker in the middle, thinner in the compass, and curled or bumped in certain places about the edges, like the rugged or uneven bark of the Pomecitron; the which rind is very soft, thin, and white: the meat within is meely hard and durable. The seed is greater than that of the common Cucumber, in form and colour all one.

Macocks virginiani, sive Pepo virginianus.
The Virginian Macocke, or Pumpkin.

This hath rough cornered streaked trailing branches proceeding from the root, eight or nine foot long, or longer, and those again divided into other branches of a blackish green colour, trailing, spreading, or running along the earth, covering a great deal of ground, sending forth broad cornered rough leaves, on great gross, long, rough, hairy footstalks, like and fully as big as the leaves of the common Pumpkin, with clasping tendrils and great broad shrivelled yellow flowers also like those of the common Pumpkin: the fruit succeedeth, growing alongst the stalks, commonly not near the root, but towards the upper part or tops of the branches, somewhat round, not extending in length, but flat like a bowl, but not so big as an ordinary bowl, being seldom four inches broad, and three inches long, of a blackish green colour when it is ripe. The substance or eatable part is of a yellowish white colour, containing in the midst a great deal of pulp or soft matter, wherein the seed lieth in certain rows also, like the common Pumpkin, but smaller. The root is made of many whitish branches, creeping far abroad in the earth, and perish at the first approach of winter.

Melones aquatici edules Virginiani
The Virginian Water-Melon.

This Melon or Pumpkin is like and fully as big as the common Pumpkin, in spreading, running, creeping branches, leaves, flowers and clasping tendrils: the fruit is of a very blackish green colour, and extendeth itself in length near four inches long, and three inches broad, no bigger nor longer than a great apple, and grow amongst the branches forth of the bosoms of the leaves not far from the root even to the tops of the branches, containing a substance, pulp, and flat seed, like the ordinary Pumpkin: the root is whitish, and disperseth itself very far abroad in the earth, and perisheth about the beginning of winter. October the tenth, 1621. John Goodyer.

The Place.

All these Melons or Pumpkins be garden plants: they joy best in a fruitful soil, and are common in England; except the last described, which is as yet a stranger.

The Time.

They are planted at the beginning of April: they flower in August: the fruit is ripe in September.
The Names.

The great Melon or Pumpkin is named in Greek and Latin *Pepo*: the fruits of them all when they be ripe are called by a common name in Greek, *Pepones*: in English, Millions or Pumpkin. Whereupon certain physicians, saith Galen, have contended, that this fruit ought to be called in Latin, *Pepo Cucumeralis* or Cucumber Pumpkin. Pliny in his ninth book the fifth chapter writeth, that *Cucumeres* when they exceed in greatness are named *Pepones*: it is called in High Dutch, *Pluker*: in Low Dutch, *Pepoenen*: in French, *Pompons*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. All the Melons are of a cold nature, with plenty of moisture: they have a certain cleansing quality, by means whereof they provoke urine, and do more speedily pass through the body than do either the Gourd, Citrul, or Cucumber, as Galen hath written.

B. The pulp of the Pumpkin is never eaten raw, but boiled. For so it doth more easily descend, making the belly soluble. The nourishment which cometh hereof is little, thin, moist and cold, (bad, saith Galen) and that especially when it is not well digested: by reason whereof it maketh a man apt and ready to fall into the disease called the Choleric Passion, and of some the Felony.

C. The seed cleanseth more than the meat, it provoketh urine, and is good for those that are troubled with the stone of the kidneys.

D. The fruit boiled in milk and buttered, is not only a good wholesome meat for man's body, but being so prepared, is also a most physical medicine for such as have an hot stomach, and the inward parts inflamed.

E. The flesh or pulp of the same sliced and fried in a pan with butter, is also a good and wholesome meat: but baked with apples in an oven, it doth fill the body with flatuous or windy belchings, and is food utterly unwholesome for such as live idly; but unto robustious and rustic people nothing hurteth that filleth the belly.
CHAP. 346. Of Wild Pumpkins.

The Description.

1. As there is a wild sort of Cucumbers, of Melons, Citruls and Gourds, so likewise there be certain wild Pumpkins, that be so of their own nature. These bring forth rough stalks, set with sharp thorny prickles. The leaves be likewise rough: the flowers yellow as be those of the garden Melon, but every part is lesser. The fruit is thick, round, and sharp pointed, having a hard green rind. The pulp or meat whereof, and the middle pith, with the seed are like those of the garden Pumpkin, but very bitter in taste.

2. The second is like unto the former, but it is altogether lesser, wherein consisteth the difference.

The Place.

These Melons do grow wild in Barbary, Africa, and most parts of the East and West Indies: They grow not in these parts except they be sown.

The Time.

Their time of flowering and flourishing answereth that of the garden Pumpkin.
Gerard's Herbal

The Names.

Although the ancient physicians have made no mention of these plants, yet the thing itself doth show, that there be such, and ought to be called in Latin, *Pepones sylvestres*: in English, Wild Melons or Pumpkins.

The Temperature.

Like as these wild Melons be altogether of their own nature very bitter, so be they also of temperature hot and dry, and that in the latter end of the second degree. They have likewise a cleansing faculty, not inferior to the wild Cucumbers.

The Virtues.

A. The wine, which when the pith and seed is taken forth, is poured into the rind, and hath remained so long therein till such time as it becommeth bitter, doth purge the belly, and bringeth forth phlegmatic and choleric humours. To be brief, the juice hereof is of the same operation that the wild Cucumber is of; and being dried it may be used instead of *Elaterium*, which is the dried juice of the wild Cucumber.
CHAP. 347. Of Gourds.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Gourds, some wild, and others tame of the garden; some bringing forth fruit like unto a bottle; others long, bigger at the end, keeping no certain form or fashion; some greater, others lesser. I will only figure and describe two or three of the chiefest, and so pass over the rest, because each one upon the first sight of them knows to what kind to refer them.

The Description.

1. The Gourd bringeth forth very long stalks as be those of the Vine, cornered and parted into divers branches, which with his clasping tendrils taketh hold and climbeth upon such things as stand near unto it: the leaves be very great, broad, and sharp pointed, almost as great as those of the Clot-Bur, but softer, and somewhat covered as it were with a white frieze, as be also the stalks and branches, like those of the Marsh Mallow: the flowers be white, and grow forth from the bosom of the leaves: in their places come up the fruit, which are not all of one fashion, for oftentimes they have the form of flagons or bottles, with a great large belly and a small neck. The Gourd (saith Pliny, lib. 19. cap. 5) groweth into any form or fashion that you would have it, either like unto a wreathed dragon, the leg of a man, or any other shape, according to the mould wherein it is put whilst it is young: being suffered to climbeth upon any arbour where it may hang, it hath been seen to be nine foot long, by reason of his great weight which hath stretched it out to the length. The rind when it is ripe is very hard, woody, and of a yellow colour: the meat or inward pulp is
white; the seed long, flat, pointed at the top, broad below, with two peaks standing out like homes, white within, and sweet in taste.

2. The second differeth not from the precedent in stalks, leaves, or flowers: the fruit hereof is for the most part fashioned like a bottle or flagon, wherein especially consisteth the difference.

The Place.

The Gourds are cherished in the gardens of these cold regions rather for pleasure than for profit: in the hot countries where they come to ripeness they are sometimes eaten, but with small delight; especially they are kept for the rinds, wherein they put Turpentine, Oil, Honey, and serve them for pails to fetch water in, and many other the like uses.

The Time.

They are planted in a bed of horse-dung in April, even as we have taught in the planting of cucumbers: they flourish in June and July; the fruit is ripe in the end of August.

The Name.


The Temperature.

The meat or inner pulp of the Gourd is of temperature cold and moist, and that in the second degree.

The Virtues.

A. The juice being dropped into the ears with oil of roses is good for the pain thereof proceeding of a hot cause.

B. The pulp or meat mitigateth all hot swellings, if it be laid thereon in manner of a poultice, and being used to this manner it taketh away the headache and the inflammation of the eyes.

C. The same author affirmeth, that a long Gourd or else a Cucumber being laid in the cradle or bed by the young infant while it is asleep and sick of an ague, it shall be very quickly made whole.

D. The pulp also is eaten sodden, but because it hath in it a waterish and thin juice, it yieldeth small nourishment to the body, and the same cold and moist; but it easily passeth through, especially being sodden, which by reason of the slipperiness and moistness also of his substance mollifieth the belly.

E. But being baked in an oven or fried in a pan it loseth the most part of his natural moisture, and therefore it more slowly descendeth, and doth not mollify the belly so soon.

F. The seed allayeth the sharpnesss of urine, and bringeth down the same.
CHAP. 348. Of the Wild Gourd.

The Description

1. There is besides the former one a certain wild Gourd: this is like the garden Gourd in climbing stalks, clasping tendrils, and soft leaves, and as it were downy; all and every one of which things being far less: this also climbeth upon arbours and banqueting houses: the fruit doth represent the great bellied Gourd, and those that be like unto bottles in form, but in bigness it is very far inferior; for it is small, and scarce so great as an ordinary Quince, and may be held within the compass of a man's hand: the outward rind at the first is green, afterwards it is as hard as wood, and of the colour thereof: the inner pulp is moist, and very full of juice, in which lieth the seed. The whole is as bitter as Coloquintida, which hath made so many errors, one especially, in taking the fruit Coloquintida for the wild Gourd.

2. The second wild Gourd hath likewise many trailing branches and clasping tendrils, wherewith it taketh hold of such things as be near unto it: the leaves be broad, deeply cut into divers sections, like those of the Vine, soft and very downy, whereby it is especially known to be one of the Gourds: the flowers are very white, as are also those of the Gourds. The fruit succeedeth, growing to a round form, flat on the top like the head of a Mushroom, whereof it took his surname.

The Place.

They grow of themselves wild in hot regions; they never come to perfection of ripeness in these cold countries.
The Time.

The time answereth those of the garden.

The Names.

The wild Gourd is called in Latin, *Cucurbita sylvestris*, or wild Gourd. Pliny, *lib.* 20. *Cap.* 3, affirmeth, that the wild Gourd is named of the Grecians, *symphos*, which is hollow, an inch thick, not growing but among stones, the juice whereof being taken is very good for the stomach. But the wild Gourd is not that which is so described; for it is above an inch thick, neither is it hollow, but full of juice, and by reason of the extreme bitterness offensive to the stomach.

Some also there be that take this for Coloquintida, but they are far deceived; for Colocynthis is the wild Citrul Cucumber, whereof we have treated in the chapter of Citruls.

The Temperature.

The wild Gourd is as hot and dry as Coloquintida, that is to say, in the second degree.

The Virtues.

A. The wild Gourd is extreme bitter, for which cause it openeth and scoureth the stopped passages of the body; it also purgeth downwards as do wild Melons.

B. Moreover, the wine which hath continued all night in this Gourd likewise purgeth the belly mightily, and bringeth forth choleric and phlegmatic humours.
CHAP. 349. Of Potatoes.

This Plant (which is called of some *Sisarum Peruvianum*, or Skirrets of Peru) is generally of us called Potatus, or Potatoes. It hath long rough flexible branches trailing upon the ground like unto Pumpkins; whereupon are set green three-cornered leaves, very like unto those of the wild Cucumber. There is not any that have written of this plant have said anything of the flowers: therefore I refer their description unto those that shall hereafter have further knowledge of the same. Yet have I had in my garden divers roots that have flourished unto the first approach of winter, and have grown unto a great length of branches, but they brought not forth any flowers at all; whether because the winter caused them to perish, before their time of flowering, or that they be of nature barren of flowers, I am not certain. The roots are many, thick, and knobby, like unto the roots of Peonies, or rather of the white Asphodel, joined together at the top into one head, in maner of the Skirret, which being divided into divers parts and planted, do make a great increase, especially if the greatest roots be cut into divers gobbets, and planted in good and fertile ground.

The Place.

The Potatoes grow in India, Barbary, Spain, and other hot regions; of which I planted divers roots (that I bought at the Exchange in London) in my garden, where they flourished until winter, at which time they perished and rotted.

The Time.

It flourisheth unto the end of September: at the first approach of great frosts the leaves together with the roots and stalks do perish.

The Names.

Clusius calleth it *Battata*, *Camotes*, *Amotes*, and *Ignames*: in English, Potatoes, Potatus, and Potades.

The Temperature.

The leaves of Potatoes are hot and dry, as may evidently appear by the taste. The roots are of a temperate quality.
The Virtues.

A. The Potato roots are among the Spaniards, Italians, Indians, and many other nations common and ordinary meat; which no doubt are of mighty and nourishing parts, and do strengthen and comfort nature; whose nutriment is as it were a mean between flesh and fruit, but somewhat windy; but being roasted in the embers they lose much of their windiness, especially being eaten sopped in wine.

B. Of these roots may be made conserves no less toothsome, wholesome, and dainty than of the flesh of Quinces: and likewise those comfortable and delicate meats called in shops *morcelli, placentulae*, and divers other such like.

C. These roots may serve as a ground or foundation whereon the cunning Confectioner or sugar-baker may work and frame many comfortable delicate conserves, and restorative sweetmeats.

D. They are used to be eaten roasted in the ashes. Some when they be so roasted infuse them and sop them in wine; and others to give them the greater grace in eating, do boil them with prunes, and so eat them. And likewise others dress them (being first roasted) with oil, vinegar, and salt, every man according to his own taste and liking. Notwithstanding howsoever they be dressed, they comfort, nourish, and strengthen the body, procuring bodily lust, and that with greediness.
CHAP. 350. Of Potatoes of Virginia.

Fig. 1349. Virginia Potatoes

The Description.

Virginia Potato hath many hollow flexible branches trailing upon the ground, three square, uneven, knotted or kneed in sundry places at certain distances: from the which knots cometh forth one great leaf made of divers leaves, some smaller, and others greater, set together upon a fat middle rib by couples, of a swart green colour tending to redness; the whole leaf resembling those of the Winter Cresses, but much larger; in taste at the first like grass, but afterward sharp and nipping the tongue. From the bosom of which leaves come forth long round slender footstalks, whereon do grow very fair & pleasant flowers, made of one entire whole leaf, which is folded or plaited in such strange sort, that it seemeth to he a flower made of five sundry small leaves, which cannot easily be perceived except the same be pulled open. The whole flower is of a light purple colour, striped down the middle of every fold or welt with a light show of yellowness, as if purple and yellow were mixed together; in the middle of the flower thrusteth forth a thick flat pointel yellow as gold, with a small sharp green prick or point in the midst thereof. The fruit succeedeth the flowers, round as a ball, of the bigness of a little Bullace or wild plum, green at the first, and black when it is ripe; wherein is contained small white seed lesser than those of Mustard. The root is thick, fat, and tuberous, not much differing either in shape, colour, or taste from the common Potatoes, saving that the roots hereof are not so great nor long; some of them are as round as a ball, some oval or egg-fashion; some longer, and others shorter: the which knobby roots are fastened unto the stalks with an infinite number of thready strings.
Gerard's Herbal

The Place.

It groweth naturally in America, where it was first discovered, as reports C. Clusius, since which time I have received roots hereof from Virginia, otherwise called Norembega, which grow and prosper in my garden as in their own native country.

The Time.

The leaves thrust forth of the ground in the beginning of May: the flowers bud forth in August. The fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

The Indians do call this plant *Pappus*, meaning the roots: by which name also the common Potatoes are called in those Indian countries. We have the name proper unto it mentioned in the title. Because it hath not only the shape and proportion of Potatoes, but also the pleasant taste and virtues of the same, we may call it in English, Potatoes of America or Virginia.

Clusius questions whether it be not the *Arachidna* of Theophrastus. Bauhin hath referred it to the Nightshades; and calleth it *Solanum tuberosum esculentum*; and largely figures and describes it in his *Prodromus*, pag. 89.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The temperature and virtues be referred unto the common Potatoes, being likewise a food, as also a meat for pleasure, equal in goodness and wholesomeness unto the same, being either roasted in the embers, or boiled and eaten with oil, vinegar, and pepper, or dressed any other way by the hand of some cunning in cookery.

B. Bauhin saith, That he heard that the use of these roots was forbidden in Burgundy (where they call them Indian Artichokes) for that they were persuaded the too frequent use of them caused the leprosy.
CHAP. 351. Of the Garden Mallow called Hollyhock.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts or kinds of Mallows; some of the garden: there be also some of the marsh or seashore; others of the field, and both wild. And first of the Garden Mallow or Hollyhock.

1. The tame or garden Mallow bringeth forth broad round leaves of a whitish green colour, rough, and greater than those of the wild Mallow. The stalk is straight, of the height of four or six cubits; whereon do grow upon slender footstalks single flowers not much unlike to the wild Mallow, but greater, consisting only of five leaves, sometimes white or red, now and then of a deep purple colour, varying diversely, as Nature list to play with it: in their places groweth up a round knop like a little cake, compact or made up of a multitude of flat seeds like little cheeses. The root is long, white, tough, easily bowed, and groweth deep in the ground.

2. The second being a strange kind of Hollyhock hath likewise broad leaves, rough and hoary, or of an overworn russet colour, cut into divers sections even to the middle rib, like those of Palma Christi. The flowers are very single, but of a perfect red colour, wherein consisteth the greatest difference. And this may be called Malva rosea simplex peregrina folio ficus, Jagged Strange Hollyhock.
3. The double Hollyhock with purple flowers hath great broad leaves, confusedly indented about the edges, and likewise toothed like a saw. The stalk groweth to the height of four or five cubits. The flowers are double, and of a bright purple colour.

4. The Garden Hollyhock with double flowers of the colour of scarlet, groweth to the height of five or six cubits, having many broad leaves cut about the edges. The stalk and root is like the precedent. This may be called *Malva hortensis rubra multiplex*, Double Red Hollyhocks, or Rose Mallow.

5. The Tree Mallow is likewise one of the Hollyhocks; it bringeth forth a great stalk of the height of ten or twelve foot, growing to the form of a small tree, whereon are placed divers great broad leaves of a russet green colour, not unlike to those of the great Clot-Bur Dock, deeply indented about the edges. The flowers are very great and double as the greatest Rose, or double Peony, of a deep red colour tending to blackness. The root is great, thick, and of a woody substance, as is the rest of the plant. This may be called *Malva hortensis atrorubente multiplice flore*.

**The Place.**

These Hollyhocks are sown in gardens, almost everywhere, and are in vain sought elsewhere.

**The Time.**

The second year after they are sown they bring forth their flowers in July and August; when the seed is ripe the stalk withereth, the root remaineth and sendeth forth new stalks, leaves and flowers, many years after.
The Names.

The Hollyhock is called of divers, *Rosa ultramarina*, or outlandish Rose, and *Rosa hyemalis*, or winter Rose. And this is that Rose which Pliny in his 2nd book, 4th chapter writes to have the stalk of a Mallow, and the leaves of a pot-herb, which they call *Mosceuton*: in High Dutch, *Garten pappelen*: in low Dutch, *Winter Roosen*: in French, *Rose d'outre mer*: in English, Hollyhock, and Hocks.

The Temperature.

The Hollyhock is meetly hot, and also moist, but not so much as the wild Mallow: it hath likewise a clammy substance, which is more manifest in the seed and root, than in any other part.

The Virtues.

A. The decoction of the flowers, especially those of the red, doth stop the overmuch flowing of the monthly courses, if they be boiled in red wine.

B. The roots, leaves, and seeds serve for all those things for which the wild Mallow do, which are more commonly and familiarly used.
CHAP. 352. Of Wild Mallows.

1. The Wild Mallow hath broad leaves somewhat round and cornered, nicked about the edges, smooth, and green of colour: among which rise up many slender tough stalks, clad with the like leaves, but smaller. The flowers grow upon little footstalks of a reddish colour mixed with purple streaks, consisting of five leaves, fashioned like a bell: after which cometh up a knop or round button, like unto a flat cake, compact of many small seeds. The root is white, tough, and full of a slimy juice, as is all the rest of the plant.

2. The Dwarf Wild Mallow creepeth upon the ground: the stalks are slender and weak; yet tough and flexible. The leaves be rounder, and more hoary than the other. The flowers are small and of a white colour.
3. The crisp or curled Mallow, called of the vulgar sort French Mallows, hath many small upright stalks, growing to the height of a cubit; and sometimes higher; whereon do grow broad leaves somewhat round and smooth, of a light green colour, plaited or curled about the brims like a ruff. The flowers be small and white. The root perisheth when it hath perfected his seed.

4. The Vervain Mallow hath many straight stalks, whereon do grow divers leaves deeply cut and jagged even to the middle rib, not unlike to the leaves of Vervain, whereof it took his name: among which come forth fair and pleasant flowers like unto those of the common Mallow in form, but of a more bright red colour, mixed with stripes of purple, which setteth forth the beauty. The root is thick, and continueth many years. This is sometimes though more rarely found with white flowers.
5. This annual Mallow, called by Clusius, *Malva trimestris*, is very like our common Mallow, sending up slender branched stalks some three foot high; the bottom leaves are round, those on the stalks more sharp pointed, green above, and whiter underneath; the flowers consist of five leaves of a light carnation colour, the seed is like that of the ordinary Mallow, but smaller; and such also is the root, which perishes every year as soon as the seed is ripe: it is sown in some gardens, and grows wild in Spain.

**The Place.**

The two first Mallows grow in untoiled places among pot-herbs, by highways, and the borders of fields.

The French Mallow is an excellent pot-herb, for the which cause it is sown in gardens, and is not to be found wild that I know of.

The Vervain Mallow groweth not everywhere: it grows on the ditch sides on the left hand of the place of execution by London, called Tyburn: also in a field near unto a village fourteen miles from London called Bushey, on the back-side of a gentleman's house named Mr Robert Wylbraham: likewise amongst the bushes and hedges as you go from London to a bathing place called the Old Ford; and in the bushes as you go to Hackney a village by London, in the closes next the town, and in divers other places, as at Bassingburne in Hertfordshire, three miles from Royston.

Goodyer found the Vervain Mallow with white flowers growing plentifully in a close near Mapledurham in Hampshire, called Aldercrofts.
The Time.

These wild Mallows do flower from June till summer be well spent: in the meantime their seed also waxeth ripe.

The Names.


The name of this herb *Malva* seemeth to come from the Hebrews, who call it in their tongue *Malluach*, of the saltness, because the Mallow groweth in saltish and old ruinous places, as in dung-hills and such like, which in most abundant manner yieldeth forth saltpetre and such like matter: for *Melach* signifieth salt, as the learned know. I am persuaded that the Latin word *Malua* or *Malva* cometh from the Chaldee name *Mallucha*, the gutturall letter *ch*, being left out for good sound's sake: so that it were better in this word *Malua* to read *u* as a vowel, than as a consonant: which words are uttered by the learned Doctor Rabbi David Kimhi, and seem to carry a great show of truth: in English it is called Mallow; which name cometh as near as may be to the Hebrew word.

The Temperature.

The wild Mallows have a certain moderate and middle heat, and moistness withal: the juice thereof is slimy, clammy, or gluing, the which are to be preferred before the garden Mallow or Hollyhock, as Diphilus Siphinus in *Athenaeus* doth rightly think; who plainly sheweth, that the wild Mallow is better than that of the garden: although some do prefer the Hollyhock, whereunto we may not consent, neither yet yield unto Galen, who is partly of that mind, yet standeth he doubtful: for the wild Mallow without controversy is fitter to be eaten, and more pleasant than those of the garden, except the French Mallow, which is generally holden the wholesomest, and amongst the pot-herbs not the least commended by Hesiod: of whose opinion was Horace, writing in his second Ode of his *Epodon*.

--- & gravi

*Malvae salubres corpore.*

["and Mallows salubrious for a sickly body"

Horace, *Epodes*, 2.57]

The Mallow (saith Galen) doth nourish moderately, engendereth gross blood, keepeth the body soluble, and looseth the belly that is bound. It easily descendeth, not only because it is moist, but also by reason it is slimy.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of Mallows are good against the stinging of scorpions, sees, wasps, and such like: and if a man be first anointed with the leaves stamped with a little oil, he shall not be stung at all, Dioscorides saith.

B. The decoction of Mallows with their roots drunken are good against all venom and poison, if it be incontinently taken after the poison, so that it be vomited up again.
C. The leaves of Mallows boiled till they be soft and applied, do mollify tumors and hard swellings of the mother, if they do withal sit over the fume thereof, and bathe themselves therewith.

D. The decoction used in clysters is good against the roughness and fretting of the guts, bladder, and fundament.

E. The roots of the Vervain Mallow do heal the bloody flux and inward burstings, being drunk with wine and water, as Dioscorides and Paulus Ægineta testify.
CHAP. 353. Of Marsh Mallow.

1. Marsh Mallow is also a certain kind of wild Mallow: it hath broad leaves, small toward the point, soft, white, and frized or cottoned, and slightly nicked about the edges: the stalks be round and straight, three or four foot high, of a whitish grey
Gerard's Herbal

colour; whereon do grow flowers like unto those of the wild Mallows, yet not red as they are, but commonly white, or of a very light purple colour out of the white: the knop or round button wherein the seeds lie is like that of the first wild Mallow. The root is thick, tough, white within, and containeth in it a clammy and slimy juice.

2. This strange kind of Mallow is holden amongst the best writers to be a kind of Marsh Mallow: some excellent herbarists have set it down for *Sida theophrasti*, whereto it doth not fully answer: it hath stalks two cubits high, whereon are set without order many broad leaves hoary and whitish, not unlike those of the other Marsh Mallow: the flowers consist of five leaves, and are larger than those of the Marsh Mallow, and of a purple colour tending to redness: after which there come round bladders of a pale colour, in shape like the fruit or seeds of round *Aristochia*, or Birthwort, wherein is contained round black seed. The root is thick and tough, much like that of the common Mallow.

3. This wild Mallow is likewise referred unto the kinds of Marsh Mallow, called generally by the name of *Althæa*, which groweth to the form of a small hedge tree, approaching nearer to the substance or nature of wood than any of the other, wherewith the people of Olbia and Narbonne in France do make hedges, to sever or divide their gardens and vineyards (even as we do with quicksets of privet or thorn) which continueth long: the stalk whereof groweth upright, very high, coming near to the Willow in woodiness and substance. The flowers grow alongst the same, in fashion and colour of the common wild Mallow.

4. The Shrubby Mallow riseth up like unto a hedge bush, and of a woody substance, dividing itself into divers tough and limber branches, covered with a bark of the colour of ashes; whereupon do grow round pointed leaves, somewhat nicked about the edges, very soft, not unlike to those of the common Marsh Mallow, and of an overworn hoary colour. The flowers grow at the top of the stalks, of a purple colour, consisting of five leaves, very like to the common wild Mallow, and the seed of the Marsh Mallow.
5. We have another sort of Mallow, called of Pena, *Alcea fruticosior pentaphylla*: it bringeth forth in my garden many twiggy branches, set upon stiff stalks of the bigness of a man's thumb, growing to the height of ten or twelve foot: whereupon are set very many leaves deeply cut even to the middle rib, like unto the leaves of hemp: the flowers and seeds are like unto the common Mallow: the root is exceeding great, thick, and of a woody substance. Clusius calls this *Alcea fruticosa cannabino folio*: and it is with good reason thought to be the *Cannabis sylvestris* described by Dioscorides, *lib. 3. cap. 166*.

**The Place.**

The common Marsh Mallow groweth very plentifully in the marshes both on the Kentish and Essex shore alongst the river of Thames, about Woolwich, Erith, Greenhithe, Gravesend, Tilbury, Lee, Colchester, Harwich, and in most salt marshes about London: being planted in gardens it prospereth well, and continueth long.

The second groweth in the moist and fenny places of Ferraria, between Padua in Italy, and the river Eridanus.

The others are strangers likewise in England: notwithstanding at the impression hereof I have sown some seeds of them in my garden, expecting the success.

**The Time.**

They flower and flourish in July and August: the root springeth forth afresh every year in the beginning of March, which are then to be gathered, or in September.
Gerard's Herbal

The Names.


The rest of the Mallows retain the names expressed in their several titles.

The Temperature.

Marsh Mallow is moderately hot, but drier than the other Mallows: the roots and seeds hereof are more dry, and of thinner parts, as Galen writeth; and likewise of a digesting, softening or mollifying nature.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of Marsh Mallow are of the power to digest, mitigate pain, and to concoct.

B. They be with good effect mixed with fomentations and poultices against pains of the sides, of the stone, and of the bladder, in a bath also they serve to take away any manner of pain.

C. The decoction of the leaves drunk doth the same, which doth not only assuage pain which proceedeth of the stone, but also is very good to cause the same to descend more easily, and to pass forth.

D. The roots and seeds are profitable for the same purpose: moreover the decoction of the roots helpeth the bloody flux, yet not by any binding quality, but by mitigating the gripings and frettings thereof; for they do not bind at all, although Galen otherwise thought; but they cure the bloody flux, by having things added unto them, as the roots of Bistort, Tormentil, the flowers and rinds of Pomegranates and such like.

E. The mucilage or slimy juice of the roots, is mixed very effectually with all oils, ointments, and plasters that slacken and mitigate pain.

F. The roots boiled in wine, and the decoction given to drink, expell the stone and gravel, help the bloody flux, sciatica, cramps, and convulsions.

G. The roots of Marsh Mallows, the leaves of common Mallows, and the leaves of Violets, boiled in water until they be very soft, and that little water that is left drained away, stamped in a stone mortar, adding thereto a certain quantity of fenugreek, and linseed in powder; the root of the black Bryony, and some good quantity of barrow's grease, stamped altogether to the form of a poultice, and applied very warm, mollify and soften apostomes and hard swellings, swellings in the joints, and sores of the mother: it consumeth all cold tumors, blastings, and windy outgrowings; it cureth the rifts of the fundament; it comforteth, defendeth, and preserveth dangerous green wounds from any manner of accidents that may happen thereto, it helpeth digestion in them, and bringeth old ulcers to maturation.

H. The seeds dried and beaten into powder and given to drink; stoppeth the bloody flux and lask, and all other issues of blood.
CHAP. 354. Of the Yellow Mallow.

Fig. 1360. Yellow Mallow

The Description.

The Yellow Mallow riseth up with a round stalk, something hard or woody, three or four cubits high, covered with broad leaves something round, but sharp pointed, white, soft, set with very fine hairs like to the leaves of gourds, hanging upon long tender footstalks: from the bosom of which leaves come forth yellow flowers, not unlike to those of the common Mallow in form: the knobs or seed vessels are black, crooked, or wrinkled, made up of many small seeds, in which is black seed: the root is small, and dieth when it hath perfected his seed.

The Place.

The seed hereof is brought unto us from Spain and Italy: we do yearly sow it in our gardens, the which seldom or never doth bring his seed to ripeness: by reason whereof, we are to seek for seeds against the next year.

The Time.

It is sown in the midst of April, it bringeth forth his flowers in September.

The Names.

Some think this to be Abutilon: whereupon that agreeeth which Avicenna writeth, that it is like to the Gourd, that is to say in leaf, and to be named Abutilon, and Arbutilon: divers take it to be that Althaea or Marsh Mallow, unto which Theophrastus in his ninth book of the History of Plants doth attribute Florem milinon, or a yellow flower: for the flower of the common Marsh Mallow is not yellow, but white; yet may Theophrastus his copy, which in divers places is faulty, and hath many empty and unwritten places, be also faulty in this place; therefore it is hard to say, that this is
Theophrastus' Marsh Mallow, especially seeing that Theophrastus seemeth also to attribute unto the root of Marsh Mallow so much slime, as that water may be thickened therewith, which the roots of common Marsh Mallow can very well do: but the root of Abutilon or Yellow Mallow not at all: it may be called in English, Yellow Mallow, and Avicennna his Mallow.

The Temperaturer

The temperature of this Mallow is referred unto the Tree Mallow.

The Virtues.

A. Avicenna saith, that Abutilon or Yellow Mallow, is held to be good for green wounds, and doth presently glue together, and perfectly cure the same.

B. The seed drunk in wine prevaleth mightily against the stone.

C. Bernardus Paludanus of Anchusen reporteth, that the Turks do drink the seed to provoke sleep and rest.
The Description.

1. The Venice Mallow riseth up with long, round, feeble stalks, whereon are set upon long slender footstalks, broad jagged leaves, deeply cut even to the middle rib: amongst which come forth very pleasant and beautiful flowers, in shape like those of the common Mallow, something white about the edges, but in the middle of a fine purple: in the midst of this flower standeth forth a knop or pistil, as yellow as gold: it openeth itself about eight of the clock; and shutteth up again at noon about twelve o'clock when it hath received the beams of the sun, for two or three hours, whereon it should seem to rejoice to look, and for whose departure, being then upon the point of declension, it seems to grieve, and so shuts up the flowers that were open, and never opens them again; whereupon it might more properly be called *Malva horaria*, or the Mallow of an hour: and this Columella seemeth to call *Moloche*, in this verse;

    *Et Moloche, Prono sequitur quae vertice solem.*

    ["And Moloche, which is accustomed to follow the course of the sun"]

The seed is contained in thick rough bladders, whereupon Dodonæus calleth it *Malva vesicaria*: within the bladders or seed vessels are contained black seed, not unlike to those of *Nigella romana*. The root is small and tender, & perisheth when the seed is ripe, and must be increased by new and yearly sowing of the seed, carefully reserved.

2. Thorny Mallow riseth up with one upright stalk of two cubits high, dividing itself into divers branches, whereupon are placed leaves deeply cut to the middle rib,
and likewise snipped about the edges like a saw, in taste like Sorrel. The flowers for
the most part thrust forth of the trunk or body of the small stalk, compact of five small
leaves, of a yellowish colour; the middle part whereof is of a purple tending to
redness: the husk or cod wherein the flower doth stand is set or armed with sharp
thorns; the root is small, single, and most impatient of our cold climate, insomuch that
when I had with great industry nourished up some plants from the seed, and kept them
unto the midst of May; notwithstanding one cold night chancing among many, hath
destroyed them all.

Fig. 1363. Egyptian Codded Mallow

3. This also is a stranger cut leaved Mallow, which Clusius hath set forth by
the name of Alcea ægyptia: and Prosper Alpinus by the title of Bammia: the stalk is
round, straight, green, some cubit and half high: upon which without order grow
leaves at the bottom of the stalk, like those of Mallow, cornered and snipped about the
edges; but from the middle of the stalk to the top they are cut in with five deep gashes
like as the leaves of the last described: the flowers grow forth by the sides of the stalk,
in form and colour like those of the last mentioned, to wit, with five yellowish leaves:
after these follow long thick fine cornered hairy and sharp pointed seed vessels,
containing a seed like Orobus, covered with a little downiness: this grows in Egypt,
where they eat the fruit thereof as we do peas and beans: Alpinus attributes divers
virtues to this plant, agreeable to those of the common Marsh Mallow.

The Place.

The seeds hereof have been brought out of Spain and other hot countries. The
first prospereth well in my garden from year to year.
The Time.

They are to be sown in the most fertile ground and sunny places of the garden, in the beginning of May, or in the end of April.

The Names.

Their names have been sufficiently touched in their several descriptions. The first may be called in English, Venice Mallow, Goodnight-at-Noon, or the Mallow flowering but an hour: of Matthiolus it is called *Hypecooan*, or Rue Poppy; but unproperly.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. There is a certain clammy juice in the leaves of the Venice Mallow, whereupon it is thought to come near unto the temperature of the common Mallow, and to be of a mollifying faculty: but his use in physic is not yet known, and therefore can there be no certainty affirmed.
CHAP. 356. Of Crane's-Bill.

The Kinds.

There be many kinds of Crane's-Bill, whereof two were known to Dioscorides, one with the knobby root, the other with the Mallow leaf.

1. Dove's-Foot hath many hairy stalks, trailing or leaning toward the ground, of a brownish colour, somewhat kneed or jointed; whereupon do grow rough leaves of an overworn green colour, round, cut about the edges, and like unto those of the common Mallow: amongst which come forth the flowers of a bright purple colour: after which is the seed, set together like the head and bill of a bird; whereupon it was called Crane's-Bill, or Stork's-Bill, as are also all the other of his kind. The root is slender, with some fibres annexed thereto.

2. There is another kind of this with larger stalks and leaves, also the leaves are more deeply cut in and divided, and the flowers are either of the same colour as those of the common kind, or else somewhat more whitish. This may be called Geranium columbinum maius dissectis foliis, Great Dove's-Foot.

3. To this kind may also fitly be referred the Geranium saxatile of Thalius: the root is small and thready, the leaves are smoother, redder, more bluntly cut about the edges, and transparent than those of the first described, yet round, and otherwise like them: the flowers are small and red, and the bills like those of the former. Master Goodyer found it growing plentifully on the banks by the highway leading from Guildford towards London, near unto the town's end.
The Place.

It is found near to common highways, desert places, untiled grounds, and specially upon mud walls almost everywhere.

The Time.

It springeth up in March and April, flowereth in May, and bringeth his seed to ripeness in June.

The Names.


The Temperature.

Dove's-Foot is cold and somewhat dry, with some astringation or binding, having power to solder or join together.

The Virtues.

A. It seemeth, saith my author, to be good for green and bleeding wounds, and assuageth inflammations or hot swellings.

B. The herb and roots dried, beaten into most fine powder, and given half a spoonful fasting, and the like quantity to bedwards in red wine, or old claret, for the space of one and twenty days together, cureth miraculously ruptures or burstings, as myself have often proved, whereby I have gotten crowns and credit: if the ruptures be in aged persons, it shall be needful to add thereto the powder of red snails (those without shells) dried in an oven, in number nine, which fortifieth the herbs in such sort, that it never faileth, although the rupture be great and of long continuance: it likewise profiteth much those that are wounded into the body, and the decoction of the herb made in wine, prevaleth mightily in healing inward wounds, as myself have likewise proved.
CHAP. 357. Of Herb Robert.

The Description.

Herb Robert bringeth forth slender weak and brittle stalks, somewhat hairy, and of a reddish colour, as are oftentimes the leaves also, which are jagged and deeply cut, like unto those of Chervil, of a most loathsome stinking smell. The flowers are of a most bright purple colour; which being past, there follow certain small heads, with sharp beaks or bills like those of birds: the root is small and thready.

The Place.

Herb Robert groweth upon old walls, as well those made of brick and stone, as those of mud or earth: it groweth likewise among rubbish, the bodies of trees that are cut down; and in moist and shadowy ditch banks.

The Time.

It flowereth from April till summer be almost spent: the herb is green in winter also, and is hardly hurt with cold.

The Names.

It is called in high Dutch, Ruprechts kraut: in low Dutch, Robrechts kruid: and thereupon it is named in Latin, Ruberta, and Roberti herba: Ruellius calleth it Robertiana, and we, Robertianum: of Tabernamontanus, Rupertianum: in English, Herb Robert. He that conferreth this Crane's-Bill with Dioscorides his third Sideritis shall plainly perceive, that they are both one, and that this is most apparently Sideritis 3. Dioscoridis; for Dioscorides setteth down three Sideritides, one with the leaf of Horehound, the next with the leaf of Fern; and the third growth in walls and vineyards: the native soil of Herb Robert agree thereunto, and likewise the leaves,
being like unto Chervil, and not unlike to those of Corianders, according to Dioscorides’ description.

**The Temperature.**

Herb Robert is of temperature somewhat cold: and yet both scouring and somewhat binding, participating of mixed faculties.

**The Virtues.**

A. It is good for wounds and ulcers of the dugs & secret parts; it is thought to stanch blood, which thing Dioscorides doth attribute to his third *Sideritis*: the virtue of this, saith he, is applied to heal up bloody wounds.
CHAP. 358. Of Knobbed Crane's-Bill.

This kind of Crane's-Bill hath many flexible branches, weak and tender, fat, and full of moisture, whereon are placed very great leaves cut into divers small sections or divisions, resembling the leaves of the tuberous Anemone, or Wind-Flower, but somewhat greater, of an over-worn greenish colour: among which come forth long footstalks, whereon do grow fair flowers, of a bright purple colour, and like unto the smallest briar Rose in form: which being past, there succeed such heads and beaks as the rest of the Crane's-Bills have: the root is thick, bumped or knobbed, which we call tuberous.

The Place.

This kind of Crane's-Bill is a stranger in England, notwithstanding I have it growing in my garden.

The Time.

The time answereth the rest of the Crane's-Bills.

The Names.

Crane's-Bill is called in Latine, Gruinalis, commonly Rostrum Gruis, or Rostrum Ciconia: of the likeness of a Crane's-Bill, or Stork's-Bill: of some, Acus moscata: but that name doth rather belong to another of this kind: it is also called Acus pastoris: in Italian, Rostro di grua: in French, Bec de Grue: in Spanish, Pico di Ciquina, pico del grou: in High Dutch, Storckenbeschable: in Low Dutch, Diewoers beck: in English, Stork's-Bill, Crane's-Bill, Heron's-Bill, and Pink-Needle: this is also
called for distinction's sake, *Geranium tuberosum*, and *Geranium bulbosum*: it is likewise *Geranium primum Diorcoridis* or Dioscorides his first Crane's-Bill.

**The Temperature.**

The roots of this Crane's-Bill have a little kind of heat in them.

**The Virtues.**

A. Dioscorides saith that the roots may be eaten, and that a dram weight of them drunk in wine doth waste and consume away the windiness of the matrix.

B. Also Pliny affirmeth, that the root hereof is singular good for such as after weakness crave to be restored to their former strength.

C. The same author affirmeth that the weight of a dram of it drunk in wine three times in a day, is excellent good against the phthisic, or consumption of the lungs.
CHAP. 359. Of Musked Crane's-Bill.

The Description.

Musked Crane's-Bill hath many weak and feeble branches trailing upon the ground, whereon do grow long leaves, made of many smaller leaves, set upon a middle rib, snipped or cut about the edges, of a pleasant sweet smell, not unlike to that of Musk: among which come forth the flowers set upon tender footstalks, of a red colour, compact of five small leaves apiece: after which appear small heads and pointed beaks or bills like the other kinds of Crane's-Bills. the root is small and thready.

The Place.

It is planted in gardens for the sweet smell that the whole plant is possessed with, but if you rub the leaves and then smell to them, you shall find them to have a scent quite contrary to the former.

The Time.

It flowereth and flourisheth all the summer long.

The Names.

It is called Myrrhida plinii rostrum ciconiae, Arcus moschata, in shops, and Acus pastoris, and likewise Geranium moschatum: in English, Musked Stork's-Bill, and Crane's-Bill, Muschatum, and of the vulgar sort Muschata, and also Pick-needle.

The Temperature.

This Crane's-Bill hath not any of his faculties found out or known: yet it seemeth to be cold and a little dry, with someastriction or binding.
The Virtues.

The virtues are referred unto those of Dove's-Foot, and are thought of Dioscorides to be good for green and bloody wounds, and hot swellings that are newly begun.
CHAP. 360. Of Crowfoot Crane's-Bill, or Gratia Dei.

The Description.

1. Crowfoot Crane's-Bill hath many long and tender branches tending to
cirdness, set with great leaves deeply cut or jagged, in form like those of the field
Crowfoot, whereof it took his name; the flowers are pretty large, and grow at the top
of the stalks upon tender footstalks, of a perfect blue colour: which being past, there
succeed such heads, beaks, and bills as the other Crane's-Bills.

I have in my garden another sort of this Crane's-Bill, bringing forth very fair
white flowers, which maketh it to differ from the precedent; in other respects there is
no difference at all.

2. This which is the *Geranium 2. batrachiodes minus* of Clusius hath large
stalks and leaves, and those very much divided or cut in; the stalks also are divided
into sundry branches, which upon long footstalks carry flowers like in shape, but less
than those of the formerly described, and not blue, but of a reddish purple colour,
having ten threads and a pointel coming forth of the middle of the flower: the beaks or
bills which are the seed stand upright, and hang not down their points as most others
do. The root is large and lives many years.

3. The stalks of this are stiff, green, and hairy, divided at their tops into sundry
branches which end in long footstalks, upon which grow flowers commonly by
couples, and these of a dark red colour. The leaves are large, soft, and hairy, divided into six or seven parts, and snipped about the
edges; the roots are large and lasting. It is kept with us in gardens, and flowers in
May. Clusius calls it *Geranium 1. pullo flore*.

4. This also hath stalks and leaves much like those of the last described, but
somewhat less: the flowers are as large as those of the last described, but of a more
light red, and they are contained in thicker and shorter cups, and succeeded by shorter
seeds or bills, and are commonly of a sweet musk-like smell: The root is very long,
red, and lasting. It flowers in the midst of May, and is called by Gesner, *Geranium
montanum*: by Dodonæus, *Geranium batrachioides alterum*; and by Lobell, *Geranium
batrachioides longius radicatum*.

The Place.

These Crane's-Bills are wild of their own nature, and grow in barren places,
and in valleys rather than in mountains. Both of them do grow in my garden.

The Time.

They flower, flourish, and grow green most part of the Summer.

The Names.

It called in Greek, *Batrachioides*, and *Geranium batrachioides*, which name it
taketh from the likeness of Crowfoot: of some it is called *Ranunculus caeruleus*, or
blue Crowfoot: Fuchsius calleth it *Gottes gnad*, that is in Latin, *Gratia Dei* [God's
thanks]: in English also Gratia dei, Blue Crane's-Bill, or Crane's-Bill with the blue
flowers, or blue Crow's-Foot Crane's-Bill.

The Temperature.

The Temperature is referred to the other Crane's-Bills.

The Virtues.

None of these plants are now in use in physic; yet Fuchsius saith, that Crane's-
Bill with the blue flower is an excellent thing to heal wounds.
CHAP. 361. Of Candy Crane's-Bill.

The Description.

1. The Crane's-Bill of Candy hath many long tender stalks, soft, and full of juice: dividing itself into divers branches, whereon are set great broad leaves, cut, or jagged in divers sections or cuts: among which come forth flowers composed of five leaves apiece, of a bluish or watchet colour, in the middle part whereof come forth a few chives, and a small pointel of a purplish colour: the head and beak is like to the rest of the Crane's-Bills, but greater; the root dieth when it hath perfected his seed.

2. This Crane's-Bill, being a bastard kind of the former, hath long slender branches growing to the height of two or three cubits, set about with very great leaves, not unlike to those of Hollyhocks, but somewhat lesser, of an overworn green colour: among which rise up little footstalks, on the ends whereof do grow small flowers, lesser than those of the precedent, and of a murrey colour: the head and seeds are like also, but much lesser: the roots do likewise die at the first approach of Winter.

The Place.

These are strangers in England, except in the gardens of some herbarists: they grow in my garden very plentifully.
The Time.

The time answereth the rest of the Crane's-Bills, yet doth that of Candy flower for the most part with me in May.

The Names.

There is not more to be said of the names than hath been remembered in their several titles: they may be called in English, Crane's-Bills, or Stork's-Bills.

The Temperature.

Their temperature answereth that of Dove's-Foot.

The Virtues.

A. Their faculties in working are equal to those of Dove's-foot, and used for the same purposes, (& rightly) specially being used in wound drinks, for the which it doth far excel any of the Crane's-Bills, and is equal with any other herb whatsoever for the same purpose.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts or kinds of Crane's-Bills which have not been remembered of the ancients, nor much spoken of by the later writers, all which I mean to comprehend under this chapter, making as it were of them a chapter of wild
Crane's-Bills, although some of them have place in our London gardens, and that
worthily, especially for the beauty of the flowers: their names shall be expressed in
their several titles, their natures and faculties are referred to the other Crane's-Bills, or
if you please to a further consideration.

The Description.

1. Spotted Crane's-Bill, or Stork's-Bill, the which Lobel describeth in the title
thus, *Geranium fuscum flore livido purpurante, & medio candidante*, whose leaves are
like unto Crowfoot (being a kind doubtless of Crane's-Bill, called *Gratia Dei*) of an
overworn dusty colour, and of a strong savour, yet not altogether unpleasant: the
stalks are dry and brittle, at the tops whereof do grow pleasant flowers of a dark
purple colour, the middle part of them tending to whiteness: from the style or pointel
thereof, cometh forth a tuft of small purple hairy threads. The root is thick and very
brittle, lifting itself forth of the ground, insomuch that many of the said roots lie above
the ground naked without earth, even as the roots of Fleur-de-lys do.

2. Of those wild ones I have another sort in my garden, which Clusius in his
*Pannonic Observations* hath called *Geranium hæmatoides* or sanguine Crane's-Bill:
and Lobel, *Geranium gruinam*, or *gruinale*: it hath many flexible branches creeping
upon the ground: the leaves are much like unto Dove's-Foot in form, but cut even to
the middle rib. The flowers are like those of the small wild Mallows and of the same
bigness, of a perfect bright red colour, which if they be suffered to grow and stand
until the next day, will be a murrey colour; and if they stand unto the third day, they
will turn into a deep purple tending to blueness, their changing is such, that you shall
find at one time upon one branch flowers like in form, but of divers colours. The root
is thick, and of a woody substance.

3. This wild kind of Musked Crane's-Bill, being altogether without savour or
smell, is called *Myrrhida inodorum*, or *Geranium arvense inodorum*, which hath
many leaves spread flat upon the ground, every leaf made of divers smaller leaves,
and those cut or jagged about the edges, of no smell at all: amongst which rise up
slender branches, whereon do grow small flowers of a light purple colour: the root is
long and fibrous.

4. This is also one of the wild kinds of Crane's-Bills, agreeing with the last
described in each respect, except the flowers, for as the other hath purple flowers, so
this plant bringeth forth white flowers, other difference there is none at all.

5. The Crane's-Bill with violet coloured flowers, hath a thick woody root, with
some few strings annexed thereto: from which rise immediately forth of the ground
divers stiff stalks, which divide themselves into other small branches, whereupon are
set confusedly broad leaves, made of three leaves apiece, and those jagged or cut
about the edges: the flowers grow at the top of the branches of a perfect violet colour,
whereof it took his name: after which come such beaks or bills as the other of his
kind.

6. I have likewise another sort that was sent me from Robinus of Paris, whose
figure was never set forth, neither described of any: it springeth from a thick tough
root, with many branches of a brownish colour: whereupon do grow leaves not unlike
to those of *Gratia Dei*, but not so deeply cut, somewhat cornered, and of a shining
green colour: the flowers grow at the top of the tender branches, composed of six
small leaves, of a bright scarlet colour.
Gerard's Herbal

The Place.

The third and fourth of these Crane's-Bills grow of themselves about old walls, and about the borders of fields, woods and copses; and most of the rest we have growing in our gardens.

The Time.

Their time of flowering and seeding answereth the rest of the Crane's-Bills.

The Names.

Their several titles shall serve for their names, referring what might have been said more to a further consideration.

The Nature and Virtues.

A. There hath not as yet anything been found either of their temperature or faculties, but may be referred unto the other of their kind.
CHAP. 363. Of certain other Crane's-Bills.

The Description

1. This which Clusius received from Doctor Thomas Penny of London, and sets forth by the same title as you find it here expressed, hath a root consisting of sundry long and small bulbs, and which is fibrous towards the top: the stalk is a cubit high, jointed, and red near unto the root, and about the joints: out of each of these joints come two leaves which are fastened unto somewhat long footstalks, and divided into five parts, which also are snipped about the edges: out of each of which joints by the setting on the footstalks come forth five little sharp pointed leaves: the flowers grow by couples upon the tops of the stalks, and are of a reddish purple colour. It grows wild in Denmark; whence Dr. Turner brought it, and bestowed it upon Dr. Penny before mentioned.

2. This hath stalks some foot high, jointed, and of a purplish colour: upon which grow leaves divided into three parts; but those below are cut into five, and both the one and the other are snipped about the edges: the flowers are composed of five reddish purple leaves of a pretty largeness, with a reddish pointel in the middle; and falling, the seed follows, as in other plants of this kind: the root is knotty, and jointed, with some fibres: it flowers in May, and so continueth a great part of the summer after. Clusius calls this *Geranium 5. nodosum, Plateau*. This sometimes is found to carry tuberous excrescences upon the stalks, toward the later end of summer, whence Plateau distinguished it from the other, but afterwards found it to be the same; and
Gerard's Herbal

Clusius also figures and describeth this later variety by the name of *Geranium 6. tuberiferum Plateau*.

![Image of Silver-Leaved Mountain Crane's-Bill](image)

**Fig. 1374. Silver-Leaved Mountain Crane's-Bill (3)**

3. The root of this is some two handfuls long, black without, and white within, and towards the top divided into sundry parts; whence put forth leaves covered over with a fine silver down; and they are divided into five parts, each of which again is divided into three others, and they are fastened to long slender and round footstalks: the flowers grow upon footstalks shorter than those of the leaves; the flowers in colour and shape are like those of the Vervain Mallow, but much less; and after it is faded there follows a short bill, as in the other plants of this kind. It flowers in July, and grows upon the Alps, where Pona found it, and first set it forth by the name of *Geranium alpinum longius radicatum*.

4. The stalks of this pretty Crane's-Bill are some foot or better high, whereon grow leaves parted into five or six parts like those of the *Geranium fuscum*, but of a lighter green colour: the flowers are large, composed of five thin and soon fading leaves of a whitish colour, all over intermixed with fine veins of a reddish colour, which add a great deal of beauty to the flower: for these veins are very small, and curiously dispersed over the leaves of the flower. It flowers in June, and is preserved in divers of our gardens; some call it *Geran. romanum striatum*: in the *Hortus Estettensis* it is set forth by the name of *Geranium anglicum variegatum*. Bauhin calls it *Geranium batrachioides flore variegato*. We may call it Variegated or Striped Crane's-Bill.

5. There is of late brought into this kingdom; and to our knowledge, by the industry of Mr John Tradescant, another more rare and no less beautiful than any of the former; and he had it by the name of *Geranium indicum noctu odoratum*; this hath not as yet been written of by any that I know; therefore I will give you the description
thereof, but cannot as yet give you the figure, because I omitted the taking thereof the last year, and it is not as yet come to his perfection. The leaves are larger, being almost a foot long, composed of sundry little leaves of an unequal bigness, set upon a thick and stiff middle rib; and these leaves are much divided and cut in, so that the whole leaf somewhat resembles that of Tanacetum inodorum: and they are thick, green, and somewhat hairy: the stalk is thick, and some cubit high; at the top of each branch, upon footstalks some inch long grow some eleven or twelve flowers, and each of these flowers consisteth of five round pointed leaves of a yellowish colour, with a large black purple spot in the middle of each leaf; as if it were painted, which gives the flower a great deal of beauty, and it also hath a good smell. I did see it in flower about the end of July, 1632, being the first time that it flowered with the owner thereof. We may fitly call it Sweet Indian Stork's-Bill, or Painted Stork's-Bill: and in Latin, Geranium Indicum odoratum flore maculato.
CHAP. 364. Of Sanicle.

Sanicle

Sanicula, sive Diapensia. Sanicle.

The Description.

Sanicle hath leaves of a blackish green colour, smooth and shining, somewhat round, divided into five parts like those of the Vine, or rather those of the Maple: among which rise up slender stalks of a brown colour, on the tops whereof stand white mossy flowers: in their places come up round seed, rough, cleaving to men's garments as they pass by, in manner of little burs: the root is black, and full of thready strings.

The Place.

It groweth in shadowy woods and copses almost everywhere: it joyeth in a fat and fruitful moist soil.

The Time.

It flowereth in May and June: the seed is ripe in August: the leaves of the herb are green all the year, and are not hurt with the cold of winter.

The Names.

It is commonly called Sanicula; of divers, Diapensia: in high and low Dutch, Sanikel: in French, Sanicle: in English, Sanicle, or Sanikel: it is so called, à sanandus vulneribus, or of healing of wounds, as Ruellius saith: there be also other Sanicles, so named of most herbarists, as that which is described by the name of Dentaria, or Coralwort, and likewise Auricula ursi, or Bear's-Ear, which is a kind of Cowslip; and likewise another set forth by the name of Sanicala guttata, whereof we have entreated among the kinds of Bear's-Ears.
The Temperature.

Sanicle as it is in taste bitter, with a certain binding quality, so besides that it cleanseth, and by the binding faculty strengtheneth, it is hot and dry, and that in the second degree, and after some authors, hot in the third degree, and astringent.

The Virtues.

A. The juice being inwardly taken is good to heal wounds. The decoction of it also made in wine or water is given against spitting of blood, and the bloody flux: also foul and filthy ulcers be cured by being bathed therewith. The herb boiled in water, and applied in manner of a poultice, doth dissolve and waste away cold swellings it is used in potions which are called vulnerary potions, or wound drinks, which maketh whole and sound all inward wounds and outward hurts; it also helpeth the ulcerations of the kidneys, ruptures, or burstings.
CHAP. 365. Of Lady's Mantle, or great Sanicle.

The Description.

Lady's Mantle hath many round leaves, with five or six corners finely indented about the edges, which before they be opened are plaited and folded together, not unlike to the leaves of Mallows, but whiter, and more curled: among which rise up tender stalks set with the like leaves but much lesser: on the tops whereof grow small mosssy flowers clustering thick together, of a yellowish green colour. The seed is small and yellow, enclosed in green husks. The root is thick, and full of thready strings.

The Place.

It groweth of itself wild in divers places, as in the town pastures of Andover, and in many other places in Berkshire and Hampshire in their pastures and copses, or low woods, and also upon the bank of a moat that encloseth a house in Bushey called Bourne Hall, fourteen miles from London, and in the highway from thence to Watford, a small mile distant from it.

The Time.

It flowereth in May and June: it flourisheth in winter as well as in summer.

The Names

It is called of the later herbarists Alchimilla: and of most, Stellaria, Pes leonis, Pata leonis, and Sanicula maior: in High Dutch, Synnauwe, and Onser Frauwen Mantel: in French, Pied de Lion: in English, Lady's Mantle, Great Sanicle, Lion's Foot, Lion's Paw; and of some, Padelyon.
The Temperature.

Lady's Mantle is like in temperature to little Sanicle, yet is it more drying and more binding.

The Virtues.

A. It is applied to wounds after the same manner that the smaller Sanicle is, being of like efficacy: it stoppeth bleeding, and also the overmuch flowing of the natural sickness: it keeps down maidens' paps or dugs, and when they be too great or flaggy it maketh them lesser or harder.

The Description.
When I made mention of *Helleborus albus*, I did also set down my censure concerning *Elleborine, or Epipactus*: but this Elleborine of the Alps I put in this place, because it approacheth nearer unto Sanicle and *Ranunculus*, as participating of both: it groweth in the mountains and highest parts of the Alpish hills, and is a stranger as yet in our English gardens. The root is compact of many small twisted strings like Black Hellebore: from thence arise small tender stalks, smooth, and easy to bend; in whose tops grow leaves with five divisions, somewhat nicked about the edges like unto Sanicle: the flowers consist of six leaves somewhat shining, in taste sharp, yet not unpleasant. This is the plant which Pena found in the Forest of Esens, nor far from Jupiter's Mount, and sets forth by the name of *Alpina elleborine saniculæ & Ellebori nigrī facie*.

The Nature and Virtues.
I have not as yet found anything of his nature or virtues.
CHAP. 367. Of Crowfoots.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts or kinds of these pernicious herbs comprehended under the name of Ranunculus, or Crowfoot, whereof most are very dangerous to be taken into the body, and therefore they require a very exquisite moderation, with a most
exact and due manner of tempering, not any of them are to be taken alone by
themselves, because they are of most violent force, and therefore have the greater
need of correction.

The knowledge of these plants is as necessary to the physician as of other
herbs, to the end they may shun the same, as Scribonius Largos saith, and not take
them ignorantly: or also, if necessity at any time require, that they may use them, and
that with some deliberation and special choice, and with their proper correctives. For
these dangerous simples are likewise many times of themselves beneficial, and
oftentimes profitable: for some of them are not so dangerous, but that they may in
some sort, and oftentimes in fit and due season profit and do good, if temperature and
moderation be used: of which there be four kinds, as Dioscorides writeth; one with
broad leaves, another that is downy, the third very small, and the fourth with a white
flower: the later herbarists have observed also many more: all these may be brought
into two principal kinds, so that one be a garden or tame one, and the other wild; and
of these some are common, and others rare, or foreign. Moreover, there is a difference
both in the roots and in the leaves; for one hath a bumped or knobby root, another a
long leaf as Spearwort: and first of the wild or field Crowfoots, referring the reader
unto the end of the stock and kindred of the same, for the temperature and virtues.

The Description.

1. The common Crowfoot hath leaves divided into many parts, commonly
three, sometimes five, cut here and there in the edges, of a deep green colour, in which
stand divers white spots: the stalks be round, something hairy, some of them bow
down toward the ground, and put forth many little roots, whereby it taketh hold of the
ground as it traileth along: some of them stand upright, a foot high or higher; on the
tops whereof grow small flowers with five leaves apiece, of a yellow glittering colour
like gold: in the middle part of these flowers stand certain small threads of like colour:
which being past, the seeds follow, made up in a rough ball: the roots are white and
thready.

2. The second kind of Crowfoot is like unto the precedent, saving that his
leaves are fatter, thicker, and greener, and his small twiggy stalks stand upright,
otherwise it is like: of which kind it chanced, that walking in the field next to the
Theatre by London, in the company of a worshipful merchant named Mr Nicolas Lete,
I found one of this kind there with double flowers, which before that time I had not
seen.

The Place.

They grow of themselves in pastures and meadows almost everywhere.

The Time.

They flower in May and many months after.

The Names.

Crowfoot is called of Lobel, Ranunculus pratensis: of Dodonæus, Ranunculus
hortensis, but unproperly: of Pliny, Polyanthemum, which he saith divers name
Batrachion: in High Dutch, Schmalbluom: in low Dutch, Boter Bloemen; in English,
King Kob, Gold cups, Gold knobs, Crowfoot, and Butter-flowers.
The Description.

3. The third kind of Crowfoot, called in Latin *Ranunculus arvuorum*, because it grows commonly in fallow fields where corn hath been lately sown, and may be called Corn Crowfoot, hath for the most part an upright stalk of a foot high, which divides itself into other branches: whereon do grow fat thick leaves very much cut or jagged, resembling the leaves of Samphire, but nothing so green, but rather of an overworn colour. The flowers grow at the top of the branches, compact of five small leaves of a faint yellow colour: after which come in place clusters of rough and sharp pointed seeds. The root is small and thready.

4. The fourth Crowfoot, which is called *Ranunculus alpinus*, because those that have first written thereof have not found it elsewhere but upon the Alpish mountains (notwithstanding it groweth in England plentifully wild, especially in a wood called Hampstead Wood, and is planted in gardens) hath divers great fat branches two cubits high, set with large leaves like the common Crowfoot, but greater, of a deep green colour, much like to those of yellow Aconite, called *Aconitum luteum ponticum*. The flowers consist of five white leaves, with small yellow chives in the middle, smelling like the flowers of May or Hawthorn, but more pleasant. The roots are greater than any of the stock of Crowfoots.

The Place and Time.

Their place of growing is touched in their description: their time of flowering and seeding answereth the other of their kinds.

The Names.

The white Crowfoot of the Alps and French mountains is the fourth of Dioscorides his description; for he describeth his fourth to have a white flower: more hath not been said touching the names, yet Tabernamontanus calls it *Batrachium album*: in English, White Crowfoot.
The Description.

5. Among the wild Crowfoots there is one that is surnamed *Illyricus*, which brings forth slender stalks, round, and of a mean length: whereupon do grow long narrow leaves cut into many long gashes, something white, and covered with a certain downiness: the flowers be of a pale yellow colour: the root consisteth of many small bumps as it were grains of corn, or little long bulbs growing close together like those of Pilewort. It is reported, that it was first brought out of Illyria into Italy, and from thence into the Low Countries: notwithstanding we have it growing very common in England, but only in gardens that I have seen.

6. The sixth kind of Crowfoot, called *Ranunculus bulbosus*, or Onion-Rooted Crowfoot, and Round-Rooted Crowfoot, hath a round knobby or onion-fashioned root, like unto a small Turnip, and of the bigness of a great Olive: from the which rises up many leaves spread upon the ground, like those of the Field Crowfoot, but smaller, and of an overworn green colour: amongst which rise up slender stalks of the height of a foot: whereupon do grow flowers of a faint yellow colour. This grows wild in most places, and flowers at the beginning of May.

The Place.

It is also reported to be found not only in Illyria and Slavonia, but also in the island Sardinia, standing in the Midland, or Mediterranean sea.

The Names.

This Illyrian Crowfoot is named *Apium sylvestre*, or Wild Smallage: also *Herba sardoa*: it may be, saith my author, that kind of Crowfoot called *Apium risus*;
and this is thought to be that *Golotophilis*, of which Pliny maketh mention in his 24th book, 17th chap. which being drunk, saith he, with wine and myrrh, causeth a man to see divers strange sights, and not to cease laughing till he hath drunk pineapple kernels with pepper in wine of the date tree, (I think he would have said until he be dead) because the nature of laughing Crowfoot is thought to kill laughing, but without doubt the thing is clean contrary; for it causeeth such convulsions, cramps and wringings of the mouth and jaws, that it hath seemed to some that the parties have died laughing, whereas in truth they have died in great torment.
7. The seventh kind of Crowfoot called *Auricomon*, of the golden locks wherewith the flower is thrummed, hath for his root a great bush of blackish hairy strings; from which shoot forth small jagged leaves, not much unlike to Sanicle, but divided only into three parts, yet sometimes into five; among which rise up branched...
storks of a foot high, whereon are placed the like leaves but smaller, set about the top of the stalks, whereon do grow yellow flowers, sweet smelling, of which it hath been called *Ranunculus dulcis tragi*, or Tragus his sweet Crowfoot. It grows in meadows and about the sides of woods, and flowers in April.

8. Frog Crowfoot, called of Pena, *Aconitum batrachioides*: of Dodonæus, *Batrachion apulei*, is that formerly described in the fourth place, whereto this is much alike, but that the stalks and leaves are larger, as also the flowers, which are white: the root is tough and thready.

9. The ninth Crowfoot hath many grassy leaves, of a deep green tending to blueness, somewhat long, narrow and smooth, very like unto those of the Small Bistort, or Snakeweed, among which rise up slender stalks, bearing at the top small yellow flowers like the other Crowfoots: the root is small and thready. There is a variety of this having double flowers; and I have given you the figure thereof.

10. The autumn or winter Crowfoot hath divers broad leaves spread upon the ground, snipped about the edges, of a bright shining green colour on the upper side, and hoary underneath, full of ribs or sinews as are those of Plantain, of an unpleasant taste at the first, afterward nipping the tongue: among which leaves rise up sundry tender footstalks, on the tops whereof stand yellow flowers consisting of six small leaves apiece: after which succeed little knops of seed like to a dry or withered strawberry. The root is compact of a number of limber roots, rudely thrust together in manner of the Asphodel.
11. The Portugal Crowfoot hath many thick clogged roots fastened unto one head, very like those of the yellow Asphodel, from which rise up three leaves, seldom more, broad, thick, and puffed up in divers places, as if it were a thing that were blistered, by means whereof it is very uneven. From the middle of which leaves riseth up a naked stalk, thick, fat, very tender, but yet fragile, or easy to break: on the end whereof standeth a fair single yellow flower, having in the middle a naked roundel of a gold yellow tending to a Saffron colour.

12. The Globe Crowfoot hath very many leaves deeply cut and jagged, of a bright green colour like those of the field Crowfoot, among which riseth up a stalk, divided toward the top into other branches, furnished with the like leaves of those next the ground, but smaller: on the tops of which branches grow very fair yellow flowers, consisting of a few leaves folded or rolled up together like a round ball or globe: whereupon it was called. *Ranunculus globosus*, or the Globe Crowfoot, or Globe flower: which being past, there succeed round knops, wherein is blackish seed. The root is small and thready.

13. This hath large leaves like those of the last described, but rough and hairy: the stalk is four foot high; the flowers are pretty large, composed of five white sharpish pointed leaves. It flowers in July, and grows in the Alps: it is the *Ranunculi montani 2 species altera* of Clusius.

14. This other hath leaves not unlike those of the precedent, and such stalks also; but the flowers consist of round leaves, purplish beneath; the edges of the upper
side are of a whitish purple, & the residue wholly white, with many yellow threads in the middle; it grows in the mountain Jura, against the city of Geneva, whereas it flowers in June, and ripens the seed in August. Clusius had the figure and description hereof from Dr. Penny, and he calls it *Ranunculus montanus 3*.

**The Place.**

The twelfth kind of Crowfoot groweth in most places of Yorkshire and Lancashire, and other bordering shires of the North country, almost in every meadow, but not found wild in these Southerly or Westerly parts of England that I could ever understand of.

**The Time.**

It flowereth in May and June: the seed is ripe in August.

**The Names.**

The Globe-Flower is called generally *Ranunculus globosus*, of some, *Flos trollius*, and *Ranunculus alpinus*, in English, Globe Crowfoot, Troll-Flowers, and Lockron Gowlons.
CHAP. 368. Of Double Yellow and White Bachelor's Buttons.

1. The great double Crowfoot or Bachelor's Button hath many jagged leaves of a deep green colour: among which rise up stalks, whereon do grow fair yellow flowers exceeding double, of a shining yellow colour, oftentimes thrusting forth of the midst of the said flowers one other smaller flower: the root is round, or fashioned like a Turnip; the form whereof hath caused it to be called of some St. Anthony's Turnip, or Rape Crowfoot. The seed is wrapped in a cluster of rough knobs, as are most of the Crowfoots.

2. The Double Yellow Crowfoot hath leaves of a bright green colour, with many weak branches trailing upon the ground; whereon do grow very double yellow flowers like unto the precedent, but altogether lesser. The whole plant is likewise without any manifest difference, saving that these flowers do never bring forth any smaller flower out of the middle of the greater, as the other doth, and also hath no Turnip or knobby root at all, wherein consisteth the difference.
3. The white double Crowfoot hath many great leaves deeply cut with great gashes, and those snipped about the edges. The stalks divide themselves into divers brittle branches, on the tops whereof do grow very double flowers as white as snow, and of the bigness of our yellow Batchelor's Button. The root is tough, limber, and disperseth itself far abroad, whereby it greatly increaseth.

The Place.

The first and third are planted in gardens for the beauty of the flowers, and likewise the second, which hath of late been brought out of Lancashire unto our London gardens, by a curious gentleman in the searching forth of simples, Mr. Thomas Hesketh, who found it growing wild in the town fields of a small village called Hesketh, not far from Latham in Lancashire.

The Time.

They flower from the beginning of May to the end of June.

The Names.

Dioscorides hath made no mention hereof; but Apuleius hath separated the first of these from the others, intreating of it apart, and naming it by a peculiar name *Batrachion*; whereupon it is also called *Apuleii batrachion*, or Apuleius' Crowfoot.

It is commonly called *Rapum S. Anthonii*, or Saint Anthony's Rape: it may be called in English, Rape Crowfoot: it is called generally about London, Bachelor's Buttons and Double Crowfoot: in Dutch, *S. Anthony Rapkin*. Thus our author, but these names and faculties properly belong to the *Ranunculus bulbosus*, described in the sixth place of the last chapter; and also to the first double one here described; for they vary little but in colour, and the singleness and doubleness of their flowers.
Gerard's Herbal

The third is called of Lobel, *Ranunculus niveus polyanthos*: of Tabernamontanus, *Ranunculus albus multiflorus*: in English, Double white Crowfoot, or Bachelor's buttons.

**The Temperature.**

These plants do bite as the other Crowfoots do.

**The Virtues.**

A. The chiepest virtue is in the root, which being stamped with salt is good for those that have a plague sore; if it be presently in the beginning tied to the thigh, in the middle between the groin or flank and the knee: by means whereof the poison and malignity of the disease is drawn from the inward parts, by the emunctory or cleansing place of the flank, into those outward parts of less account: for it exulcerateth and presently raiseth a blister, to what part of the body soever it is applied. And if it chance that the sore happeneth under the arm, then it is requisite to apply it to the arm a little above the elbow. My opinion is, that any of the Crowfoots will do the same: my reason is, because they all and every of them do blister and cause pain, wheresoever they be applied, and pain doth draw unto itself more pain; for the nature of pain is to resort unto the weakest place, and where it may find pain; and likewise the poison and venomous quality of that disease is to resort unto that painful place.

B. Apuleius saith further, That if it be hanged in a linen cloth about the neck of him that is lunatic, in the wane of the moon, when the sign shall be in the first degree of Taurus or Scorpio, that then he shall forthwith be cured. Moreover, the herb Batrachion stamped with vinegar, root and all, is used for them that have black scars or such-like marks on their skins, it eats them out, and leaves a colour like that of the body.
CHAP. 369. Of Turkey or Asian Crowfoots.

The Description.

1. The Double Red Crowfoot hath a few leaves rising immediately forth of the ground, cut in the edges with deep gashes, somewhat hollow and of a bright shining green colour. The stalk riseth up to the height of a foot, smooth and very brittle, dividing itself into other branches sometimes two, seldom three: whereon do grow leaves confusedly, set without order: the flowers grow at the tops of the stalks, very double, and of great beauty, of a perfect scarlet colour, tending to redness. The root is compact of many long tough roots, like those of the yellow Asphodel.

2. Of this kind there is also another, or other the same better expresed; for Clusius the author of these never sees the former, but makes it only to differ, in that the flowers are of a sanguine colour, and those of this of a kind of scarlet, or red lead colour.
3. This differs nothing from the former, but that it sends up another flower somewhat lesser, out of the middle of the first flower, which happens by the strength of the root, and goodness of the soil where it is planted.

4. The Crowfoot of Tripolis or the single red Ranunculus hath leaves at the first coming up like unto those of Groundsel: among which riseth up a stalk of the
height of half a cubit, somewhat hairy, whereon grow broad leaves deeply cut, even to the middle rib, like those of the common Crowfoot, but greener: the flower groweth at the top of the stalk, consisting of five leaves, on the outside of a dark overworn red colour, on the inside of a red lead colour, bright and shining, in shape like the wild Corn Poppy: the knop or style in the middle which containeth the seed is garnished or bedecked with very many small purple thrums tending to blackness: the root is as it were a roundel of little bulbs or grains like those of the small Celandine or Pilewort.

5. There be divers other Asian Crowfoots which Clusius hath set forth, and which grow in the most part in the gardens of our prime florists, and they differ little in their roots, stalks, or leaves, but chiefly in the flowers; wherefore I will only briefly note their differences, not thinking it pertinent to stand upon whole descriptions, unless they were more necessary: this fifth differs from the fourth in that the stalks are divided into sundry branches, which bear like, but less flowers than those which stand upon the main stalk: the colour of these differs not from that of the last described.

6. This is like the last described, but the flowers are of a pure white colour and sometimes have a few streaks of red about their edges.

Fig. 1392. Asian Crowfoot with Yellow Striped Flowers (7)

7. This in stalks and manner of growing is like the precedent; the stalk seldom parting itself into branches; but on the top thereof it carries a fair flower consisting commonly of round topped leaves of a greenish yellow colour, with divers red veins here and there dispersed and running alongst the leaves, with four purple thrums, and a head standing up in the middle as in the former.

The Place.

The first groweth naturally in and about Constantinople, and in Asia on the further side of Bosphorus, from whence there hath been brought plants at divers times,
and by divers persons, but they have perished by reason of their long journey, and want of skill of those bringers, that have suffered them to lie in a box or such-like so long, that when we have received them they have been as dry as ginger; notwithstanding Clusius saith he received a plant fresh and green, the which a domestical thief stole forth of his garden. My Lord and Master the right Honorable the Lord Treasurer had divers plants sent him from thence which were dry before they came, as aforesaid. The other growth in Aleppo and Tripolis in Syria naturally, from whence we have received plants for our gardens, where they flourish as in their own country.

The Time.

They bring forth their pleasant flowers in May and June: the seed is ripe in August.

The Names.

The first is called *Ranunculus constantinopolitanus*: Of Lobel, *Ranunculus sanguineus multiplex, Ranunculus byzantinus, sive asiaticus*: in the Turkish tongue, *Torobolos, Catamer laile*: in English, the double red Ranunculus, or Crowfoot.

The fourth is called Ranunculus tripolitanus, of the place from whence it was first brought into these parts: of the Turks, *Torobolos Catamer*, without that addition *laile*; which is a proper word to all flowers that are double.

The Temperature and Virtues.

Their temperature and virtues are referred to the other Crowfoots, whereof they are thought to be kinds.
CHAP. 370. Of Spearwort, or Banewort.

The Description.

1. Spearwort hath an hollow stalk full of knees or joints, whereon do grow long leaves, a little hairy, not unlike those of the willow, of a shining green colour: the flowers are very large, and grow at the tops of the stalks, consisting of five leaves of fair yellow colour, very like to the field Goldcup, or Wild Crowfoot: after which come round knops or seed vessels, wherein is the seed: the root is contract of divers bulbs or long clogs, mixed with an infinite number of hairy threads.

2. The common Spearwort being that which we have called the lesser, hath leaves, flowers, and stalks like the precedent, but altogether lesser: the root consisteth of an infinite number of thready strings.
3. Jagged Spearwort hath a thick fat hollow stalk, dividing itself into divers branches, whereon are set sometimes by couples two long leaves, sharp pointed, & cut about the edges like the teeth of a saw. The flowers grow at the top of the branches, of a yellow colour, in form like those of the Field Crowfoot: the root consisteth of a number of hairy strings.

4. Marsh Crowfoot, or Spearwort (whereof it is a kind, taken of the best approved authors to be the true *Apium risus*, though divers think that *Pulsatilla* is the same: of some it is called *Apium haemorrhoidarum*) riseth forth of the mud or waterish mire from a thready root, to the height of a cubit, sometimes higher. The stalk divideth itself into divers branches, whereupon do grow leaves deeply cut round about like those of Dove's-Foot, and not unlike to the cut Mallow, but somewhat greater, and of a most bright shining green colour: the flowers grow at the top of the branches, of a yellow colour, like unto the other water Crowfoots.

**The Place.**

They grow in moist and dankish places, in brinks or watercourses, and such like places almost everywhere.

**The Time.**

They flower in May when other Crowfoots do.

**The Names.**

Spearwort is called of the later herbarists *Flammula*, and *Ranunculus flammeus*; of Cordus, *Ranunculus platyphyllus* or broad-leaved Crowfoot: of others,
Ranunculus longifolius, or long-leaved Crowfoot: in Low Dutch, Egelcoolen: in English, Spear Crowfoot, Spearwort, and Banewort, because it is dangerous and deadly for sheep; and that if they feed of the same it inflameth their livers, fretteth and blistereth their guts and entrails.

The Temperature of all the Crowfoots.

Spearwort is like to the other Crowfoots in faculty, it is hot in the mouth or biting, it exulcerateth and raiseth blisters, and being taken inwardly it killeth remediless. Generally all the Crowfoots, as Galen saith, are of a very sharp or biting quality, insomuch as they raise blisters with pain: and they are hot and dry in the fourth degree.

The Virtues of All the Crowfoots.

A. The leaves or roots of Crowfoots stamped and applied unto any part of the body, causeth the skin to swell and blister, and raiseth up weals, bladders, causeth scars, crusts, and ugly ulcers: it is laid upon cragged warts, corrupt nails, and such like excrescences, to cause them to fall away.

B. The leaves stamped and applied unto any pestilential or plague sore, or carbuncle, stayeth the spreading nature of the same, and causeth the venomous or pestilential matter to breath forth, by opening the parts and passages in the skin.

C. It prevaleth much to draw a plague sore from the inward parts, being of danger, unto other remote places further from the heart, and other of the spiritual parts, as hath been declared in the description.

D. Many do use to tie a little of the herb stamped with salt unto any of the fingers, against the pain of the teeth; which medicine seldom faileth; for it causeth greater pain in the finger than was in the tooth, by the means whereof, the greater pain taketh away the lesser.

E. Cunning beggars do use to stamp the leaves, and lay it unto their legs and arms, which causeth such filthy ulcers as we daily see (among such wicked vagabonds) to move the people the more to pity.

F. The kind of Crowfoot of Illyria, being taken to be Apium risus of some, yet others think Aconitum batrachioides to be it. This plant spoileth the senses and understanding, and draweth together the sinews and muscles of the face in such strange manner, that those who beholding such as died by the taking hereof, have supposed that they died laughing; so forcibly hath it drawn and contracted the nerves and sinews, that their faces have been drawn awry, as though they laughed, whereas contrariwise they have died with great torment.
CHAP. 371. Of Divers Other Crowfoots.

1. The roots of this are somewhat like those of the Asian *Ranunculus*: the leaves are very large & roundish, of a light green colour, cut about the edges, & here and there deeply divided: the stalk is thick, round, and stiff, divided into two or three branches; at the setting on of which grow longish leaves a little nicked about the end: the flowers are of an indifferent bigness, and consist of five longish round pointed leaves, standing a little each from other, so that the green points of the cups show themselves between them: there are yellow threads in the middle of these flowers, which commonly show themselves in February, or March. It is found only in some gardens, and Clusius only hath set it forth by the name we here give you.

2. This also that came from the Pyrenean hills is made a denizen in our gardens: it hath a stalk some foot high, set with nervous leaves, like those of Plantain, but thinner, and of the colour of Woad, and they are something broad at their setting on, and end in a sharp point: at the top of the stalk grow the flowers; each consisting of five round slender pure white leaves, of a reasonable bigness, with yellowish threads and a little head in the middle: the root is white and fibrous. It flowers about the beginning of May. Clusius also set forth this by the title of *Ranunculus pyreneus albo flore*. 
3. The same author hath also given us the knowledge of divers other plants of this kind, and this he calls *Ranunculus montanus*. It hath many round leaves, here and there deeply cut in, and snipped about the edges, of a dark green colour, and shining, pretty thick, and of a very hot taste; amongst which rises up a slender, single, and short stalk, bearing a white flower made of five little leaves with a yellowish thrum in the middle: which falling, the seeds grow clustering together as in other plants of this kind: the root is white and fibrous.

4. This also is nothing else but a variety of the last described, and differs from it in that the flowers are larger, and it is sometimes found with them double. Both these grow on the tops of the Alps, and there they flower as soon as the snow is melted away, which is usually in June: but brought into gardens they flower very early, to wit, in April.
5. The leaves of this are cut or divided into many parts, like those of Rue, but softer, & greener (whence Clusius names it *Ranunculus ruta folio*) or not much unlike those of Coriander (whereupon Pona calls it *Ranunculus coriandri folio*): amongst or rather before these comes up a stalk four handfuls high, bearing at the top thereof one flower of a reasonable bigness: on the outside before it be throughly open of a pleasing red colour, but white within, composed of twelve or more leaves,

6. This hath a stalk some foot high, small and reddish, whereon grow sundry leaves like those of the greater *Thalictrum*, or those of Columbines, but much less, and of a bitter taste: out of the bosoms of these leaves come the flowers at each space one, white, and consisting of five leaves apiece: which falling, there succeed two or three little horns containing a round reddish seed: the root is fibrous, white, very bitter, and creeps here and there, putting up new shoots. It grows in divers woods of Austria, and flowers in April, and the seed is ripe in May, or June. Clusius calls it *Ranunculus precox 2. thalictri folio*. It is the *Aquilegia minor dalechampii* in the *Hist. Lugd.*
7. This which (as Clusius saith) some call the *Ranunculus* of Apuleius, hath also a fibrous root, with small leaves divided into three parts, & cut about the edges, and they grow upon short footstalks; the stalks are some two handfuls high, commonly leaning on the ground, and on them grow such leaves as the former: and out of their bosoms come little footstalks carrying flowers of a pale yellow colour, made of five leaves apiece; which falling there succeed five or six sharp pointed rough cobs, containing seed almost like that of the former.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Wolf's-Bane: whereof some bring forth flowers of a yellow colour; others of a blue, or tending to purple: among the yellow ones there are some greater, others lesser; some with broader leaves, and others with narrower.

The Description.

1. The first kind of Aconite, of some called Thora, others add the the place where it growth in great abundance, which is the Alps, and call it Thora valdensium. This plant took his name of the Greek word Phthora, signifying corruption, poison, or death, which are the certain effects of this pernicious plant: for this they use very much in poisons, and when they mean to infect their arrow heads, the more speedily and deadly to dispatch the wild beasts, which greatly annoy those mountains of the Alps: to which purpose also it is brought into the mart towns near unto those places to be sold unto the hunters, the juice thereof being prepared by pressing forth, and so kept in horns and hoofs of beasts, for the most speedy poison of all the Aconites; for an arrow touched therewith, leaveth the wound uncureable (if it but only fetch blood where it entereth in) except that round about the wound the flesh be speedily cut away in great quantity: this plant therefore may rightly be accounted as first and chief of those that be called Sagittary or Aconites, by reason of the malignant qualities aforesaid. This that hath been said argueth also that Matthiolus hath unproperly called it Pseudoaconitum, that is, false or bastard Aconite; for without question there is no
worse or more speedy venom in the world, nor no Aconite or toxical plant comparable hereunto. And yet let us consider the fatherly care and providence of God, who hath provided a conqueror and triumpher over this plant so venomous, namely his Antigonist, Antithora or to speak in shorter and fewer syllables, Anthora; which is the very antidote or remedy against this kind of Aconite. The stalk of plant is small and rushy, very smooth, two or three handfuls high: whereupon do grow two, three, or four leaves, seldom more, which be something hard, round, smooth, of a light green colour tending to blueness, like the colour of the leaves of Woad, nicked in the edges. The flowers grow at the top of the stalks, of a yellow colour, lesser than those of the Field Crowfoot, otherwise alike: in the place therof groweth a knop or round head, wherein is the seed: the root consisteth of nine or ten slender clogs, with some small fibres also, and they are fastened together with little things unto one head, like those of the white Asphodel.

2. Wolf's-Bane of the Mount Baldus hath one stalk, smooth and plain, in the middle whereof come forth two leaves and no more, wherein it differeth from the other of the Valdens, having likewise three or four sharp pointed leaves, narrow and somewhat jagged at the place where the stalk divideth itself into smaller branches; whereon do grow small yellow flowers like the precedent, but much lesser.

The Place.

These venomous plants do grow on the Alps, and the mountains of Savoy and Switzerland: the first grow plentifully in the country of the Valdens, who inhabit part of those mountains towards Italy. The other is found on Baldus, a mountain of Italy. They are strangers in England.

The Time.

They flower in March and April, their seed is ripe in June.

The Names.

This kind of Aconite or Wolf's-Bane is called Thora, Taura, and Tura, it is surnamed valdensis, that it may differ from Napellus, or Monk's Hood, which is likewise named Thora.

Avicenna maketh mention of a certain deadly herb in his fourth book, sixth Fen. called Farsium; it is hard to affirm this same to be Thora valdensis.

Gesner judges this to be the Aconitum pardalianches of Dioscorides, and herein is followed by Bauhin.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The force of these Wolf's-Banes, is most pernicious and poisonsome, and (as it is reported) exceedeth the malice of Napellus, or any of the other Wolf's-Banes, as we have said.

B They say that it is of such force, that if a man especially, and then next any four footed beast be wounded with an arrow or other instrument dipped in the juice hereof, they die within half an hour after remediless.

This kind of Aconite is called *Aconitum hyemale belgarum*; of Dodonæus, *Aconitum luteum minus*: in English, Wolf's-Bane, or Small Yellow Wolf's-Bane, whose leaves come forth of the ground in the dead time of winter, many times bearing the snow upon their heads of his leaves and flowers; yea the colder the weather is, and the deeper that the snow is, the fairer and larger is the flower; and the warmer that the weather is, the lesser is the flower, and worse coloured: these leaves I say come forth of the ground immediately from the root, with a naked, soft, and slender stem, deeply cut or jagged on the leaves, of an exceeding fair green colour, in the midst of which cometh forth a yellow flower, in show or fashion like that of the common field Crowfoot: after which follow sundry cuds full of brown seeds like the other kinds of Aconites: the root is thick, tuberous and knotty, like to the kinds of Anemone.

The Place.

It groweth upon the mountains of Germany: we have great quantity of it in our London gardens.

The Time.

It flowereth in January; the seed is ripe in the end of March.

The Names.

It is called, *Aconitum hyemale*, or *hibernum*, or winter Aconite: that it is a kind of Aconite or Wolf's-Bane, both the form of the leaves and cuds, and also the dangerous faculties of the herb itself do declare.
It is much like to *Aconitum theophrasti*: which he describeth in his ninth book, saying, it is a short herb having no superfluous thing growing on it, and is without branches as this plant is: the root, saith he, is like to a nut, or else to a dry fig, only the leaf seemeth to make against it, which is nothing at all like to that of Succory, which he compareth it unto.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. This herb is counted to be very dangerous and deadly, hot and dry in the fourth degree, as Theophrastus in plain words doth testify concerning his own Aconite; for which he saith that there was never found his antidote or remedy: whereof Athenæus and Theopompus write, that this plant is the most poisonous herb of all others, which moved Ovid to say *Quæ quia nascuntur dura vivacia caute*:"They spring from the hard rock" Ovid, *Metamorphoses* Bk. VII. l. 418 notwithstanding it is not without his peculiar virtues. Ioachimus Camerarius now living in Nuremberg saith, the water dropped into the eyes ceaseth the pain and burning: it is reported to prevail mightily against the bitings of scorpions, and is of such force, that if the scorpion pass by where it groweth and touch the same, presently he becometh dull, heavy, and senseless, and if the same scorpion by chance touch the White Hellebore, he is presently delivered from his drowsiness.
Fig. 1407. Mithridate or Wholesome Wolf's-Bane

The Description.

This plant called Anthora, being the antidote against the poison of Thora, Aconite or Wolf's-Bane, hath slender hollow stalks, very brittle, a cubit high, garnished with fine cut or jagged leaves, very like to Nigella romana, or the common Larkspur, called Consolida regalis: at the top of the stalks do grow fair flowers, fashioned like a little helmet, of an overworn yellow colour; after which come small blackish pods, wherein is contained black shining seed like those of Onions: the root consisteth of divers knobs or tuberous lumps, of the bigness of a man's thumb.

The Place.

This plant which in Greek we may term Antithora growth abundantly in the Alps, called Rhetici, in Savoy, and in Liguria. The Ligurians of Turin, and those that dwell near the lake Lemane, have found this herb to be a present remedy against the deadly poison of the herb Thora and the rest of the Aconites, provided that when it is brought into the garden there to be kept for physic's use, it must not be planted near to any of the Aconites: for through his attractive quality, it will draw unto itself the malign and venomous poison of the Aconite, whereby it will become of the like quality, that is, to become poisonous likewise: but being kept far off, it retaineth his own natural quality still.

The Time.

It flowereth in August, the seed is ripe in the end of September.
The Names.

The inhabitants of the lake of Geneva, & the Piemontoise do call it Anthora, and the common people Anthoro. Avicenna calleth a certain herb which is like to Monk's-Hood, as a remedy against the poison thereof, by the name of Napellus moysis, in the 500th chap. of his second book, and in the 745th chap. he saith, that Zedoaria doth grow with Napellus or Monk's-Hood, and that by reason of the nearness of the same, the force and strength thereof is dulled and made weaker, and that it is a treacle, that is, a counterpoison against the Viper, Monk's-hood, & all other poisons: and hereupon it followeth, that it is not only Napellus moysis, but also Zedoaria avicennæ: notwithstanding the apothecaries do sell another Zedoaria differing from Anthora, which is a root of a longer form, which not without cause is thought to be Avicenna's and Serapia's Zerumbeth, or Zurumbeth.

It is called Anthora, as though they should say Antithora, because it is an enemy to Thora, and a counterpoison to the same. Thora and Anthora, or Tura and Antura, seem to be new words, but yet they are used in Marcellus Empericus, an old writer, who teacheth a medicine to be made of Tura and Antura, against the pin and web in the eyes: in English, Yellow Monks-hood, Yellow Helmet flower, and Aconites mithridate.

The Virtues.

A. The root of Anthora is wonderful bitter, it is an enemy to all poisons: it is good for purgations; for it voideth by the stool both watery and slimy humours, killeth and driveth forth all manner of worms of the belly.

B. Hugo Solerius saith, that the roots of Anthora do largely purge, not only by the stool, but also by vomit: and that the measure thereof is taken to the quantity of Faselus (which is commonly called a bean) in broth or wine, and is given to strong bodies.

C. Antonius Guanerius doth show in his treatise of the plague, the second difference, the third chapter, that Anthora is of great force, yea and that against the plague: and the root is of like virtues, given with Dittany, which I have seen, saith he, by experience: and he further saith, it is an herb that groweth hard by that herb Thora, of which there is made a poison, wherewith they of, the more speedily to kill the wild goats, and other wild beasts of the Alpish mountains. And this root Anthora is the Bezoar or counterpoison to that Thora, which is of so great a venom, as that it killeth all living creatures with his poisonous quality: and thus much Guanerius.

D. Simon Ianuensis hath also made mention of Anthora, and Arnoldus Villanovanus in his treatise of poisons: but their writings do declare that they did not well know Anthora.
CHAP. 375. Of Yellow Wolf's-Bane.

The Description.

The yellow kind of Wolf's-Bane called *Aconitum luteum ponticum*, or according to Dodonæus *Aconitum lycoctonon luteum maius*: in English, Yellow Wolf's-Bane, whereof this our age hath found out sundry sorts not known to Dioscorides, (although some of the sorts seem to stand indifferent between the kinds of *Ranunculi*, *Helleborus*, and *Napellus*;) this yellow kind I say hath large shining green leaves fashioned like a vine, and of the same bigness, deeply indented or cut, not much unlike the leaves of *Geranium fuscum*, or black Crane's-Bill: the stalks are bare or naked, not bearing his leaves upon the same stalks, one opposite against another, as in the other of his kind: his stalks grow up to the height of three cubits, bearing very fine yellow flowers, fantastically fashioned, and in such manner shaped, that I can very hardly describe them unto you. They are somewhat like unto the Helmet Monk's-Hood, open and hollow at one end, firm and shut up at the other: his roots are many, compact of a number of thready or black strings, of an overworn yellow colour, spreading far abroad every way, folding themselves one within another very confusedly. This plant groweth naturally in the dark hilly forests, and shadowy woods, which are not travelled nor haunted, but by wild and savage beasts, and is thought to be the strongest and next unto *Thora* in his poisoning quality, of all the rest of the Aconites, or Wolf's-Banes; insomuch that if a few of the flowers be chewed in the mouth, and spit forth again presently, yet forthwith it burneth the jaws and tongue, causing them to swell, and making a certain swimming or giddiness in the head. This calleth to my remembrance an history of a certain gentleman dwelling in Lincolnshire, called Mahewe, the true report whereof my very good friend Mr. Nicholas Belson, sometimes fellow of King's College in Cambridge, hath delivered unto me: Mr
Mahewe dwelling in Boston, a student in physic, having occasion to ride through the Fens of Lincolnshire, found a root that the hogs had turned up, which seemed unto him very strange and unknown, for that it was in the spring before the leaves were out: this he tasted, and it so inflamed his mouth, tongue, and lips, that it caused them to swell very extremely, so that before he could get to the town of Boston he could not speak, and no doubt had lost his life if that the Lord God had not blessed those good remedies which presently he procured and used. I have here thought good to express this history, for two especial causes; the first is, that some industrious and diligent observer of nature may be provoked to seek forth that venemous plant, or some of his kinds: for I am certainly persuaded that it is either the *Thora valdensium*, or *Aconitum luteum*, whereof this gentleman tasted, which two plants have not at any time been thought to grow naturally in England: the other cause is, for that I would warn others to beware by that gentleman's harm. Thus saith our author, but I am of opinion that this root which Mr. Mahewe tasted was of the *Ranunculus flammeus maior*, described in the first place of the 370th chapter aforegoing; for that grows plentifully in such places, and is of a very hot taste and hurtful quality.

**The Place.**

The Yellow Wolf's-bane growth in my garden, but not wild in England, or in any other of these Northerly regions.

**The Time.**

It flowereth in the end of June, somewhat after the other Aconites.

**The Names.**

This Yellow Wolf's-Bane is called of Lobel, *Aconitum luteum ponticum* or Pontic Wolf's-Bane. There is mention made in Dioscorides his copies of three Wolf's-Banes, of which the hunters use one, and physicians the other two. Marcellus Virgilius holdeth opinion that the use of this plant is utterly to be refused in medicine.

**The Temperature and Virtues**

A. The faculty of this Aconite, as also of the other Wolf's-Banes, is deadly to man, and likewise to all other living creatures.

B. It is used among the hunters which seek after wolves, the juice whereof they put into raw flesh, which the wolves devour, and are killed.

**CHAP. 376. Of Other Wolf's-Banes and Monk's-Hoods.**
1. This kind of Wolf's-Bane (called *Aconitum lycoctonum*: and of Dodonæus, *Aconitum lycoctonon flore delphinii*, by reason of the shape and likenes that the flower hath with *Delphinium*, or Larkspur: and in English it is called Black Wolf's-Bane) hath many large leaves of a very deep green or overworn colour, very deeply cut or jagged: among which riseth up a stalk two cubits high; whereupon do grow flowers fashioned like a hood, of a very ill favoured bluish colour, and the thrums or threads within the hood are black: the seed is also black and three-cornered, growing in small husks: the root is thick and knobby.

2. This kind of Wolf's-Bane, called *Lycoctonon caruleum pavum, facie napelli*: in English Small Wolf's-Bane, or Round Wolf's-Bane, hath many slender brittle stalks two cubits high, beset with leaves very much jagged, and like unto Napellus, called in English, Helmet-Flower. The flowers do grow at the top of the stalks, of a bluish colour, fashioned also like a hood, but wider open than any of the rest: the cods and seed are like unto the other: the root is round and small, fashioned like a pear or small Rape or Turnip: which moved the Germans to call the same *Rapen bloemen*, which is in Latin, *Flos rapaceus*: in English, Rape-Flower.
3. This kind of Wolf's-Bane, called *Napellus verus*, in Englih, Helmet-Flower, or the great Monk's-Hood, beareth very fair and goodly blue flowers in shape like an helmet; which are so beautiful, that a man would think they were of some excellent virtue, but *non est semper fides habenda fronti* ["appearances are not always trustworthy"] This plant is universally known in our London gardens and elsewhere; but naturally it it groweth in the mountains of Rhaetia, and in sundry places of the Alps, where you shall find the grass that growth round it eaten up with cattle, but no part of the herb itself touched, except by certain flies, who in such abundant measure swarm about the same that they cover the whole plant: and (which is very strange) although these flies do with great delight feed hereupon, yet of them there is confected an Antidote or most available medicine against the deadly bite of the spider called *Tarantula*, or any other venomous beast whatsoever; yea, an excellent remedy not only against the Aconites, but all other poisons whatsoever. The medicine of the foresaid flies is thus made: Take of the flies which have fed themselves as is above mentioned, in number twenty, of *Aristolochia rotunda*, and Bole Armonia, of each a dram.

4. There is a kind of Wolf's-Bane which Dodonæus reports he found in an old written Greek book in the Emperor's Library at Vienna, under the the title of *Aconitum lycoctonum*, that answereth in all points unto Dioscorides his description, except in the leaves. It hath leaves (saith he) like unto the Plane tree, but lesser, and more full of jags or divisions; a slender stalk as Fern, of a cubit high, bearing his seed in long cuds: it hath black roots in shape like crayfishes. Hereunto agreeeth the
Emperor's picture in all things saving in the leaves, which are not so large, nor so much divided, but notched or toothed like the teeth of a saw.

5. Besides these mentioned by our author there are sundry other plants belonging to this pernicious tribe, whose history I will briefly run over: The first of these is that which Clusius hath set forth by the name of *Aconitum lycocotonum flo*. 

---

*Fig. 1413. Kinds of Monk's-Hood (5-8)*

5. Besides these mentioned by our author there are sundry other plants belonging to this pernicious tribe, whose history I will briefly run over: The first of these is that which Clusius hath set forth by the name of *Aconitum lycocotonum flo*. 

-129-
delphinii silesiacum: it hath stalks some two or three cubits high, smooth and hollow, of a greenish purple colour, and covered with a certain mealiness: the leaves grow upon long stalks, being rough, and fashioned like those of the Yellow Wolf's-Bane, but of a blacker colour: the top of the stalk ends in a long spike of spur-flowers, which before they be open resemble locusts or little lizards, with their long and crooking tails; but opening they show five leaves, two on the sides, two below, and one above, which ends in a crooked tail or horn: all these leaves are wrinkled, and purple on their outsides, but smooth, and of an elegant blue within. After the flowers are past succeed three square cuds, as in other Aconites, wherein is contained an unequal brownish wrinkled seed: the root is thick, black, and tuberous. This grows naturally in some mountains of Silesia, and flowers in July and August.

6. The leaves of this are somewhat like, yet less than those of our common Monk's-Hood, blackish on the upper side and shining. The stalk is some cubit and half high, firm, full of pith, smooth, and shining, divided towards the top into some branches carrying few flowers, like in form to those of the vulgar Monk's-Hood, of a most elegant and deep violet colour: the seeds are like the former, and roots round, thick, and short, with many fibres. It grows upon the hills nigh Salzburg, where it flowers in July: but brought into gardens it flowers sooner than the rest of this kind, to wit in May. Clusius calls this Aconitum lycoctonum 4. tauricum.

7. This hath leaves broader than those of our ordinary Monk's-Hood, yet like them; the stalk is round, straight, and firm, and of some three cubits height, and oft times toward the top divided into many branches, which carry their flowers spike-fashion, of a purple colour absolutely like those of the common sort, but that the thrummy matter in the midst of the flowers is of a duskier colour. The root and rest of the parts are like those of the common kind: it grows naturally upon the Styrian Alps, whereas it flowers somewhat after the common kind, to wit, in July. Clusius hath it by the name of Aconitum lycoctonum 5. neubergense.

8. The leaves of this are also divided into five parts, and snipped about the edges, and do very much resemble those of the small Wolf's-Bane described in the second place, but that the leaves of that shine, when as these do not: the stalk is two cubits high, not very thick, yet firm and straight, of a greenish purple colour; and at the top carries five or six flowers, the largest of all the Monk's-Hoods, consisting of four leaves as in the rest of this kind, with a very large helmet over them, being sometimes an inch long, of an elegant bluish purple colour: the seed-vessels, seeds, and roots are like the rest of this kind. This grows on Judenberg, the highest hill of all Styria, and flowers in August; in gardens about the end of July. Clusius names it Aconitum Lycoctonum 9. Judenbergense.
Fig. 1414. Nodding Monk's-Hood (9)

9. This rises up to the height of three cubits with a slender round stalk which is divided into sundry branches, and commonly hangs down the head; whence Clusius calls it \textit{Aconitum lycocotonum 8. coma nutante}. The flowers are like those of the common Monk's-Hood, but of somewhat a lighter purple colour. The leaves are larger and long, and much more cut in or divided than any of the rest. The roots, seeds, and other particles are nor unlike those of the rest of this kind.

The Place.

Divers of these Wolf's-Banes grow in some gardens, except \textit{Aconitum lycocotonon}, taken forth of the Emperors book.

The Time.

These plants do flower from May unto the end of August.

The Names.

The first is \textit{Lycoctoni species}, or a kind of Wolf's-Bane, and is as hurtful as any of the rest, and called of Lobel, \textit{Aconitum flore delphinii}, or Larkspur Wolf's-Bane. Avicenna speaketh hereof in his second book, and afterwards in his fourth book, Fen. 6, the first Treatise: having his reasons why and wherefore he hath separated this from \textit{Canach adip}, that is to say, the wolf's stangler, or the wolf's bane.

The later and barbarous herbarists call the third Wolf's-Bane in Latin \textit{Napellus}, of the figure and shape of the roots of \textit{Napus}, or \textit{Navet}, or Navew Gentle: it is likewise \textit{Aconiti lycocoti species}, or a kind of Wolf's-bane: also it may be called \textit{Toxicum}; for \textit{Toxicum} is a deadly medicine wherewith the hunters poison their spears, darts, and arrows, that bring present death: so named of arrows which the barbarians call \textit{Toxcumata}, and \textit{Toxa}. Dioscorides setting down the symptoms or accidents
caused by Toxicum, together with the remedies, reckoneth up almost the very same that Avicenna doth concerning Napellus: notwithstanding Avicenna writes of Napellus and Toxicum severally; but not knowing what Toxicum is, as he himself confesseth: so that it is not to be marvelled, that havting written of Napellus, he should afterward reat again of Toxicum.

The Nature and Virtues.

A. All these plants are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and of a most venomous quality. The force and faculty of Wolf's-Bane is deadly to man and all kinds of beasts. The same was tried of late in Antwerp, and is as yet fresh in memory, by an evident experiment, but most lamentable; for when the leaves hereof were by certain ignorant persons served up in salads, all that did eat thereof were presently taken with most cruel symptoms, and so died.

B. The symptoms that follow those that do eat of these deadly herbs are these; their lips and tongues swell forthwith, their eyes hang out, their thighs are stiff, and their wits are taken from them, as Avicenna writeth in his fourth book. The force of this poison is such, that if the points of darts or arrows be touched with the same, it bringeth deadly hurt to those that are wounded therewith.

C. Against so deadly a poison. Avicenna reckoneth up certain remedies, which help after the poison is vomited up; and among these he maketh mention of the mouse (as the copies everywhere have it) nourished and fed up with Napellus, which is altogether an enemy to the poisonsome nature thereof; and delivereth him that hath taken it from all peril and danger.

D. Antonius Guanerius of Pavia, a famous physician in his age, in his treaty of poisons is of opinion, that it is not a mouse that Avicenna speaks of, but a fly: for he telleth of a certain philosopher that did very carefully and diligently make search after this mouse, and neither could find at any time either mouse, or the root of Wolf's-Bane gnawn or bitten. as he had read; but in searching he found many flies feeding on the leaves, which the same philosopher took, and made of them an antidote or counterpoison, which he found to be good and effectual against other poisons, but especially the poison of Wolf's-Bane.

E. This composition consisteth of two ounces of Terra lemnia, as many of the berries of the Bay tree, and the like weight of Mithridate, 24 of the flies that have taken their repast upon Wolf's-bane, of honey and oil olive a sufficent quantity.

F. The same opinion that Guanerius is of, Petrus Pena and Matthias de Lobel do also hold; who affirm, that there was never seen at any time any mouse feeding thereon, but that there be flies which resort unto it by swarms, and feed not only upon the flowers, but on the herb also.

The Danger.

There hath been little heretofore set down concerning the virtues of the Aconites, but much might be said of the hurts that have come hereby, as the woeful experience of the lamentable example at Antwerp, yet fresh in memory, doth declare, as we have said.
CHAP. 377. Of Black Hellebore.

The Description.

1. The first kind of Black Hellebore Dodonæus setteth forth under this title *Veratum nigram*; and it may properly be called in English, Black Hellebore, which is a name most fitly agreeing unto the true and undoubted Black Hellebore, for the
kinds and other sorts hereof which hereafter follow are false and bastard kinds thereof. This plant hath thick and fat leaves of a deep green colour, the upper part whereof is somewhat bluntly nicked or toothed, having sundry divisions or cuts; in some leaves many, in others fewer, like unto the female Peony, or Smyrnium creticum. It beareth Rose-fashioned flowers upon slender stems, growing immediately out of the ground an handful high; sometimes very white, and oftentimes mixed with a little show of purple: which being faded, there succeed small husks full of black seeds; the roots are many, with long black strings coming from one head.

2. The second kind of Black Hellebore, called of Pena, Helleborastrum; and of Dodonæus, Veratrum secundum (in English, Bastard Hellebore) hath leaves much like the former, but narrower and blacker, each leaf being much jagged or toothed about the edges like a saw. The stalks grow to the height of a foot or more, dividing themselves into other branches toward the top; whereon do grow flowers not much unlike to the former in show, save that they are of a greenish herby colour. The roots are small and thready, but not so black as the former.

3. The third kind of Black Hellebore, called of Pena, Helleboraster maximus, with this addition, flore et semine pregnans, that is, full both of flowers and seed, hath leaves somewhat like the former wild Hellebore, save that they be greater, more jagged, and deeply cut. The stalks grow up to the height of two cubits, dividing themselves at the top into sundry small branches, whereupon grow little round and bottle-like hollow green flowers; after which come forth seeds which come to perfect maturiry and ripeness. The root consisteth of many small black strings, invovled or wrapped one within another very intricately.

4. The fourth kind of Black Hellebore (called of Pena and Lobel, according to the description of Cordus and Ruellius, Sesamoides magnum, and Consiligo: in English, Ox-Heel, or Setter-Wort; which names are taken from his virtues in curing oxen and such like cattle, as shall be showed afterward in the names thereof) is so well known unto the most sort of people by the name of Bear-Foot, that I shall not have cause to spend much time about the description. (Indeed it was not much needful for our author to describe it, for it was the last thing he did; for both these two last are of one plant, both figures and descriptions; the former of these figures expressing it in flower, and the later in seed: but the former of our author was with somewhat broader leaves, and the later with narrower.)

The Place.

These Hellebores grow upon rough and craggy mountains: the last grows wild in many woods and shadowy places in England: we have them all in our London gardens.

The Time.

The first flowereth about Christmas, if the winter be mild and warm: the others later.

The Names.

It is agreed among the later writers, that these plants are Veratra nigra: in English, Black Hellebore: in Italian, Elleoro nero: in Spanish, Verdegambre negro: of divers, Melampodium, because it was first found by Melampos, who was first thought to purge therewith Prætus his mad daughters and to restore them to health. Diorcorides writeth, that this man was a shepherd: others, a sooth-sayer. In High
Dutch it is called Christwurt, that is, Christ's herb, or Christmas herb: in low Dutch, Heylich kerst cruyt: and that because it flowereth about the birth of our Lord Jesus Christ.

The third kind was called of Fuchsius, Pseudoelleborus, and Veratrum nigrum adulterinum, which is in English, false or bastard Black Hellebore. Most name it Consiligo, because the husbandmen of our time do herewith cure their cattle, no otherwise than the old farriers or horse-leeches went wont to do, that is, they cut a slit or hole in the dew-lap, as they term it (which is an empty skin under the throat of the beast) wherein they put a piece of the root of Setterwort or Bear-Foot, suffering it there to remain for certain days together: which manner of curing they do call setting of their cattle, and is a manner of rowelling, as the said horse-leeches do their horses with horse hair twisted, or such like, and as in surgery we do use with silk, which instead of the word seton, a certain physician called it by the name rowell; a word very unproperly spoken of a learned man, because there would be some difference betwixt men and beasts. This manner of setting of cattle helpeth the disease of the lungs, the cough, and wheezing. Moreover, in the time of pestilence or murrain, or any other diseases affecting cattle, they put the root into the place aforesaid, which draweth unto it all the venomous matter, and voideth it forth at the wound. The which Absyrtus and Hierocles the Greek horse-leeches have at large set down. And it is called in English, Bear-Foot, Setter-Wort, and Setter-Grass.

The second is named in the German tongue, Lowszkraut, that is, Pedicularis, or lousy grass: for it is thought to destroy and kill lice, and not only lice, but sheep and other cattle: and may be reckoned among the Bear-Foots, as kinds thereof.

The Temperature.

Black Hellebore, as Galen holdeth opinion, is hotter in taste than the white Hellebore: in like manner hot and dry in the third degree.

The Virtues.

A. Black Hellebore purgeth downwards phlegm, choler, and also melancholy especially, and all melancholy humours, yet not without trouble and difficulty: therefore it is not to be given but to robustious and strong bodies, as Mesues teacheth. A purgation of Hellebore is good for mad and furious men, for melancholy, dull, and heavy persons, for those that are troubled with the falling sickness, for lepers, for them that are sick of a quartan ague, and briefly, for all those that are troubled with black choler, and molested with melancholy.

B. The manner of giving it (meaning the first Black Hellebore) saith Actuarius in his first book, is three scruples, little more or less.

C. It is given with wine of raisins or oxymel, but for pleasantness' sake some sweet; and odoriferous seeds must be put unto it: but if you would have it stronger, add thereunto a grain or two of Scammony. Thus much Actuarius.

D. The first of these kinds is best, then the second; the rest are of less force.

E. The roots take away the morphew and black spots in the skin, tetter, ringworms, leprosies and scabs.

F. The root sodden in pottage with flesh, openeth the bellies of such as have the dropsy.
G. The root of bastard Hellebore, called among our English women Bear-Foot, steeped in wine and drunken, looseth the belly even as the true Black Hellebore, and is good against all the diseases whereunto Black Hellebore serveth, and killeth worms in children.

H. It doth his operation with more force and might, if it be made into powder, and a dram thereof be received in wine.

I. The same boiled in water with Rue and Agrimony, cureth the jaundice, and purgeth yellow superfluities by siege.

K. The leaves of Bastard Hellebore dried in an oven, after the bread is drawn out, and the powder thereof taken in a fig or raisin, or strewed upon a piece of bread spread with honey and eaten, killeth worms in children exceedingly.
CHAP. 378. Of Dioscorides his Black Hellebore.

This kind of Black Hellebore, set forth by Lobel under the name of Astrantia nigra, agreeth very well in shape with the true Astrantia, which is called Imperatoria: nevertheless by the consent of Dioscorides and other authors, who have expressed this plant for a kind of Veratum nigrum, or Black Hellebore, it hath many blackish green leaves parted or cut into four or five deep cuts, after the manner of the vine leaf, very like unto those of Sanicle, both in greenness of colour, and also in proportion. The stalk is even, smooth, and plain: at the top whereof grow flowers in little tufts or umbels, set together like those of Scabious, of a whitish light green colour, dashed over as it were with a little dark purple: after which come the seed like unto Carthamus or bastard Saffron. The roots are many blackish threads knit to one head or master root.

The Place.

Black Hellebore is found in the mountains of Germany, and in other untilled and rough places: it prospereth in gardens.

Dioscorides writeth, That Black Hellebore groweth likewise in rough and dry places: and that is the best which is taken from such like places; as that (saith he) which is brought out of Anticyra a city in Greece. It groweth in my garden.

The Time.

This Black Hellebore flowereth not in winter, but in the summer months. The herb is green all the year through.
It is called of the later herbarists, *Astrantia nigra*: of others, *Sanicula fœmina*: notwithstanding it differeth much from *Astrantia*, an herb which is also named *Imperatoria*, or Masterwort. The vulgar people call it Pellitory of Spain, but untruly: it may be called Black Masterwort, yet doubtless a kind of Hellebore, as the purging faculty doth show: for it is certain, that divers experienced physicians can witness, that the roots hereof do purge melancholy and other humours, and that they themselves have perfectly cured mad melancholy people being purged herewith. And that it hath a purging quality, Conradus Gesnerus doth likewise testify in a certain epistle written to Adolphus Occo, in which he showeth, that *Astrantia nigra* is almost as strong as White Hellebore, and that he himself was the first that had experience of the purging faculty thereof by siege: which things confirm that it is Dioscorides his Black Hellebore.

Dioscorides hath also attributed to this plant all those names that are ascribed to the other Black Hellebores. He saith further, that the seed thereof in Anticyra is called *Sesamoides* the which is used to purge with, if so be that the text be true, and not corrupted. But it seemeth not to be altogether perfect; for if *Sesamoides*, as Pliny saith, and the word itself doth show; hath his name of the likeness of *Sesamum*, the seed of this Black Hellebore shall unproperly be called Sesamoides being not like that of Sesamum, but of *Cnicus* or bastard Saffron. By these proofs we may suspect, that these words are brought into Dioscorides from some other author.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. The faculties of this plant we have already written to be by trial found like to those of the other Black Hellebore: notwithstanding those that are described in the former chapter are to be accounted of greater force.
CHAP. 379. Of Herb Christopher.

Although Herb Christopher be none of the Bindweeds, or of those plants that have need of supporting or underpropping wherewith it may climb or ramp, yet because it beareth grapes, or clusters of berries; it might have been numbered among the Ampeloi, or those that grow like Vines. It brings forth little tender stalks a foot long, or not much longer; whereupon do grow sundry leaves set upon a tender footstalk, which do make one leaf somewhat jagged or cut about the edges, of a light green colour: the flowers grow at the top of the stalks, in spoky tufts consisting of four little white leaves apiece: which being past, the fruit succeeds, round, somewhat long, and black when it is ripe, having upon one side a strreaked furrow or hollowness growing near together as do the clusters of grapes. The root is thick, black without, and yellow within like Box, with many trailing strings flexed thereto, creeping far abroad in the earth, whereby it doth greatly increase, and lasteth long.

The Place.

Herb Christopher groweth in the North parts of England, near unto the house of the right worshipful Sir William Bowes. I have received plants thereof from Robinus of Paris, for my garden, where they flourish.

The Time.

It flowereth and flourisheth in May and June, and the fruit is ripe in the end of summer.
The Names.

It is called in our age *Christophoriana*, and *S. Christophori herba*: in English, Herb Christopher: some there be that name it *Costus niger*: others had rather have it *Aconitum bacciferum*: it hath no likeness at all nor affinity with *Costus*, as the simplest may perceive that do know both. But doubtless it is of the number of the Aconites, or Wolf's-Banes, by reason of the deadly and pernicious quality that it hath, like unto Wolf's-Bane, or Leopard's-bane.

The Temperature.

The temperature of Herb Christopher answereth those of the Aconites, as we have said.

The Virtues.

I find little or nothing extant in the ancient or later writers, of any one good property wherewith any part of this plant is possessed: therefore I wish those that love new medicines to take heed that this be none of them, because it is thought to be of a venomous and deadly quality.
CHAP. 380. Of Peony.

The Kinds.

There be three Peonies, one male, and two females, described by the ancients: the later writers have found out four more; one of the female kind, called *Paeonia pumila*, or Dwarf Peony; and another called *Paeonia promiscua sive neutra*, bastard, misbegotten, or neither of both, but as it were a plant participating of the male and female; one double Peony with white flowers, and a fourth kind bearing single white flowers.

The Description.

1. The first kind of Peony (being the male, called *Paeonia mas*: in English, Male Peony) hath thick red stalks a cubit long: the leaves be great and large, consisting of divers leaves growing or joined together upon one slender stem or rib, not much unlike the leaves of the Walnut tree both in fashion and greatness: at the top of the stalks grow fair large red flowers very like roses, having also in the midst yellow threads or thrums like them in the rose called *Anthera*: which being faded and fallen away, there come in place three or four great cods or husks, which do open when they are ripe; the inner part of which cods is of a fair red colour, wherein is contained black shining and polished seeds as big as a pea, and between every black seed is couched a red or crimson seed, which is barren and empty. The root is thick; great, and tuberous, like unto the common Peony.
2. There is another kind of Peony, called of Dodoneus, *Paeonia fœmina prior* of Lobel, *Paeonia fœmina*: in English, Female Peony, which is so well known unto all that it needeth not any description.

3. The third kind of Peony (which Pena setteth forth under the name *Paeonia fœmina polyanthus*: Dodoneus, *Paeonia fœmina multiplex*: in English, Double Peony) hath leaves, roots, and flowers like the common female Peony, but that his leaves are not so much jagged, and are of a lighter green colour: the roots are thicker and more tuberous, and the flowers much greater, exceeding double, of a very deep red colour, in fashion very like the great double Rose of Provençe but greater and more double.
4. There is found another sort of the double Peony, not differing from the precedent in stalks, leaves, or roots: this plant bringeth forth white flowers, wherein consisteth the difference.

5. There is another kind of Peony (called of Dodonæus, Pæonia fæmina altera: but of Pena, Pæonia promiscua, sive neutra: in English, Maiden or Virgin Peony) that
is like to the common Peony, saving that his leaves and flowers are much less, and the stalks shorter: it beareth red flowers and seed also like the former.

6. We have likewise in our London gardens another sort bearing flowers of a pale whitish colour, very single, resembling the female wild Peony, in other respects like the double white Peony, but lesser in all the parts thereof.

7. Clusius by seed sent him from Constantinople had two other varieties of single Peonies; the one had the leaves red when they came out of the ground; and the flower of this was of a deep red colour: the other had them of a whitish green, and the flowers of this were somewhat larger, and of lighter colour. In the leaves & other parts they resembled common double Peony.

The Place.

All the sorts of Peonies do grow in our London gardens, except that double Peony with white flowers, which we do expect from the Low Countries of Flanders.

The male Peony groweth wild upon a cony-berry in Betsome, being in the parish of Southfleet in Kent, two miles from Gravesend, and in the ground sometimes belonging to a farmer there called John Bradley.

I have been told that our author himself planted that Peony there, and afterwards seemed to find it there by accident: and I do believe it was so, because none before or since have ever seen or heard of it growing wild since in any part of this Kingdom.

The Time.

They flower in May: the seed is ripe in July.

The Names.

The Peony is called in Greek and Latin Παεονία, in Latin also Dulciifida: in shops, Pionia: in High Dutch, Peonien blumen: in Low Dutch, Mast bloemen: in French, Pinoine: in Spanish, Rosa del monte: in English, Peony. It hath also many bastard names, as Rosa fatuinia, Herba casta: of some, Lunaris, or Lunaria Παεονία: because it cureth those that have the falling sickness, whom some men call lunaticos, or lunatic. It is called Ideus dactylus: which agreeeth with the female Peony; the knobby roots of which be like to Dactyli idei, and Dactyl i dei are certain precious stones of the form of a man's finger, growing in the Island of Candy: it is called of divers Aglaophotis, or brightly shining, taking his name of the shining and glittering grains, which are of the colour of scarlet.

There be found two Aglaophotides, described by Ælian us in his 14th book; one of the sea, in the 24th chapter: the other of the earth, in the 27th chapter. That of the sea is a kind of Fucus, or sea moss, which groweth upon high rocks, of the bigness of Tamarisk, with the head of Poppy; which opening in the summer solstice doth yield in the night-time a certain fiery, and as it were sparkling brightness or light.

That of the earth, saith he, which by another name is called Cynospastus, lieth hid in the day time among other herbs, and is not known at all, and in the night time it is easily seen: for it shineth like a star, and glittereth with a fiery brightness.

And this Aglaophotis of the earth, or Cynospastus, is Peonia: for Apuleius saith, that the seeds or grains of Peony shine in the night time like a candle, and that plenty of it is in the night season found out and gathered by the shepherds.
Gerard's Herbal

Theophrastus and Pliny do show that Peony is gathered in the night; which Ælianus also affirmeth concerning *Aglaoephotis*.

This *Aglaoephotis* of the earth, or *Cynospastus*, is called of Josephus the writer of the *Jews' War*, in his seventh book, 25th chapter, *Baaras*, of the place wherein it is found; which thing is plain to him that conferreth those things which Ælianus hath written of *Aglaoephotis* of the earth, or *Cynospastus*, with those which Josephus hath set down of *Baaras*: for Ælianus saith, that *Cynospastus* is not plucked up without danger; and that it is reported how he that first touched it, not knowing the nature thereof, perished. Therefore a string must be fastened to it in the night, and a hungry dog tied thereto, who being allured by the smell of roasted flesh set towards him may pluck it up by the roots. Josephus also writeth, that *Baara* doth shine in the evening like the day-star, and that they who come near, and would pluck it up, can hardly do it, except that either a woman's urine, or her menses be poured upon it, and that so it may be plucked up at the length.

Moreover, it is set down by the said author, as also by Pliny and Theophrastus, that of necessity it must be gathered in the night; for if any man shall pluck off the fruit in the day-time, being seen of the woodpecker, he is in danger to lose his eyes; and if he cut the root, it is a chance if his fundament fall not out. The like fabulous tale hath been set forth of Mandrake, the which I have partly touched in the same chapter. But all these things be most vain and frivolous: for the root of Peony, as also the Mandrake, may be removed at any time of the year, day or hour whatsoever.

But it is no marvel, that such kinds of trifles, and most superstitious and wicked ceremonies are found in the books of the most ancient writers; for there were many things in their time very vainly feigned and cogged in for ostentation sake, as by the Egyptians and other counterfeit mates; as Pliny doth truly testify: an imitator of whom in times past, was one Andreas a physician, who, as Galen saith, conveyed into the art of physic, lies and subtle delusions. For which cause Galen commanded his scholars to refrain from the reading of him, and of all such-like lying and deceitful sycophants. It is reported that these herbs took the name of Peony, or *Pæin*, of that excellent physician of the same name, who first found out and taught the knowledge of this herb unto posterity.

**The Temperature.**

The root of Peony, as Galen saith, doth gently bind with a kind of sweetness: and hath joined with it a certain bitterish sharpness: it is in temperature not very hot, little more than meanly hot; but it is dry, and of subtle parts.

**The Virtues.**

A. Dioscorides writeth, that the root of the Peony being dried, is given to women that be not well cleansed after their delivery, being drunk in mead or honeyed water to the quantity of a bean; for it scoureth those parts, appeaseth the griping throws and torments of the belly, and bringeth down the desired sickness.

B. Galen addeth, that it is good for those that have the yellow jaundice, and pain in the kidneys and bladder, it cleanseth the liver and kidneys that are stopped.

C. It is found by sure and evident experience made by Galen, that the fresh root tied about the necks of children, is an effectual remedy against the falling sickness; but unto those that are grown up in more years, the root thereof must also be ministered inwardly.
D. It is also given, saith Pliny, against the disease of the mind. The root of the male Peony is preferred in this cure.

E. Ten or twelve of the red berries or seeds drunk in wine that is something harsh or sour, and red, do stay the inordinate flux and are good for the stone in the beginning.

F. The black grains (that is the seed) to the number of fifteen taken in wine or mead, helps the strangling and pains of the matrix or mother, and is a special remedy for those that are troubled in the night with the disease called Ephialtes or Nightmare, which is as though a heavy burden were laid upon them, and they oppressed therewith, as if they were overcome by their enemies, or overpressed with some great weight or burden; and they are also good against melancholic dreams.

G. Syrup made of the flowers of Peony helpeth greatly the falling sickness: likewise the extraction of the roots doth the same.
CHAP. 381. Of Toothed Violets or Coralworts.

The Description.

The first kind of *Dentaria* (called in Latin *Dentaria baccifera*: of Dodonæus, *Dentaria prior*: in English, Dog's-Tooth Violet) hath a tuberous and knobby root, toothed, or as it were kneed like unto the crags of Coral, of an unpleasant savour, and somewhat sharp in taste: from which spring forth certain small and slender stalks a foot high, which have leaves very much cut or jagged, like unto those of Hemp, of the form and fashion of Ash leaves: at the top of the stalks do grow small white flowers, in shape like *Violæ matronales*, that is, Queen's Gillyflowers, or rather like Stock-Gillyflowers, of a white yellow colour, laid over with a light sprinkling of purple: among which come forth small knobs growing upon the stalks among the leaves, such as are to be seen upon the *Chimists Martagon* which being ripe, do fall upon the ground, whereof many other plants are engendered.

2. The second kind of Dog's-Tooth Violet bringeth forth small round stalks, firm and stiff, a foot high, beset with leaves much broader, rounder, and greener than the former, bearing at the top many little flowers consisting of four small leaves, of a pale herby colour; which being past, there succeed long and slender cods somewhat like the cods of Queen's Gillyflowers, wherein is contained small brackish seed: the root is like the former, but not in every respect much resembling Coral, yet white and tuberous notwithstanding.
3. The third kind of Dog's-Tooth Violet is called of Clusius, *Dentaria heptaphyllos*, that is, consisting of seven leaves fastened upon one rib, sinew, or small stem: of Lobel with this title, *Alabastrites altera*, or *Dentaria altera*; but Cordus calleth it *Coraloides altera*: in English, Coral Violet; it hath stalks, flowers, and roots like unto the first of his kind, saving that the flowers are much fairer, and white of colour, and the roots have a greater resemblance of Coral than the other.

4. The fourth kind of Dog's-tooth violet, called in English Codded Violet (which Clusius setteth forth under the title *Dentaria matthioli pentaphyllos*; which Pena doth also express under the title of *Nemoralis alpina herbariorus alabstrites*; Cordus calleth it *Coraloides*, and may very well be called in English Cinquefoil Violet) hath leaves so like the greater Cinquefoil, that it is hard to know one from another; therefore it might very well have been reckoned among the herbs called *Pentaphylla*, that is, five-leaved herbs. This plant growtheth in the shadowy forest about Turin, and the mountain Savena called Calcaris, and by the Rhine not far from Basel. The stalks grow to the height of a cubit, beset with a tuft of flowers at the top like to that of the first, but of a deeper purple colour: which being faded, there succeed long and flat cods like unto Rocket, or the great Celandine, wherein is contained a small seed. All the whole plant is of a hot and bitter taste. The roots are like unto Coral, of a pale whitish colour: the leaves are rough and harsh in handling, and of a deep green colour.

5. Clusius gives us another variety of *Dentaria pentaphyllos*, whose roots are more uneven and knobby than the last described: the stalk is some foot high: the leaves five upon a stalk, but not so rough, nor of so deep a green as those of the former; yet the flowers are of a deep purple colour, like those of the last described.
The Place.

They grow on divers shadowy and dark hills. Valerius Cordus writeth, that they are found about the forest Hercynia, not far from Nordhausen, most plentifully, in a fat soil that hath quarries of stone in it. The first I have in my garden.

The Time.

They flower especially in April and May: the seed cometh to perfection in the end of August.

The Names.

The toothed Violet, or after some, Dog's-Tooth Violet, is commonly called *Dentaria*: of Cordus, *Coralloides*, of the root that is in form like to Coral. Matthiolus placeth it *inter Solidagines & Symphyta*, among the Confounds and Comfreys. We had rather call them *Violæ dentariæ*, of the likeness the flowers have with Stock-Gillyflowers. They may be called in English, Toothed Violets, or Coralworts.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. I have read of few or no virtues contained in these herbs, saving those which some women have experienced to be in the first kind thereof, and which Matthiolus ascribeth unto *Pentaphylla dentaria* the fourth kind, in the fourth book of his *Commentaries upon Dioscorides* and in the chapter conterning *Symphytum* where he saith that the root is used in drinks which are made against enterocoele and inward wounds, but especially those wounds and hurts which have entered into the hollowness of the breast.
CHAP. 382. Of Cinquefoil, or Five-Finger Grass

The Description.

1. The first kind of Cinquefoil hath many long slender stalks lying spread upon the ground, out whereof grow leaves made of five longish snipped leaves fastened to one long footstalk; the flowers also grow upon the like footstalks, and are composed
of five yellow leaves. The root is pretty large, of a reddish colour, and round; but
dried, it becomes square.

2. The second kind of Cinquefoil or Quinquefoile hath round and small stalks
of a cubit high; the leaves are large, and very much jagged about the edges, very like
the common Cinquefoil: the flowers grow at the top of the stalks, in fashion like the
common kind, but much greater, and of a pale or bleak yellow or else whitish colour:
the root is black without, and full of strings annexed thereto, and of a woody
substance.

3. The third kind of Cinquefoil hath leaves like those of the last described, and
his flowers are of a purple colour; which being past, there succeedeth a round knop of
seed like a strawberry before it be ripe: the stalks are creeping upon the ground: the
root is of a woody substance, full of black strings appendant thereto. This differs not
from the last described, but in the colour of the flowers.

4. The fourth kind of Cinquefoil is very like unto the other, especially the great
kind: the stalks are a cubit high, and of a reddish colour: the leaves consist of five
parts, somewhat snipped about the edges: the flowers grow at the tops of the stalks
like unto the other Cinquefoils, saving that they be of a dark red colour: the root is of
a woody substance, with some fibres or thready strings hanging thereat.
Fig. 1429. Kinds of Cinquefoil (5-8)

5. The fifth kind of Cinquefoil growth upon the cold mountains of Savoy, and in the valley of Austensy, and in Narbonne in France, and (if my memory fail not) have seen the same growing upon Beeston Castle in Cheshire: the leaves hereof are few, and thin set, consining of five parts like the other Cinquefoils, oftentimes six or seven set upon one footstalk, not snipped about the edges as the other, but plain and smooth; the leaf is of a shining white silver colour, very soft and shining: the flowers
grow like stars, upon slender stalks by tufts and bunches, of white colour, and sometimes purple, in fashion like the flowers of Alchemilla, or Lady's Mantle: the root is thick and full of strings, and of a brown purple colour.

6. This plant, whose figure our author formerly gave for Fragaria sterilis & in his description confounded with it, to avoid confusion, I think fit to give you here amongst the Cinquefoils, and in that place the Fragaria sterilis, as most agreeable thereto. This seems to challenge kindred of three several plants, that is, Cinquefoil, Tormentil, and Silverweed, for it hath the upper leaves, the yellow flowers, creeping branches, and root of Cinquefoil, but the lower leaves are of a dark green, and grow many upon one middle rib like those of Silverweed; the fruit is like an unripe strawberry. Lobel calls this Pentaphyllum supinum tormentilla facie: and Tabernomontanus, Qinquefolium fragiferum repens.

7. The seventh kind of Cinquefoil, Pena that diligent searcher of simples found in the Alps of Rhaetia, near Chiavenna, and at the first sight supposed it to be a kind of Tormentilla, or Pentaphyllum, save that it had a more thready root, rather like Geranium; it is of a dark colour outwardly, having some sweet smell, representing Garyophyllata in the savour of his roots: in leaves and flowers it resembles Cinquefoil and Tormentil, and in shape of his stalks and roots Avens or Garyophyllata, participating of them all: notwithstanding it approacheth nearest unto the Cinquefoils, having stalks a foot high, whereupon grow leaves divided into five parts, and jagged round about the edges like the teeth of a saw, having the pale yellow flowers of Pentaphyllum or Tormentilla; within which are little mossy or downy threads, of the colour of saffron, but lesser than the common Avens.

8. The eighth kind of Cinquefoil (according to the opinion of divers learned men, who have had the view thereof, and have judged it to be the true Leucas of Dioscorides, agreeable to Dioscorides his description) is all hoary, whereupon it took the addition incanum. The stalks are thick, woody, and somewhat red, wrinkled also, and of a brown colour; which rise unequal from the root, spreading themselves into many branches, shadowing the place where it groweth, beset with thick and notched leaves like Scordium, or Water Germander, which according to the judgement of the learned is thought to be of no less force against poison than Pentaphyllum, or Tormentilla, being of an astringent and drying quality. Hereupon it may be that some trying the force hereof, have yielded it up for Leucas dioscoridis. This rare plant I never found growing naturally; but in the hollowness of the peakish mountains, and dry gravelly valleys.
Fig. 1430. Small Hoary Creeping Cinquefoil (9)

9. This hath the like creeping purple branches as the last described: the leaves are narrower, more hairy and deeper cut in; the flowers are also of a more golden colour, in other respects they are alike.

Fig. 1431. White Wood Cinquefoil (10)

10. The Wood Cinquefoil hath many leaves spread upon the ground, consisting of five parts; among which rise up other leaves, set upon very tall footstalks, and long in respect of those that did grow by the ground, and somewhat snipped about the ends, and not all alongst the edges. The flowers grow upon slender stalks, consisting of five white leaves. The root is thick, with divers fibres coming from it.
11. This also from such a root as the last described sends forth many slender branches not creeping, but standing upright, and set with little hoary leaves, snipped only at the ends, like as those of the last described: the tops of the branches carry pretty white flowers like those of the last described, whereof it seems to be a kind, yet less in each respect.

12. This from a black and fibrous root, sends forth creeping branches, set with leaves like the common Cinquefoil, but less, somewhat hoary and shining; the stalks are some handful high, and on their tops carry large flowers in respect of the smallness of the plant, and these of a fair golden colour, with saffron coloured threads in their middle; the seeds grow after the manner of other Cinquefoils: this flowers in June, and it is Clusius his *Quinquefolium 3. aureo flore.*
13. There is one of the mountain Cinquefoils that hath divers slender brittle stalks, rising immediately out of the ground; whereupon are set by equal distances certain jagged leaves, not unlike to the smalllest leaves of Avens: the flowers are white and grow at the top, having in them threads yellow of colour, and like to the other Cinquefoils, but altogether lesser. The root is thick, tough, and of a woody substance. The seeds grow clustering together like little strawberries, whence Clusius calls it *Quinquefolium fragiferum*.

**The Place.**

They grow in low and moist meadows, upon banks and by highways' sides: the second is only to be found in gardens.

The third groweth in the woods of Chiavenna and Narbonne, but not in England. The fourth groweth in a marsh ground adjoining to the land called Bourne Ponds, half a mile from Colchester; from whence I brought four plants for my garden, where they flourish and prosper well.

The fifth groweth upon Beeston Castle in Cheshire: the sixth upon brick and stone walls about London, especially upon the brick wall in Liver Lane.

The place of the seventh and eighth is set forth in their descriptions.

**The Time.**

These plants do flower from the beginning of May to the end of June.

**The Names.**

Cinquefoil is called in Greek *Pentaphyllon*: in Latin, *Quinquefolium*: the apothecaries use the Greek name *Pentaphyllon*: and sometimes the Latin name. There be very many bastard names, wherewith I will not trouble your ears. In High Dutch,
Funft fingerkraut; in Low Dutch, Vuif Vinger kruijt: in Italian, cinquefoglio: in French, Quinte feuille: in Spanish, Cinco en rama: in English, Cinquefoil, Five-Finger Grass, Five-Leaved grass, and Sinkfield.

The Temperature.

The roots of Cinquefoil, especially of the first, do vehemently dry, and that in the third degree, but without biting: for they have very little apparent heat or sharpness.

The Virtues.

A. The decoction of the roots of Cinquefoil drunk, cureth the bloody flux, and all other fluxes of the belly, and stancheth all excessive bleeding.

B. The juice of the roots while they be young and tender, is given to be drunk against the diseases of the liver and lungs, and all poison.

C. The same drunk in Mead or honeyed water, or wine wherein some pepper hath been mingled, cureth the tertian or quartan fevers: and being drunken after the same manner for thirty days together it helpeth the falling sickness.

D. The leaves used among herbs appropriate for the same purpose, cureth ruptures and burstings of the rim, and guts falling into the cods.

E. The juice of the leaves drunken doth cure the jaundice, and comforteth the stomach and liver.

F. The decoction of the roots held in the mouth doth mitigate the pain of the teeth, stayeth putrefaction, and all putrefied ulcers of the mouth, helpeth the inflammations of the almonds, throat, and the parts adjoining, it stayeth the lask, and helpeth the bloody flux.

G. The root boiled in vinegar is good against the shingles, appeaseth the rage of fretting sores, and cankerous ulcers.

H. It is reported, that four branches hereof cureth quartan agues, three tertians, and one branch quotidians: which things are most vain and frivolous, as likewise many other such like, which are not only found in Dioscorides, but also in other authors, which we willingly withstand.

I. Ortolpho Morolto a learned physician, commended the leaves being boiled with water, and some Lignum vitae added therto, against the falling sickness, if the patient be caused to sweat upon the taking thereof. He likewise commendeth the extraction of the roots against the bloody flux.
CHAP. 383. Of Septfoil, or Tormentil.

This herb Tormentil or Septfoil is one of the Cinquefoils, it brings forth many stalks slender, weak, scarce able to lift itself up, but rather lieth down upon the ground: the leaves be lesser than Cinquefoil, but more in number, sometimes five, but commonly seven, whereupon it took his name Septfoil, which is seven leaves, and those somewhat snipped about the edges: the flowers grow on the tops of slender stalks, of a yellow colour, like those of the Cinquefoils. The root is black without, reddish within, thick, tuberous, or knobby.

The Place.

This plant loveth woods and shadowy places, and is likewise found in pastures lying open to the Sun, almost everywhere.

The Time.

It flowereth from May, unto the end of August.

The Names.

It is called of the later herbarists Tormentilla: some name it after the number of the leaves Septifolium: in English, Septfoil and Tormentil: in High Dutch, Birkwurts: most take it to be Chrysogonon; whereof Dioscorides hath made a brief description.

The Temperature.

The root of Tormentil doth mightily dry, and that in the third degree, and is of thin parts: it hath in it very little heat, and is of a binding quality.
Gerard's Herbal

The Virtues.

A. Tormentil is not only of like virtue with Cinquefoil, but also of greater efficacy: it is much used against pestilent diseases: for it strongly resisteth putrefaction, and procureth sweat.

B. The leaves and roots boiled in wine, or the juice thereof drunken provoketh sweat, and by that means driveth all venom from the heart, expelleth poison, and preserveth the body in time of pestulence from the infection thereof, and all other infectious diseases.

C. The roots dried made into powder and drunk in wine doth the same.

D. The same powder taken as aforesaid, or in the water of a smith's forge or rather the water wherein hot steel hath been often quenched of purpose, cureth the lask and bloody flux, yea although the patient have adjoined unto his scouring a grievous fever.

E. It stoppeth the spitting of blood, pissing of blood, and all other issues of blood, as well in men as women.

F. The decoction of the leaves and roots, or the juice thereof drunk, is excellent good for all wounds, both outward and inward: it also openeth and healeth the stoppings of the liver and lungs, and cureth the jaundice.

G. The root beaten into powder, tempered or kneaded with the white of an egg and eaten, stayeth the desire to vomit, and is good against choler and melancholy.
CHAP. 384. Of Wild Tansy or Silverweed.

The Description.

Wild Tansy creepeth along upon the ground with fine slender stalks and clasping tendrils: the leaves are long made up of many small leaves, like unto those of the garden Tansy, but lesser; on the upper side green, and under very white. The flowers be yellow, and stand upon slender stems, as do those of Cinquefoil.

The Place.

It groweth in moist places near unto highways and running brooks everywhere.

The Time.

It flowereth in June and July.

The Names.

The later herbarists do call it Argentina, of the silver drops that are to be seen in the distilled water thereof when it is put into a glass which you shall easily see rolling and tumbling up and down in the bottom; I judge it rather so called of the fine shining silver coloured leaves. It is likewise called Potentilla: of divers, Agrimonia sylvestris, Anserina, and Tanacetum sylvestre: in High Dutch, Genserith: in Low Dutch; Ganserith: in French, Argentine: in English, Wild Tansy, and Silverweed.

The Temperature.

It is of temperature moderately cold, and dry almost in the third degree, having withal a binding faculty.
The Virtues.

A. Wild Tansy boiled in wine and drunk, stoppeth the lask and bloody flux, and all other flux of blood in man or woman.

B. The same boiled in water and salt and drunk, dissolveth clotted and congealed blood in such as are hurt or bruised with falling from some high place.

C. The decoction hereof made in water, cureth the ulcers and cankers of the mouth, if some honey and alum be added thereto in the boiling.

D. Wild Tansy hath many other good virtues, especially against the stone, inward wounds, and wounds of the privy or secret parts, and closeth up all green and fresh wounds.

E. The distilled water taketh away freckles, spots, pimples in the face and sun-burning; but the herb laid to infuse or steep in white wine is far better: but the best of all is to steep it in strong white wine vinegar, the face being often bathed or washed therewith.
CHAP. 385. Of Avens, or Herb Bennet.

The Description.

1. The common Avens hath leaves not unlike to Agrimony, rough, blackish, and much cloven or deeply cut into divers gashes: the stalk is round and hairy, a foot high, dividing itself at the top into divers branches, whereupon do grow yellow flowers like those of Cinquefoil or Wild Tansy: which being past, there follow round rough reddish hairy heads or knops full of seed, which being ripe will hang upon garments as the Burs do. The root is thick, reddish within, with certain yellow strings fastened thereunto, smelling like unto Cloves or like unto the roots of Cyperus.

2. The Mountain Avens hath greater and thicker leaves than the precedent, rougher, and more hairy, not parted into three, but rather round, nicked on the edges: among which riseth up slender stalks, whereon do grow little longish sharp pointed
leaves: on the top of each stalk doth grow one flower greater than that of the former, which consisteth of five little leaves as yellow as gold: after which grows up the seeds among long hairy threads. The root is long, growing aslope, somewhat thick, with strings anexed thereto.

Fig. 1439. Kinds of Avens (3-5)
3. Five-Finger Avens hath many small leaves spread upon the ground, divided into five parts, somewhat snipped about the edges like Cinquefoil, whereof it took his name. Among which rise up slender stalks divided at the top into divers branches, whereon do grow small yellow flowers like those of Cinquefoil: the root is composed of many tough strings of the smell of cloves, which makes it a kind of Avens; otherwise doubtless it must of necessity be one of the Cinquefoils.

4. This hath jointed stringy roots some finger thick, from whence rise up many large and hairy leaves, composed of divers little leaves, with larger at the top, and these snipped about the edges like as the common Avens: among these leaves grow up sundry stalks some foot or better high, whereon grow flowers hanging down their heads, and the tops of the stalks and cups of the flowers are commonly of a purplish colour: the flowers themselves are of a pretty red colour, and are of divers shapes, and grow divers ways; which hath been the reason that Clusius and other have judged them several plants, as may be seen in Clusius his Works, where he gives you the flowers, which you here find expressed, for a different kind. Now some of these flowers, even the greater part of them grow with fine red round pointed leaves, which never lie fair open, but only stand straight out, the middle part being filled with a hairy matter and yellowish threads: other some consist of seven, eight, nine, or more leaves; and some again lie wholly open with green leaves growing close under the cup of the flower, as you may see them represented in the figure; and some few now and then may be found composed of a great many little leaves thick thrust together, making a very double flower. After the flowers are fallen come such hairy heads as in other plants of this kind, amongst which lies the seed. Gesner calls this Geum rivale: Thalius, Caryophyllata major purpurea: Camerarius, Caryophyllata aquatica: Clusius, Caryophyllata montana prima, & tertia.

5. The root of this is also thick, fibrous, and whitish; from which arise many leaves three fingers high, resembling those of Agrimony, the little leaves standing directly opposite each against other, snipped about the edges, hairy, a little curle, and of a deep green colour: out of the midst of those, upon a short stalk grows commonly one single flower of a gold-yellow colour, much like the mountain Avens described in the second place. It flowers at the beginning of July, and groweth upon the Alps. Pona was the first that described it, and that by the name of Caryophyllata Alpina omnium minima.

The Place.

These kinds of Avens are found in high mountains and thick woods of the North parts of England: we have them in our London gardens, where they flourish and increase infinitely.

The red flowered mountain Avens was found growing in Wales by my much honoured friend Mr. Thomas Glynn, who sent some plants thereof to our herbarists, in whose gardens it thriveth exceedingly.

The Time.

They flower from the beginning of May to the end of July.

The Names.

Avens is called Caryophyllata, so named of the smell of cloves which is in the roots, and divers call it Sanamunda, Herba benedicta, and Nardus rustica: in High Dutch, Benedicten wurtz: in French, Galiot: of the Wallons, Gloria filia: in English,
Avens, and Herb Bennet: it is thought to be Geum plinii, which most do suspect, by reason he is so brief. Geum, saith Pliny, lib. 26. cap. 7, hath little slender roots, black, and of a good smell.

The other kind of Avens is called of the later herbarists, Caryophyllata montana, Mountain Avens: it might agree with the description of Baccharis, if the flowers were purple tending to whiteness; which as we have said are yellow, and likewise differ in that, that the roots of Avens smell of Cloves, and those of Baccharis have the smell of Cinnamon.

The Temperature.

The roots and leaves of Avens are manifestly dry, and something hot, with a kind of scouring quality.

The Virtues.

A. The decoction of Avens made in wine is commended against crudity or rawness of the stomach, pain of the colic, and the biting of venomous beasts.

B. The same is likewise a remedy for stitches and grief in the side, for stopping of the liver; it concocteth raw humours, scoureth away such things as cleave to the entrails, wasteth and dissolveth wind, especially being boiled with wine: but if it be boiled with pottage or broth it is of great efficacy, and of all other pot-herbs is chief, not only in physical broths, but commonly to be used in all.

C. The leaves and roots taken in this manner dissolve and consume cluttered blood in any inward part of the body; and therefore they are mixed with potions which are drunk of those that are bruised, that are inwardly broken, or that have fallen from some high place.

D. The roots taken up in Autumn and dried, do keep garments from being eaten with moths, and make them to have an excellent good odour, and serve for all the physical purposes that Cinquefoils do.
CHAP. 386. Of Strawberries.

There be divers sorts of Strawberries; one red, another white, a third green; and likewise a wild Strawberry, which is altogether barren of fruit.

The Description.

1. The Strawberry hath leaves spread upon the ground, somewhat snipped about the edge; three set together upon one slender footstalk like the Trefoil, green on the upper side, and on the nether side more white: among which rise up slender stems, whereon do grow small flowers, consisting of five little white leaves, the middle part somewhat yellow, after which cometh the fruit, not unlike to the Mulberry, or rather the Raspis, red of colour, having the taste of wine, the inner pulp or substance whereof is moist and white, in which is contained little seeds: the root is thready, of long continuance, sending forth many strings, which disperse themselves far abroad, whereby it greatly increaseth.

2. Of these there is also a second kind; which is like to the former in stems, strings, leaves, and flowers. The fruit is something greater, and of a whitish colour, wherein is the difference.

There is another sort, which brings forth leaves, flowers, and strings like the other of his kind. The fruit is green when it is ripe, tending to redness upon that side that lieth to the Sun, cleaving faster to the stems, and is of a sweeter taste, wherein only consisteth the difference.
There is also kept in our gardens (only for variety) another Strawberry which in leaves and growing is like the common kind; but the flower is greenish, and the fruit is harsh, rough, and prickly, being of a greenish colour, with some show of redness. Mr. John Tradescant hath told me that he was the first that took notice of this Strawberry, and that in a woman’s garden at Plymouth, whose daughter had gathered and set the roots in her garden instead of the common Strawberry: but she finding the fruit not to answer her expectation, intended to throw it away: which labour he spared her, in taking it and bestowing it among the lovers of such varieties, in whose gardens it is yet preserved. This may be called in Latin, *Fragaria fructu hispido*, The Prickly Strawberry.

3. This wild Strawberry hath leaves like the other Strawberry, but somewhat less, and softer, slightly indented about the edges, and of a light green colour: among which rise up slender stems bearing such flowers as the common Strawberries do, but lesser, which do wither away, leaving behind a barren or chaffy head, in shape like a strawberry, but of no worth or value: the root is like the others.

**The Place.**

Strawberries do grow upon hills and valleys, likewise in woods and other such places that be somewhat shadowy: they prosper well in gardens, the first everywhere, the other two more rare, and are not to be found save only in gardens.

The barren one grows in divers places, as upon Blackheath, in Greenwich Park, &c.

**The Time.**

The leaves continue green all the year: in the Spring they spread further with their strings, and flower afterward: the berries are ripe in June and July. The barren one flowers in April and May, but never carries any berries.
The Names.

The fruit or berries are called in Latin by Virgil and Ovid, Fraga: neither have they any other name commonly known: they are called in High Dutch Erdbeeren; in Low Dutch, Eertberien; in French, Fraises; in English, Strawberries.

The Temperature.

The leaves and roots do cool and dry, with an astriction or binding quality: but the berries be cold and moist.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves boiled and applied in manner of a poultice taketh away the burning heat in wounds: the decoction thereof strengtheneth the gums, fasteneth the teeth, and is good to be held in the mouth, both against the inflammation or burning heat thereof, and also of the almonds of the throat: they stay the overmuch flowing of the bloody flux, and other issues of blood.

B. The berries quench thirst, and do allay the inflammation or heat of the stomach: the nourishment which they yield is little, thin, and waterish, and if they happen to putrefy in the stomach, their nourishment is naught.

C. The distilled water drunk with white wine is good against the passion of the heart, reviving the spirits, and making the heart merry.

D. The distilled water is reported to scour the face, to take away spots, and to make the face fair and smooth; and is likewise drunk with good success against the stone in the kidneys.

E. The leaves are good to be put into lotions or washing waters, for the mouth and the privy parts.

F. The ripe Strawberries quench thirst, cool heat of the stomach, and inflammation of the liver, take away (if they be often used) the redness and heat of the face.
CHAP. 387. Of Angelica.

The Kinds.

There be divers kinds of Angelicas; the garden Angelica, that of the water, and a third sort wild growing upon the land.

The Description.

1. Concerning this plant Angelica there hath been heretofore some contention and controversy; Cordus calling it Smyrnium: some later writers, Costus niger: but to avoid cavil, the controversy is soon decided, sith it and no other doth assuredly retain the name Angelica. It hath great broad leaves, divided again into other leaves, which are indented or snipped about, much like to the uppermost leaves of Sphondylum, but lower, tenderer, greener, and of a stronger savour: among which leaves spring up the stalks, very great, thick, and hollow, six or seven foot high, jointed or kneed: from which joints proceed other arms or branches, at the top whereof grow tufts of whitish flowers like Fennel or Dill: the root is thick, great, and oilous, out of which issueth, if it be cut or broken, an oily liquor: the whole plant, as well leaves, stalks, as roots, are of a reasonable pleasant savour, not much unlike Petroleum.

There is another kind of true Angelica found in our English gardens (which I have observed) being like unto the former, saving that the roots of this kind are more fragrant, and of a more aromatic savour, and the leaves next the ground of a purplish red color, and the whole plant lesser.
2. The wild Angelica, which seldom grows in gardens, but is found to grow plentifully in water-soaked grounds and cold moist meadows, is like to that of the garden, save that his leaves are not so deeply cut or jagged; they be also blacker and narrower: the stalks are much slenderer and shorter, and the flowers whiter: the root much smaller, and hath more thready strings appendant thereunto, and is not so strong of savour by a great deal.

3. Matthiolus and Gesner have made mention of another kind of Angelica, but we are very slenderly instructed by their insufficient descriptions: notwithstanding for our better knowledge and more certain assurance I must needs record that which my friend Mr. Bredwell related to me concerning his sight thereof, who found this plant growing by the moat which compasseth the house of Mr. Munke of the parish of Iver, two miles from Colbrook; and since that I have seen the same in low fenny and marshy places of Essex, about Harwich. This plant hath leaves like unto the garden Angelica, but smaller, and fewer in number, set upon one rib a great stalk, gross and thick, whose joints and that small rib whereon the leaf grows are of a reddish colour, having many long branches coming forth of an husk or case, such as is in the common garden Parsnip: the flowers do grow at the top of the branches, and are of a white colour, and tuft fashion: which being past, there succeed broad long and thick seeds, longer and thicker than garden Angelica: the root is great, thick, white, of little savour, with some strings appendant thereto. This of our author's description seems to agree with the \textit{Archangelica} of Lobel, Dodonæus, and Clusius; wherefore I have put their figure to it.

\textbf{The Place.}

The first is very common in our English gardens: in other places it grows wild without planting; as in Norway, and in an island of the North called Iceland, where it
groweth very high. It is eaten of the inhabitants, the bark being peeled off, as we understand by some that have travelled into Iceland, who were sometimes compelled to eat hereof for want of other food; and they report that it hath a good and pleasant taste to them that are hungry. It groweth likewise in divers mountains of Germany, and especially of Bohemia.

The Time.

They flower in July and August, whose roots for the most part do perish after the seed is ripe: yet have I with often cutting the plant kept it from seeding, by which means the root and plant have continued sundry years together.

The Names.

It is called at the later age Angelica: in High Dutch, Angelick, Brustwurtz, or Des Heilighen Geyst Wurtzel, that is, Spiritus Sancti radix, the root of the Holy Ghost, as witnesseth Leonhartus Fuchsius: in Low Dutch, Angelika in French, Angelic: in English also Angelica.

It seemeth to be a kind of Laserpitium; for if it be compared with those things which Theophrastus at large hath written concerning Silphium or Laserpitium in his sixth book Of the History of Plants, it shall appear to be answerable thereunto. But whether wild Angelica he that which Theophrastus calleth Magydaris, that is to say, another kind of Laserpitium, we leave to be examined and considered of by the learned physicians of our London College.

The Temperature.

Angelica, especially that of the garden, is hot and dry in the third degree; therefore it openeth, attenuateth or maketh thin, digesteth, and procureth sweat.

The Virtues.

A. The root of garden Angelica is a singular remedy against poison, and against the plague, and all infections taken by evil and corrupt air; if you do but take a piece of the root and hold it in your mouth, or chew the same between your teeth, it doth most certainly drive away the pestilential air, yea although that corrupt air have possessed the heart, yet it driveth it out again by urine and sweat, as Rue and treacle, and such like antipharmaca do.

B. Angelica is an enemy to poisons: it cureth pestilent diseases if it be used in season: a dram weight of the powder hereof is given with thin wine, or if the fever be vehement, with the distilled water of Carduus benedictus, or of Tormentil, and with a little vinegar, and by it self also, or with Treacle of Vipers added.

C. It openeth the liver and spleen: draweth down the terms, driveth out or expelleth the secondine.

D. The decoction of the root made in wine, is good against the cold shivering of agues.

E. It is reported that the root is available against witchcraft and enchantments, if a man carry the same about them, as Fuchsius saith.

F. It attenuateth and maketh thin, gross and tough phlegm: the root being used green, and while it is full of juice, helpeth them that be asthmatic, dissolving and expectorating the stuffings therein, by cutting off and cleansing the parts affected, reducing the body to health again; but when it is dry it worketh not so effectually.
G. It is a most singular medicine against surfeiting and loathsomeness to meat: it helpeth concoction in the stomach, and is right beneficial to the heart: it cureth the bitings of mad dogs, and all other venomous beasts.

H. The wild kinds are not of such force in working, albeit they have the same virtues attributed unto them.
CHAP. 388. Of Masterwort and Herb Gerard.

The Description.

1. *Imperatoria* or Masterwort hath great broad leaves not much unlike wild Angelica, but smaller, and of a deeper green colour, in savour like Angelica, and every leaf divided into sundry other little leaves: the tender knotted stalks are of a reddish colour, bearing at the top round spoky tufts with white flowers: the seed is like the seed of Dill: the root is thick, knotty and tuberous, of a good savour, and hot or biting upon the tongue, which hath moved the unskilful to call it Pellitory of Spain, but very unfitly and untruly.

2. *Herba Gerardi*, which Pena doth also call *Imperatoria* and *Ostrutium*: the Germans *Podagraria*, that is, Gout-wort: in English, Herb Gerard, or Wild Masterwort, and in some places after Lyte, Ashweed; is very like the other in leaves, flowers, and roots, saving that they be smaller, growing upon long stems: the roots tenderer, whiter, and not so thick or tuberous. The whole plant is of a reasonable good savour, but not so strong as Masterwort.

The Place.

*Imperatoria* groweth in dark woods and deserts; in my garden and sundry others very plentifully.

Herb Gerard groweth of itself in gardens without setting or sowing, and is so fruitful in his increase, that where it hath once taken root; it will hardly be gotten out again, spoiling and getting every year more ground, to the annoying of better herbs.
The Time.
They flower from the beginning of June to the beginning of August.

The Names.
Imperatoria, or Astrantia, is called in English, Masterwort, or bastard Pellitory of Spain.

_Herba Gerardi_ is called in English, Herb Gerard, Ashweed, and Goutwort: in Latin also _Podagraria germanica_.

The Nature.
_Imperatoria_, especially the root, is hot and dry in the third degree. The wild _Imperatoria_, or Herb Gerard, is almost of the same nature and quality, but not so strong.

The Virtues.
A. _Imperatoria_ is not only good against all poison, but also singular against all corrupt and naughty air and infection of the pestilence, if it be drunken with wine.

B. The roots and leaves stamped, dissolve and cure pestilential carbuncles and botches, and such other apostumations and swellings, being applied thereto.

C. The root drunk in wine cureth the extreme and rigorous cold fits of agues, and is good against the dropsy, and provoketh sweat.

D. The same taken in manner aforesaid, comforteth and strengtheneth the stomach, helpeth digestion, restoreth appetite, and dissipveth all ventosities or windiness of the stomach and other parts.

E. It greatly helpeth such as have taken great squats, bruises, or falls from some high place, dissolving and scattering abroad congealed and clotted blood within the body: the root with his leaves stamped and laid upon the members infected, cureth the bitings of mad dogs, and of all other venomous beasts.

F. Herb Gerard with his roots stamped, and laid upon members that are troubled or vexed with the gout, assuageth the pain, and taketh away the swellings and inflammation thereof, which occasioned the Germans to give it the name _Podagraria_, because of his virtues in curing the gout.

G. It cureth also the hæmorrhoids, if the fundament be bathed with the decoction of the leaves and roots, and the soft and tender sodden herbs laid thereon very hot.

H. False Pellitory of Spain attenuateth or maketh thin, digesteth, provoketh sweat and urine, concocteth gross and cold humours, wasteth away windiness of the entrails, stomach and matrix: it is good against the colic and stone.

I. One dram of the root in powder given certain days together, is a remedy for them that have the dropsy, and also for those that are troubled with convulsions, cramps, and the falling sickness.

K. Being given with wine before the fit come, it cureth the quartan ague, and is a remedy against pestilent diseases.

L. The same boiled in sharp or sour wine, easeth the toothache, if the mouth be washed therewith very hot.
M. Being chewed it draweth forth water and phlegm out of the mouth (which kind of remedies in Latin, are called *apophlegmatismi*) and disburdeneth the brain of phlegmatic humours, and are likewise used with good success in apoplexies, drowsy sleeps, and other like infirmities.
CHAP. 389. Of Hercules' Woundwort, or All-Heal.

The Kinds.

Panax is of sundry kinds, as witnesseth Theophrastus in his ninth book; one growth in Syria, and likewise other three, that is to say, Chironium, Heraclium, and Æsculapium, or Chiron's All-Heal, Hercules' All-Heal, and Æsculapius' All-Heal. Besides these there is one Platyphyllon, or broad-leaved, so that in Theophrastus there are six kinds of Panax: but Dioscorides describeth only three, Heracleum, Asclepium, and Chironium: whereunto we have added another sort, whose virtues we found out by means of a husbandman, and for that cause have named it Panax coloni, or Clown's wort.

The Description.

1. Hercules' All-Heal or Woundwort hath many broad leaves spread upon the ground, very rough and hairy, of an overworn green colour, and deeply cut into divers sections like those of the Cow Parsnip, and not unlike to the Fig leaves: among the which riseth up a very strong stalk covered over with a rough hairiness, of the height of four or five cubits. Being wounded it yieldeth forth a yellow gummy juice, as doth every part of the plant, which is that precious gum called opopanax: at the top of which stalks stand great tufts or umbels of yellowish flowers, set together in spoky roundels like those of Dill, which turn into seed of a straw colour, sharp and hot in taste, and of a pleasing savour; the root is very thick, fat, and full of juice, and of a white colour.
2. The Great Woundwort, which the Venetians nourish in their gardens, hath great large leaves, somewhat rough or hairy, consisting of divers small leaves set together upon a middle rib, whih make one entire leaf joined together in one, whereof each collateral or side leaf is long and sharp pointed: among which riseth up a knotty stalk three or four cubits high, dividing itself into divers branches; on the tops whereof do grow spoky tufts or roundels like the precedent, but the flowers are commonly white: the seed is flat and plain: the root long, thick, and white, which being broken or wounded, yieldeth forth liquor like that of the former, of a hot and biting taste.

The Place.

These plants grow in Syria; the first of them also in my garden: but what Panax of Syria is, Theophrastus doth not express. Pliny in his 12th book, chap. 26, saith, that the leaves are round, and of a great compass: but it is suspected that these are drawn from the description of Hercules' Panax.

Broad-Leaved Panax is thought to be the great Centaury: for Pliny witnesseth, that Panax which Chiron found out is surnamed Centaurium, Centaury.

Matthiolus saith it grows of itself in the tops of the hills Apennini, in the Cape Argentaria, in the sea coasts of Siena, and it is cherished in the gardens of Italy; but he cannot affirm, that the liquor hereof is gathered in Italy; for the liquor opopanax which is sold in Venice is brought, saith he, out of Alexandria a city in Egypt: it groweth also in Syria, Boetia, and in Phocide, cities of Arcadia.

The Time.

They flower and flourish from the first of May unto the end of September.

The Names.

That which is is called Panax in Greek, is likewise named Panax in Latin: and that Panax heraclium which Dioscorides setteth down is called in Latin, Panax heraculanum, or Herculeum, or Hercules' Panax: it may be called in English, Hercules his Woundwort or All-Heal, or Opopanax Wort, of the Greek name.

The Temperature.

The bark of the root of Hercules' Woundwort is hot and dry, yet less than the juice, as Galen teacheth.

The Virtues.

A. The seed beat to powder and drunk in Wormwood wine is good against poison, the biting of mad dogs, and the stinging of all manner of venomous beasts.

B. The leaf or root stamped with honey, and brought to the form of an unguent or salve, cureth wounds and ulcers of great difficulty, and covereth bones that are bare or naked without flesh.
CHAP. 390. Of Clown's Woundwort or All-Heal.

Fig. 1450. Clown's All-Heal.

The Description.

1. Clown's All-Heal, or the Husbandman's Woundwort, hath long slender square stalks of the height of two cubits, furrowed or chamfered along the same as it were with small gutters, and somewhat rough or hairy: whereupon are set by couples one opposite to another, long rough leaves somewhat narrow, bluntly indented about the edges like the teeth of a saw, of the form of the leaves of Spearmint, and of an overworn green colour: at the top of the stalks grow the flowers spike fashion, of a purple colour mixed with some few spots of white, in form like to little hoods. The root consisteth of many small thready strings, whereunto are annexed or tied divers knobby or tuberous lumps, of a white colour tending to yellowness: all the whole plant is of an unpleasant savour like Stachys or Stinking Horehound. The root in the winter time and the beginning of the spring is somewhat knobby, tuberous, and jointed, which after the stalks grow up become flaccid and hollow, and so the old ones decay, and then it putteth forth new ones.

The Place.

It groweth in moist meadows by the sides of ditches, and likewise in fertile fields that are somewhat moist, almost everywhere; especially in Kent about Southfleet, near to Gravesend, and likewise in the meadows by Lambeth near London.

The Time.

It flowereth in August, and bringeth his seed to perfection in the end of September.
The Names.

This plant by Gesner was called *Stachys palustris*, and *Betonica fœtida*, and thought to be of the kind of *Herba Iudaica*, or *Sideriti*; to which indeed I should; and Thalius hath referred it, calling it *Sideritis 1. gravis odoris*; Cæsalpinus calls it *Tertiola*; and gives this reason, *quod tertianas sanet*, because it cures tertians. Tabernamontanus called it *Stachys aquatica*.

The Temperature.

This plant is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves hereof stamped with *Axungia* or hog's grease, and applied unto green wounds in manner of a poultice, healeth them in short time, and in such absolute manner, that it is hard for any that have not had the experience thereof to believe: for being in Kent about a patient, it chanced that a poor man in mowing of peas did cut his leg with a scythe, wherein he made a wound to the bones, and withal very large and wide, and also with great effusion of blood; the poor man crept unto this herb, which he bruised with his hands, and tied a great quantity of it unto the wound with a piece of his shirt, which presently stanched the bleeding, and ceased the pain, insomuch that the poor man presently went to his day's work again, and so did from day to day, without resting one day until he was perfectly whole, which was accomplished in a few days, by this herb stamped with a little hog's grease, and so laid upon in manner of a poultice, which did as it were glue or solder the lips of the wound together, and heal it according to the first intention, as we term it, that is, without drawing or bringing the wound to suppuration or matter; which was fully performed in seven days, that would have required forty days with balsam itself. I saw the wound, and offered to heal the same for charity; which he refused, saying I could not heal it so well as himself: a clownish answer I confess, without any thanks for my goodwill; whereupon I have named it Clown's Woundwort, as aforesaid. Since which time myself have cured many grievous wounds, and some mortal, with the same herb; one for example done upon a gentleman of Gray's Inn in Holborn, Mr. Edmund Cartwright, who was thrust into the lungs, the wound entering in at the lower part of the thorax, or the breast-blade, even through that cartilaginous substance called *mucronata cartilago*, insomuch that from day to day the frothing and puffing of the lungs did spew forth of the wound such excrements as it was possessed of; besides the gentleman was most dangerously vexed with a double quotidian fever; whom by God's permission I perfectly cured in very short time, and with this clown's experiment, and some of my foreknown helps, which were as followeth.

B. First I framed a slight unguent hereof thus: I took four handfuls of the herb stamped, and put them into a pan, whereunto I added four ounces of barrow's grease, half a pint of oil Olive, wax three ounces, which I boiled unto the consumption of the juice (which is known when the stuff doth not bubble at all) then did I strain it, putting it to the fire again, adding thereto two ounces of turpentine, the which I suffered to boil a little, reserving the same for my use.

C. The which I warmed in a saucer, dipping therein small soft tents, which I put into the wound, defending the parts adjoining with a plaster of *Calcitheos*, relented with oil of roses: which manner of dressing and preserving I did even until the wound was perfectly whole: notwithstanding once in a day I gave him two spoonfuls of this decotion following.
D. I took a quart of good claret wine, wherein I boiled an handful of the leaves of *Solidago saracenica*, or Saracen's Confound, and four ounces of honey, whereof I gave him in the morning two spoonfuls to drink in a small draught of wine tempered with a little sugar.

E. In like manner I cured a shoe-maker's servant in Holborn, who intended to destroy himself for causes known unto many now living: but I deemed it better to cover the fault, than to put the same in print, which might move such a graceless fellow to attempt the like: his attempt was thus; First, he gave himself a most mortal wound in the throat, in such sort, that when I gave him drink it came forth at the wound, which likewise did blow out the candle: another deep and grievous wound in the breast with the said dagger, and also two others in *Abdomine* or the nether belly, so that the *Zirbus* or fat, commonly called the caul, issued forth, with the guts likewise: the which mortal wounds, by God's permission, and the virtues of this herb, I perfectly cured within twenty days: for the which the name of God be praised.
CHAP. 391. Of Magydale, or Laserwort.

The Description.

It seemeth that neither Dioscorides nor yet Theophrastus have ever seen Laserpitium, Sagapenum, or any other of the gummiferous roots, but have barely and nakedly set down their judgments upon the same, either by hearsay, or by reading of other men's works. Now then seeing the old writers be unperfect herein, it behooveth us in this case to search with more diligence the truth hereof; and the rather, for that very few have set forth the true description of that plant which is called Laserpitium, that is indeed the true Laserpitium, from the roots whereof flow that sap or liquor called laser. This plant, as Pena and Lobel themselves say, was found out not far from the isles which Dioscorides calls Stechades, over against Massilia, among sundry other rare plants. His stalk is great and thick like Ferula, or Fennel Giant: The leaves are like unto the common Smallage, and of an unpleasant savour. The flowers grow at the top of the stalks, tuft-fashion like Ferula or Fennel: which being past, there succeed broad and flat seeds like Angelica, of a good savour, and of the colour of Box. The roots are many, coming from one head or chief root, and are covered over with a thick and fat bark. These roots and stalks being scarified or cut, there floweth out of them a strong liquor, which being dried is very medicinable, and is called laser.

The Place.

There be sundry sorts of laser, flowing from the roots and stalks of Laserpitium, the goodness or quality whereof varieth according to the country or climate wherein the plant groweth. For the best groweth upon the high mountains of Cyrene and Africa, and is of a pleasant smell: in Syria also, Media, Armenia, and Libya; the liquor of which plant growing in these places is of a most strong and detestable savour. Lobel reporteth, that Jacobus Rainaudus an apothecary of Massilia was the first that made it known or brought the plants thereof to Montpellier in France, unto the learned Rondeletius, who right well beholding the same, concluded, that of all the kinds of Ferula that he had ever seen, there was not any so answerable unto the true Laserpitium as this only plant.
The Time.

This plant flowereth in Montpellier about midsummer.

The Names.

It is called in Latin *Laserpitium*: in English, Laserwort, and Magydare: the gum or liquor that issueth out of the same is called laser, but that which is gathered from those plants that do grow in Media and Syria, is called *Asafœtida*.

The Nature.

*Laserpitium*, especially the root, is hot and dry in the third degree: laser is also hot and dry in the third degree, but it exceedeth much the heat of the leaves, stalks, and roots of Laserpitium.

The Virtues.

A. The root of *Laserpitium* well pounded, or stamped with oil, scattereth clotted blood, taketh away black and blue marks that come of bruises or stripes, cureth and dissolveth the King's Evil, and all hard swellings and botches, the places being anointed or plastered therewith.

B. The same root made into a plaster with the oil of Ireos and wax, doth both assuage and cure the sciatica, or gout, of the hip or huckle bone.

C. The same holden in the mouth and chewed, doth assuage the toothache; for they are such roots as draw from the brain a great quantity of humours.

D. The liquor or gum of *Laserpitium*, especially the laser of Cyrene broken and dissolved in water and drunken, taketh away the hoarseness that cometh suddenly: and being supped up with a near egg, cureth the cough: and taken with some good broth or supping, is good against an old pleurisy.

E. Laser cureth the jaundice and dropsy, taken with dried figs: also being taken in the quantity of scruple, with a little pepper and myrrh, is very good against shrinking of sinews, and members out of joint.

F. The same taken with honey and vinegar, or the syrup of vinegar, is very good against the falling sickness.

G. It is good against the flux of the belly coming of the debility and weakness of the stomach (called in Latin *Cœliacus morbus*) if it be taken with raisins of the Sun.

H. It driveth away the shakings and shiverings of agues, being drunk with wine, pepper, & white Frankincense. Also there is made an electuary thereof called *Antidotus ex succo Cyrenaico*, which is a singular medicine against fever quartans.

I. It is excellent against the bitings of all venomous beasts, and venomous shot of darts or arrows, not only taken inwardly, but also applied outwardly upon wounds.

K. It bringeth to maturation, and breaketh all pestilential imposthumes, botches and carbuncles, being applied thereto with Rue, saltpetre, and honey: after the same manner it taketh away corns after they have been scarified with a knife.

L. Being laid to with copperas and verdigris, it taketh away all superfluous outgrowings of the flesh, the *polypus* that happeneth in the nose, and all scurvy manginess.
M. If it be applied with vinegar, pepper and wine, it cureth the naughty scurf of the head, and falling off of the hair.

N. The gum or liquor of Laserpitium which growth in Armenia, Lybia, and sundry other places, is that stinking and loathsome gum called of the Arabian physicians *asa* and *assa*, as also with us in shops asafœtida: but the *Laserpitium* growing in Cyrene is the best, and of a reasonable pleasant smell, and is called laser to distinguish and make difference between the two juices; though asafœtida be good for all purposes aforesaid, yet is it not so good as laser of Cyrene: it is good also to smell unto, and to be applied unto the navels of women vexed with the chocking, or rising of the mother.
CHAP. 392. Of Common Lovage.

Ancient writers have added unto this common kind of Lovage, a second sort, yet knowing that the plant so supposed is the true Siler montanum, and not Levisticum, though others have also deemed it Laserpitium. These two suppositions are easily answered, sith they be sundry kinds of plants, though they be very near in shape and faculties one unto another. This plant being our common garden Lovage, hath large and broad leaves almost like to Smallage. The stalks are round, hollow and knotty, 3 cubits high, having spoky tufts, or bushy roundels; and at the top of the stalks of a yellow colour, a round, flat, and brown seed, like the seed of Angelica: the root is long and thick, and bringeth forth every year new stems.

The Place.

The right Levisticum or Lovage groweth in sundry gardens, and not wild (as far as I know) in England.

The Time.

Lovage flowereth most commonly in July and August.

The Names.

It is called in Latin Levisticum: and by some, Ligusticum: of other some, Siler montanum, but not truly: in High Dutch, Libstokel: in French, Livische: in Low Dutch, Laverse: in English, Lovage.

The Nature.

This plant is hot and dry in the third degree.
Gerard's Herbal

The Virtues.

A. The roots of Lovage are very good for all inward diseases, driving away ventosities or windiness, especially of the stomach.

B. The seed thereof warmeth the stomach, helpeth digestion; wherefore the people of Gennes in times past did use it in their meats, as we do pepper, according to the testimony of Ant. Musa.

C. The distilled water of Lovage cleareth the sight, and putteth away all spots, lentils, freckles, and redness of the face, if they be often washed therewith.
CHAP. 393. Of Cow Parsnip.

The Description.

This plant *Sphondylium* groweth in all countries, and is known by the name of wild Parsnip or *Sphondylium*, whereunto it effectually answereth, both in his grievous and rank savour, as also in the likeness of the root, whereupon it was called *Sphondylium*; and of the Germans, *Acanthus*, but untruly: the leaves of this plant are long and large, not much unlike the leaves of wild Parsnip, or *Panax heracleum*; deeply notched or cut about the edges like the teeth of a saw, and of an overworn green colour. The flowers grow in tufts or roundels, like unto wild Parsnips: the root is like to Henbane: this herb in each part thereof hath an evil savour, and differeth from the right *Acanthium*, not only in faculties, but even in all other things.

The Place.

This plant groweth in fertile moist meadows, and feeding pastures, very commonly in all parts of England, or elsewhere, in such places as I have travelled.

The Time.

*Sphondylium* flowereth in June and July.

The Names.

It is called in Greek and Latin *Sphondylium*: in the shops of High and Low Germany *Branca ursina*, who unadvisedly in times past have used it in clysters, instead of Brank Ursine, and thereupon have named it *Bernclaw*: in English, Cow Parsnip, Meadow Parsnip, and Madnip.
The Nature.

Cow Parsnip is of a manifest warm complexion.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of this plant do consume and dissolve cold swellings if they be bruised and applied thereto.

B. The people of Polonia and Lithuania use to make drink with the decoction of this herb, and leaven or some other thing made of meal, which is used instead of beer and other ordinary drink.

C. The seed of Cow Parsnip drunken, scoureth out phlegmatic matter through the guts, it healeth the jaundice, the falling sickness, the strangling of the mother, and them that are short-winded.

D. Also if a man be fallen into a dead sleep, or a swoon, the fume of the seed will waken him again.

E. If a frantic or melancholic man's head be anointed with oil wherein the leaves and roots have been sodden, it helpeth him very much, and such as be troubled with the headache and the lethargy, or sickness called the forgetful evil.
CHAP. 394. Of Herb Frankincense

The Description.

1. There hath been from the beginning divers plants of sundry kinds, which men have termed by this glorious name Libanotis, only in respect of the excellent and fragrant smell which they have yielded unto the senses of man, somewhat resembling
frankincense. The scent and smell Dioscorides doth ascribe to the root of this first kind; which bringeth forth a long stalk with joints like Fennel, whereon grow leaves almost like Chervil or Hemlocks, saving that they be greater, broader, and thicker: at the top of the stalks grow spoky tassels bearing whitish flowers, which do turn into sweet smelling seed, somewhat flat, and almost like the seed of Angelica. The root is black without, and white within, hairy above, at the parting of the root and stalk like unto *Meum* or *Peucedanum*, and savoureth like unto rosin, or frankincense.

2. The second kind of *Libanotis* hath also a straight stalk, full of knots and joints: the leaves are like unto Smallage: the flowers grow in tassels like unto the former, and bring forth great, long and uneven seed, of a sharp taste: the root is like the former, and so is the whole plant very like, but lesser.

3. The third kind of *Libanotis* differeth somewhat from the others in form and shape; yet it agreeth with them in smell, which in some sort is like frankincense: the leaves are whiter, longer, and rougher than the leaves of Smallage: the stalks do grow to the height of two cubits, bearing at the top the spoky tufts of Dill, somewhat yellow: the root is like the former, but thicker, neither wanteth it hairy tassels at the top of the root, which the others also have, before rehearsed.

4. I cannot find among all the plants called *Libanotides*, any one more agreeable to the true and right *Libanotis* of Dioscorides than this herb, which ariseth up to the height of five or six cubits with the clear shining stalks of *Ferula*; dividing itself from his knotty joints into sundry arms or branches, set full of leaves like Fennel, but thicker and bigger, and fatter than the leaves of *Cotula fœtida*, of a greyish green colour, bearing at the top of the stalks the tufts of *Ferula*, or rather of Carrots, full of yellow flowers: which being past there succeedeth long flat seed like the seed of the Ash tree, smelling like rosin, or frankincense, which being chewed filleteth the mouth with the taste of frankincense, but sharper: all the rest of the plant is tender, and somewhat hot, but not unpleasant: the plant is like unto *Ferula*, and aboundeth with milk as *Ferula* doth, of a reasonable good savour.

The Place.

I have the two last kinds growing in my garden; the first and second grow upon the high deserts and mountains of Germany.

The Time.

These herbs do flower in July and August.

The Names.

This herb is called in Latin, *Rosmarinus*; the first may be Englished Great Frankincense Rosemary; Mr Lite calleth the third in English, Black Hartwort, the fourth White Hartwort: the seed is called *Cachrys* or *Canchrys*.

The Nature.

These herbs with their seeds and roots are hot and dry in the second degree, and are of a digestling, dissolving, and mundifying quality.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of *Libanotis* pounded, stop the flux of the haemorrhoides or piles, and supple the swellings and inflammations of the fundament called...
condilomata, concoct the swellings of the throat called struma, and ripen botches that will hardly be brought to suppuration or to ripeness.

B. The juice of the leaves and roots mixed with honey, and put into the eyes, doth quicken the sight, and cleareth the dimness of the same.

C. The seed mingled with honey, doth scour and cleanse rotten ulcers, and being applied unto cold and hard swellings consumeth and wasteth them.

D. The leaves and roots boiled until they be soft, and mingled with the meal of Darnel and vinegar, assuageth the pain of the gout, if they be applied thereto.

E. Moreover being received in wine and pepper, it helpeth the jaundice, and provoketh sweat, and being put into oil and used as an ointment, it cureth ruptures also.

F. It purgeth the disease called in Latin, vitiligo, or impetigo, that is, the white spottiness of the skin, chaps, or rifts in the palms of the hands and soles of the feet, and by your patience cousin german to the scab of Naples, transported or transferred into France, and prettily well sprinkled over our Northern coasts.

G. When the seed of Libanotis is put into receipts, you must understand, that it is not meant of the seed of Cachris, because it doth with his sharpness exasperate or make rough the gullet; for it hath a very heating quality, and doth dry very vehemently, yea this seed being taken inwardly, or the herb itself, causeth to purge upward and downward very vehemently.
CHAP. 395. Of Coriander.

The Description.

1. The first or common kind of Coriander is a very stinking herb, smelling like the stinking worm called in Latin *Cimex*: it hath a round stalk full of branches, two foot long. The leaves are of a faint green colour, very much cut or jagged: the leaves that grow lowest, and spring first, are almost like the leaves of Chervil or Parsley, but those which come forth afterward, and grow upon the stalks, are more jagged, almost like the leaves of Fumitory, though a great deal smaller, tenderer, and more jagged. The flowers are white, and do grow in round tassels like unto Dill. The seed is round, hollow within, and of a pleasant scent and savour when it is dry. The root is hard, and of a woody substance, which dieth when the fruit is ripe, and soweth itself from year to year, whereby it mightily increaseth.

2. There is a second kind of Coriander very like unto the former, saving that the bottom leaves and stalks are smaller: the fruit thereof is greater, and growing together by couples, it is not so pleasant of savour nor taste, being a wild kind thereof, unfit either for meat or medicine.

The Place.

Coriander is sown in fertile fields and gardens, and the first doth come of itself from time to time in my garden, though I never sowed the same but once.
The Time.

They flower in June and July, and deliver their seed in the end of August.

The Names.

The first is called in Latin Coriandrum: in English, Corianders. The second, Coriandrum alterum, wild Corianders.

The Temperature.

The green and stinking leaves of Corianders are of complexion cold and dry, and very naught, unwholesome and hurtful to the body.

The dry and pleasant well savouring seed is warm, and very convenient to sundry purposes.

The Virtues.

A. Coriander seed prepared and covered with sugar, as comfits, taken after meat closeth up the mouth of the stomach, stayeth vomiting, and helpeth digestion.

B. The same parched or roasted, or dried in an oven, and drunk with wine, killeth and bringeth forth worms, stoppeth the lask, and bloody flux, and all other extraordinary issues of blood.

The manner how to prepare Coriander, both for meat and medicine.

C. Take the seed well and sufficiently dried, whereupon pour some wine and vinegar, and so leave them to infuse or steep four and twenty hours, then take them forth and dry them, and keep them for your use.

D. The green leaves of Coriander boiled with the crumbs of bread or barley meal, consumeth all hot swellings and inflammations: and with bean meal dissolveth the King's Evil, wens, and hard lumps.

E. The juice of the leaves mixed and laboured in a leaden mortar with ceruse, litharge of silver, and oil of roses, cureth St. Anthony's fire, and taketh away all inflammations whatsoever.

F. The juice of the green Coriander leaves, taken in the quantity of four drams, killeth and poisoneth the body.

G. The seeds of Coriander prepared with sugar, prevail much against the gout, taken in some small quantity before dinner upon a fasting stomach, and after dinner the like without drinking immediately after the same, or in three or four hours. Also if the same be taken after supper it prevaileth the more, and hath more superiority over the disease.

H. Also, if it be taken with meat fasting, it causeth good digestion, and shutteth up the stomach, keepeth away fumes from rising up out of the same: it taketh away the sounding in the ears, drieth up the rheum, and cureth the squinancy.
CHAP. 396. Of Parsley.

The Description.

1. The leaves of Garden Parsley are of a beautiful green, consisting of many little ones fastened together, divided most commonly into three parts and also snipped round about the edges: the stalk is above one cubit high, slender, something chamfered, on the top whereof stand spoked roundels, bringing forth very fine little flowers, and afterwards small seeds somewhat of a fiery taste: the root is long and white, and good to be eaten.

2. There is another garden Parsley in taste and virtue like unto the precedent: the only difference is that this plant bringeth forth leaves very admirably crisped or curled like fans of curled feathers, whence it is called *Apium crispum, sive multifidum*; Curled Parsley.

3. There is also kept in same gardens another Parsley called *Apium sive petrosilinum virginianum*, or Virginian Parsley; it hath leaves like the ordinary, but rounder, and of a yellowish green colour, the stalks are some three foot high, divided into sundry branches whereon grow umbels of whitish flowers: the seeds are like, but larger than those of the common Parsley, and when they are ripe they commonly sow themselves, and the old roots die, and the young ones bear seed the second year after their sowing.

The Place.

It is sown in beds in gardens; it groweth both in hot and cold places, so that the ground be either by nature moist, or be oftentimes watered: for it prospereth in moist places, and is delighted with water, and therefore it naturally cometh up near to
fountains or springs: Fuchsius writeth that it is found growing of itself in divers fenny grounds in Germany.

The Time.

It may be sown betime, but it slowly cometh up: it may oftentimes be cut and cropped: it bringeth forth his stalks the second year: the seeds be ripe in July or August.

The Names.

Every one of the Parsleys is called *Apium Hortense*: the apothecaries and common herbarists name it *Petroselinum*: in High Dutch, *Petersilgen*: in low Dutch, *Trimen Peterselie*: in French, *du Persil*: in Spanish, *Perixil Iulivert*, and *Salsa*: in Italian, *Petrosilio*: in English, Persele, Parsley, common Parsley, and garden Parsley. Yet is it not the true and right *Petroselinum* which groweth among rocks and stones, whereupon it took his name, and whereof the best is in Macedonia: therefore they are deceived who think that garden Parsley doth not differ from stone Parsley, and that the only difference is, for that Garden Parsley is of less force than the wild; for wild herbs are more strong in operation than those of the garden.

The Temperature.

Garden Parsley is hot and dry, but the seed is more hot and dry, which is hot in the second degree, and dry almost in the third: the root is also of a moderate heat.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves are pleasant in sauces and broth, in which besides that they give a pleasant taste, they be also singular good to take away stoppings, and to provoke urine: which thing the roots likewise do notably perform if they be boiled in broth: they be also delightful to the taste, and agreeable to the stomach.

B. The seeds are more profitable for medicine; they make thin, open, provoke urine, dissolve the stone, break and waste away wind, are good for such as have the dropsy, draw down menses, bring away the birth, and after-birth: they be commended also against the cough, if they be mixed or boiled with medicines made for that purpose: lastly they resist poisons, and therefore are mixed with treacles.

C. The roots or the seeds of any of them boiled in ale and drunken, cast forth strong venom or poison, but the seed is the strongest part of the herb.

D. They are also good to be put into clysters against the stone or torments of the guts.
CHAP. 397. Of Water Parsley, or Smallage.

Smallage hath green smooth and glittering leaves, cut into very many parcels, yet greater and broader than those of common Parsley: the stalks be chamfered and divided into branches on the tops whereof stand little white flowers; after which do grow seeds something lesser than those of common Parsley: the root is fastened with many strings.

The Place.

This kind of Parsley delighteth to grow in moist places, and is brought from thence into gardens. It grows wild abundantly upon the banks in the salt marshes of Kent and Essex.

The Time.

It flourisheth when the garden Parsley doth, and the stalk likewise cometh up the next year after it is sown, and then also it bringeth forth seeds which are ripe in July and August.

The Names.

The Temperature.

This Parsley is like in temperature and virtues to that of the garden, but it is both hotter and drier, and of more force in most things: this is seldom eaten, neither is it counted good for sauce, but it is very profitable for medicine.

The Virtues.

A. The juice thereof is good for many things, it cleanseth, openeth, attenuateth or maketh thin; it removeth obstructions and provoketh urine, and therefore those syrups which have this mixed with them, as that which is called Syrupus Bizantinus, open the stoppings of the liver and spleen, and are a remedy for long lasting agues; whether they be tertians or quartans, and all other which proceed both of a cold cause and also of obstructions or stoppings, and are very good against the yellow jaundice.

B. The same juice doth perfectly cure the malicious and venomous ulcers of the mouth, and of the almonds of the throat with the decoction of Barley and Mel Rosarum, or honey of Roses added, if the parts be washed therewith: it likewise helpeoth all outward ulcers and foul wounds: with honey it is profitable also for cankers exulcerated, for although it cannot cure them, yet it doth keep them from putrefaction, and preserveth them from stinking: the seed is good for those things for which that of the Garden Parsley is: yet is not the use thereof so safe, for it hurteth those that are troubled with the falling sickness, as by evident proofs it is very well known.

C. Smallage, as Pliny writeth, hath a particular virtue against the biting of venomous spiders.

D. The juice of Smallage mixed with honey and bean flour, doth make an excellent mundificative for old ulcers and malignant sores, and stayeth also the weeping of the cut or hurt sinews in simple members, which are not very fatty or fleshy, and bringeth the same to perfect digestion.

E. The leaves, boiled in hog's grease, and made into the form of a poultice, take away the pain of felons and whitlows in the fingers, and ripen and heal them.
CHAP. 398. Of Mountain Parsley.

The stalk of Mountain Parsley, as Dioscorides writeth, is a span high, growing from a slender root; upon which are branches and little heads like those of Hemlock, yet much slenderer: on which stalks do grow the seed, which is long, of a sharp or biting taste, slender, and of a strong smell, like unto Cumin: but we cannot find that this kind of Mountain Parsley is known in our age: the leaves of this we here give are like those of Common Parsley, but greater and broader, consisting of many slender footstalks fastened unto them; the stalk is short, the flowers on the spoked tufts be white; the seed small: the root is white, and of a mean length or bigness, in taste somewhat biting and bitterish, and of a sweet smell.

The Place.

Dioscorides writeth, that mountain Parsley groweth upon rocks and mountains. And Dodoneus affirmeth that this herb described grows on the hills which divide Silesia from Moravia, called in times past the country of the Marcomans: also it is said to be found on other mountains and hills in the North parts of England.

The Names.

The Latins do call it *Apium montanum*, and *Montapium*: in English Mountain Parsley: but Dioscorides maketh *Petroselinum* or Stone Parsley to differ from Mountain Parsley; for, saith he, we must not be deceived, taking Mountain Parsley to be that which groweth on rocks: for Rock Parsley is another plant, of some it is called, *Veeltutta*: in Latin, *Multibona*, (in English, much good:) for it is so named because it is good, and profitable for many things: and this is not altogether improperly termed
Oreoselinum, or Mountain Parsley; for it groweth as we have said on mountains, and is not unlike to Stone Parsley: the seed is not like to that of Cumin, for if were so, who would deny it to be Oreoselinum, or Dioscorides his Mountain Parsley.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Oreoselinum, or Mountain Parsley is, as Galen saith, like in faculty unto Smallage, but more effectual; Dioscorides writeth that the seed and root being drunk in wine provoke urine, bring down the menses, and that they are mixed with counterpoisons, diuretic medicines, and medicines that are hot.

B. The root of Veelgutta, or Much Good, is also hot and dry, and that in the later end of the second degree, it maketh thin, it cureth, openeth, provoketh, breaketh the stone and expelleth it, openeth the stoppings of the liver and spleen, and cureth the yellow jaundice: being chewed it helpeth the toothache, and bringeth much water out of the mouth.
CHAP. 399. Of Stone Parsley of Macedonia.

The Description.

Of Stone Parsley very little is written of the old writers, Dioscorides only saith that this hath seed like to that of Ameos, but of a more pleasant smell, sharp, aromatical, or spiced; touching the form of the leaves, the colour of the flowers, and fashion of the root he writeth nothing at all: and Pliny is more brief; as for Theophrastus he doth not so much as name it, making mention only of Parsley, Alexander, Smallage, and Mountain Parsley.

1. For Stone Parsley Leonhartus Fuchsius hath set down a plant, having leaves not spread and cut after the manner of garden Parsley, but long, and snipped round about, made up and fastened to a rib or stem in the midst, something like, but yet not altogether, to the first leaves of the lesser Saxifrage; the stalk is slender, and a cubit and a half high; the roots on the spoky tufts are white: the seed something black, like to that of Ameos, and Garden Parsley, very sweet of smell, something sharp or biting: the root is slender and full of strings.

2. Lobel also instead of the right Stone Parsley describeth another, which the Venetians call Stone Parsley of Macedonia: this hath leaves like those of garden Parsley, or rather of the Venetian Saxifrage which is the Black Herb Frankincense formerly described: the stalk is a cubit high; the spoky tufts something white: the seed small, quickly fading (as he saith) inferior to that of garden Parsley in temperature and virtues: but whether this be the true and right Stone Parsley, he added, he is ignorant.
The Place.

It groweth on craggy rocks, and among stones: but the best in Macedonia, whereupon it beareth the surname *macedonicum*, of Macedonia.

The Time.

It flowereth in the summer months.

The Names.

It is called in Latin, *Petrapium*, and *Petroselinum macedonicum*: in English, Stone Parsley: the apothecaries know it not: they are far deceived that would have the herb which Fuchsius pictureth to be *Amomum*: for *Amomum* differeth from this, as it is very plain by the description thereof in Dioscorides: but we hold this for the true Stone Parsley, till such time as we may learn some other more like in leaves to the Parsleys, and in seed, such as that of Stone Parsley ought to be: and the very seed itself may cause us to hold this opinion, being so agreeing to the description as no herb more; for it is sharp and biting, and of a sweeter smell than is that of *Ameos*, and of a more spicy scent; yet do not the leaves gainsay it, which though they have not the perfect form of other Parsleys, yet notwithstanding are not altogether unlike. The first of these is thought by Anguillara, Tarner, Gesner, Cordus, and others, to be the *Sison* of Dioscorides, and Tragus calls it, *Amomon germanicum*, and the seeds in shops retain the name of *Sem. Amomi*. The second is thought by Columna to be the second *Daucus* of Dioscorides.

The Temperature.

The seed of Stone Parsley which is most commonly used, is hot and dry, having withal a cutting quality.

The Virtues.

A. It provoketh urine, and bringeth down the flowers: it is profitable against wind in the stomach, and colic gut, and gripings in the belly: for it is, as Galen saith, a waster or consumer of wind: it is a remedy against pain in the sides, kidneys and bladder, it is also mixed in counterpoisons: *Dioscorides.*
CHAP. 400. Of Corn Parsley, or Honewort.

The Description.

This herb cometh up at the first from seed like Parsley, with two small long narrow leaves, the next that spring are two small round smooth leaves nicked about the edges, and so for two or three couples of leaves of the next growth there are such round leaves growing on a middle rib by couples, and one round one, also at the top; after as more leaves spring up, so the fashion of them also change, that is to say, every leaf hath about eight or nine small smooth green leaves, growing on each side of a middle rib one opposite against another, and one growing by itself at the top, and are finely snipped or indented about the edges, in form resembling those of *Sium odoratum tragi*, but not so big, long, or at all brownish; amongst which rise up many small round streaked stalks or branches, about two foot long, now and then above twenty from one root, sometimes growing upright, sometimes creeping not far from the ground, jointed or kneed, and dividing themselves into very many branches, at every joint groweth one leaf smaller than the former, which together with the lowermost perish, so that there is seldom one green leaf to be seen on this herb when the seed is ripe; the flowers are white, and grow most commonly at the tops of the branches, sometimes at most of the joints even from the earth, in uneven or unorderly umbels, every flower having five exceeding small leaves, flat, and broad at the top, and in the middle very small chives with purple tops, the whole flower not much exceeding the bigness of a small pin's head, which being past there cometh up in the place of every flower two small grey crooked streaked seeds, like Parsley seeds, but bigger, in taste hot and aromatical. The root is small and whitish, with many threads not so big as Parsley roots. It beginneth to flower about the beginning of July, & so continues flowering a long time; part of the seed is ripe in August, and some scarce in
the beginning of October, meanwhile some falleth, whereby it reneweth itself, and
groweth with flourishing green leaves all the winter.

I took the description of this herb the year, 1620, but observed it long before,
not knowing any name for it: first I refered it to *Sium* calling it, *Sium terrestris*, and
*Sium segetum & agrorum*; afterwards upon sight of *Selinum peregrinum primum
clusii*, which in some respects resembleth this herb, I named it *Selinum sii foliis*; yet
wanting an English name, at length about the year 1625, I saw Mistress Ursula Leigh
(then servant to Mistress Bilson of Mapledurham in Hampshire, and now (5 March
1632) wife to Master William Mooring schoolmaster of Petersfield, a town near the
said Mapledurham) gather it in the wheat earshe about Mapledurham aforesaid
(where in such like grounds it still groweth, especially in clay grounds) who told me it
was called Honewort, and that her mother Mistress Charity Leigh late of Brading in
the Isle of Wight deceased, taught her to use it after the manner here expressed, for a
swelling which she had in her left cheek, which for many years would once a year at
the least arise there, and swell with great heat, redness, and itching, until by the use of
this herb it was perfectly cured, and rose no more nor swelled, being now (5 March
1632) about twenty years since, only the scar remaineth to this day. This swelling her
mother called by the name of a Hone, but asking whether such tumors werein the said
Isle usually called Hones she could not tell, by reason she was brought from Brading
aforesaid young, and not being above twelve years old when she used this medicine.

The Virtues.

A. Take one handful of the green leaves of this Honewort, and stamp them, put
to it about half a pint or more of beer, strain it, and drink it, and so continue to drink
the like quantity every morning fasting till the swelling doth abate, which with or in
her was performed in the space of two weekes at the most. August 18, 1620. John
Goodyer.
CHAP. 401. Of Alexanders.

The leaves of Alexanders are cut into many parcels like those of Smallage, but they be much greater and broader, smooth also, and of a deep green colour: the stalk is thick, oftentimes a cubit high: the flowers be white, and grow upon spoky tufts: the seed is thick, long, black, something bitter, and of an aromatical or spicy smell: the root is thick, black without, white within, like to a little Radish, and is good to be eaten. out of which being broken or cut, there issueth forth a juice that quickly waxeth thick; having in it a sharp bitterness, like in taste unto Myrrh: which thing also Theophrastus hath noted, there issueth out of it, saith he, a juice like Myrrh.

The Place.

Alexanders or great Parsley growth in most places of England.

The Time.

The seed waxeth ripe the second year, in the month of August.

The Names.

It is called in Greek, of the greatness wherein it excelleth the other Parsleys, *Ipposelinon* or Horse Parsley; of Gaza, *Equapium*. It is also named *Olus atrum*, or the black pot-herb, and of divers *Sylvestre Apium*; or wild Parsley; of Galen and certain others, *Smyrnion*, by reason of the juice that issueth forth thereof, that is, as we have said, like unto Myrrh, which is called in Greek *Smyrnion*; there is also another Smyrnium of mount Aman, of which we do write in the 404th chapter: the apothecaries call it *Petrosilinum macedonicum*: others, *Petroselinum alexandrinum*:

**The Temperature.**

The seed & root of Alexanders, are no less hot and dry than are those of the Garden Parsley, they cleanse and make thin, being hot and dry in the third degree.

**The Virtues.**

A. Dioscorides saith, that the leaves and stalks are boiled and eaten, and dressed alone by themselves, or with fishes: that they are preserved raw in pickle: that the root eaten both raw and sod, is good for the stomach: the root hereof is also in our age served to the table raw for a salad herb.

B. The seeds bring down the flowers, expel the secondine, break and consume wind, provoke urine, and are good against the strangury: the decoction also of the root doth the same, especially if it be made with wine.
CHAP. 402. Of Wild Parsley.

The Description.

This is like to the kinds of Parsleys in the sundry cuts of the leaves, and also in the bigness, for they be broad and cut into divers parcels: the stalks are round, chamfered, set with certain joints, hollow within, a cubit high or higher, two or three coming forth together out of one root, and in the nether part many times of a dark reddish colour. The flowers be white, and grow upon spoky tufts: the seed is round, flat, like that of Dill: the root is white within, and divided into many branches and strings. This plant in what part soever it be cut or broken, yieldeth forth a milky juice.

The Place.

It is found by ponds sides in moist and dankish places, in ditches also, having in them standing waters, and oftentimes by old stocks of Alder trees. Thus our author, but I have not as yet observed this plant growing wild with us.

The Time.

It flowereth and bringeth forth seed in June and July.

The Names.

The shops of the Low countries have miscalled it in times past by the name of Meum, and used it for the right Meu, or Spignel-Wort. The Germans name it Disenich: Valerius Cordus, Olsenichium: divers in the Low Countries call it Wilde Eppe, that is to say in Latin, Apium sylvestre, or Wild Parsley, and some Water Eppe, that is, Hydroselinon, or Apium aquatile, water Parsley: and oftentimes is it named, as we have already written, Eleoselinum, and Sium. It may be more rightly termed in Latin, Apium sylvestre, and in English, Wild Parsley.
Dioscorides hath made mention of Wild Parsley in the chapter of Daucus or Wild Carrot: and Theophrastus in his seventh book, where he maketh the Parsleys to differ both in leaves and stalks, and showeth that some have white stalks, others purple, or else of sundry colours, and that there is also a certain wild Parsley: for he saith that those which have the purple stalks, and the stalks of divers colours, come nearest of all to the wild Parsley. And therefore seeing that Olsenichium, or wild Parsley, hath the lower part of the stalk of a purplish colour, and like in leaves to Parsley, which in times past we thought good rather to call Apium sylvestre, or Wild Parsley, than to err with the apothecaries, and to take it for Meu. And after when we now know that it was held to be Thysselium plinii, and that we could allege nothing to the contrary, we also setled our selves to be of their opinon; and the rather, because the faculties are agreeable. Thysselium, saith Pliny, lib. 25. chapter 11, is not unlike to Parsley: the root hereof purgeth phlegm out of the head; which thing also the root of Olsenichium doth effectually perform, as we will forthwith declare.

The Temperature.

The root hereof is hot and dry in the third degree.

The Virtues.

A. The root being chewed bringeth by the mouth phlegm out of the head, and is a remedy for the toothache, and there is no doubt but that it also makes thin, cutteth and openeth, provoketh urine and bringeth down the flowers, and doth likewise no less but more effectually perform those things that the rest of the Parsleys do.
CHAP. 403. Of Bastard Parsley.

The Description.

1. The first kind of Bastard Parsley is a rough hairy herb, not much unlike to Carrots; the leaves are like to those of Corianders, but parted into many small jags: at the top of the branches do grow shadowy umbels, or spoky roundels, consisting of
many small white flowers: the seed is long and rough, like the seed of Carrots, but greater: the root is straight and single, growing deep into the ground, of a white colour, and in taste like the Parsnip.

2. There is another sort like unto the former, saving that the leaves thereof are broader, and the flowers are of a reddish colour: there hath great controversy risen about the true determination of *Caucalis*, because the Latin interpretation of Dioscorides is greatly suspected, containing in itself much superfluous matter, not pertinent to the history: but we deem that this plant is the true *Caucalis*, the notes set down declare it so to be: the flowers, saith he, are reddish: the seeds covered with a rough husk set about with prickles, which cleave unto garments that it toucheth, as do Burs; which roughness being peeled off, the seed appears like unto hulled oats, not unpleasant in taste, all which do show it to be the same.

3. There is likewise another sort that hath a long single root, thrummed about the upper end with many thrummy threads of a brown colour: from which riseth up divers stalks full of joints or knees, covered with a sheath or skinny film like unto that of *Meum*: the leaves are finely cut or jagged, resembling the leaves of our English Saxifrage: the flowers grow at the top of the stalks in spoky roundels like Fennel: the seed is small like that of Parsley.

4. Clusius under the name of *Caucalis maior* hath described and figured this, which hath many crested straight stalks some two cubits high or more, which are divided into sundry branches, and at each joint send forth large & winged leaves somewhat like those of Angelica, but rougher, and of a darker green; at the tops of the branches grow umbels of whitish flowers, being of somewhat a purplish or flesh colour underneath; and these are succeeded by broad seed almost like those of the Cow Parsnip, but that they are rougher, and forked at the top, and prickly: the root is white, hard and woody. It flowers in June, ripens the seed in July and August, and then the root dies, and the seed must be sown in September, and so it will come up and continue green all the winter.
5. Besides these formerly described there are two others growing wild with us: the first of these, which I have thought good to call Hedge, or Field Parsley, (because it grows about hedges, and in ploughed fields very plentifully everywhere) hath crested hollow stalks growing up to some cubit and half high, whereon stand winged leaves made of sundry little longish ones, set one against another, snipped about the edges, and ending in a long and sharp pointed leaf: these leaves as also the stalks are somewhat rough and harsh, and of a dark green colour: the flowers are small and reddish, and grow in little umbels, and are succeeded by longish little rough seed of somewhat a strong and aromatic taste and smell. It is an annual plant, and flowers commonly in July, and the seeds are ripe in August. Cordus and Thalius call it Daucoides minus; and Bauhin, Caucaulis semine aspeo flosculis subrubentibus. There is a bigger and lesser variety or sort or this plant, for you shall find it growing to the height of two cubits, with leaves and all the upper parts answerable, and you may again observe it not to exceed the height of half a foot.

6. This other, which Bauhin hath first set forth in writing by the name of Caucaulis nodosa echinato semine, hath a white and long root, from which it sends up sundry small crested and rough branches which commonly lie along upon the ground, and they are commonly of an unequal length, some a cubit long, other some scarce two handfuls: the leaves are small, rough, winged, and deeply jagged, and at the setting on of each leaf close to the stalks usually upon very short footstalks grow small little flowers of colour white, or reddish, and made of five little leaves apiece: after these follow the seed, round, small and rough, and they grow close to the stalks. It flowers in June and July, and grows wild in sundry places, as in the fields, and upon
the banks about St. James, and Piccadilly. Fabius Columna judges it to be the true *Scandix* of the ancients.

There is likewise one of these found in Spain, called *Caulis hispanica*, like the first: but it is an annual plant, which perishes at the first approach of winter, the which I have sown in my garden, but it perished before the seed was perfected.

**The Place.**

These plants do grow naturally upon rocks and stony grounds: we have the first and the third in our pastures in most places of England: that with red flowers is a stranger in England. So saith our author, but I have not heard that the third grows wild with us, but the second was found growing in the corn fields on the hills about Bath, by Mr. Bowles.

**The Time.**

They flower and flourish from May to the end of August.

**The Names.**


**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. Dioscorides saith, that bastard Parsley is a pot-herb which is eaten either raw or boiled, and provoketh urine.

B. Pliny doth reckon it up also among the pot-herbs: Galen addeth, that it is preserved in pickle for salads in winter.

C. The seed of Bastard Parsley is evidently hot and dry, and that in the second degree: it produceth urine, and bringeth down the desired sickness: it dissolveth the stone and driveth it forth.

D. It taketh away the stoppings of the liver, spleen, and kidneys: it cutteth and concocteth raw and phlegmatic humours: it comforteth a cold stomach, dissolveth wind, it quickeneth the sight, and refresheth the heart, if it be taken fasting.

E. Matthiolus in his Commentaries upon Dioscorides, the second book, attributeth unto it many excellent virtues, to provoke venery and bodily lust, and erection of the parts.
CHAP. 404. Of Candy Alexanders.

Dioscorides and Pliny have reckoned *Smyrnium* among the kinds of Parsley, whose judgements while this plant is young, and not grown up to a stalk, may find with very good reason, for that the young leaves next the ground are like to Parsley, but somewhat thicker and larger, among which riseth up a stalk a cubit high, and sometimes more, garnished with round leaves, far different from those next the ground, enclosing the stalk about like Thoroughwax, or *Perfoliata*; which leaves are of a yellow colour, and do rather resemble the leaves, of Foalfoot than Parsley: at the top of the stalks do grow round spoky tufts of a yellow colour, after which cometh round and black seed like Coleworts, of a sharp and bitter taste like Myrrh: the root is white and thick, contrary to the opinion of Dodonæus, who saith it is black without, but I speak that which I have seen and proved.

The Place.

*Smyrnium* groweth naturally upon the hills and mountains of Candy, and in my garden also in great plenty: also upon the mountain Amanus in Cilicia.

The Time.

*Smyrnium* flowereth in June, and the reed is ripe in August.

The Names.

This plant is called in Latin, *Smyrnium*, in Cilicia, *Petroselinum*, and as Galen testifieth, some have called it, *Hipposelinum agreste*: in English, Candy Alexanders, or Through-bored Parsley.
The Nature.

Smyrnium is hot and dry in the third degree.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of *Smyrnium* dissolve wens and hard swellings, dry up ulcers and excoriations, and glue wounds together.

B. The seeds are good against the stoppings of the spleen, kidneys, and bladder.

C. Candy Alexanders hath force to digest and waste away hard swellings, in other things it is like to garden Parsley, and Stone Parsley, and therefore we use the seed hereof to provoke the desired sickeness, and urine, and to help those that are stuffed in the lungs, as Galen writeth.

D. The root is hot, so is the herb and seed, which is good to be drunk against the biting of serpents: it is a remedy for the cough, and profitable for those that cannot take their breath unless they do sit or stand upright: it helpeth those that can hardly make their water: the seed is good against the infirmity of the spleen or milt, the kidneys and bladder: it is likewise a good medicine for those that have the dropsy, as Dioscorides writeth.
CHAP. 405. Of Parsnips.

The Description.

1. The leaves of the tame or Garden Parsnips are broad, consisting of many small leaves fastened to one middle rib like those of the ash tree: the stalk is upright, of the height of a man: the flowers stand upon spoky tufts, of colour yellow; after which cometh the seed flat and round, greater than those of Dill: the root is white, long, sweet, and good to be eaten.

2. The Wild Parsnip is like to that of the Garden, in leaves, stalk, tuft, yellow flowers, flat and round seed, but altogether lesser: the root is small, hard, woody, and not fit to be eaten.

The Place.

The Garden Parsnip requireth a fat and loose earth, and that that is digged up deep.

The Wild Parsnip growth in untoiled places, especially in the salt marshes, upon the banks and borders of the same: the seed whereof being gathered and brought into the garden, and sowed in fertile ground, do prove better roots, sweeter and greater than they that are sown of seeds gathered from those of the garden.

The Time

They flower in July and August, and seed the second year after they be sown.
The Names.

The herbarists of our time do call the garden Parsnips *Pastinaca*, and therefore we have surnamed it *Latifolia*, or broad-leaved, that it may differ from the other garden Parsnip with narrow leaves, which is truly and properly called *Staphylinus*, that is, the garden Carrot. Some physicians doubting, and not knowing to what herb of the ancients it should be referred, have feigned the wild kind hereof to be *Panaci species*, or a kind of All-Heal: divers have named it *Baucia*; others, *Branca leonina*, but if you diligently mark and confer it with *Elaphoboscum* of Dioscorides, you shall hardly find any difference at all: but the plant called at Montpellier *Pabulum cervinum*: in English, Hart's Fodder, supposed there to be the true *Elaphoboscum*, differeth much from the true notes thereof. Now *Baucia*, as Jacobus Manlius reporteth in *Luminari maiore*, is Dioscorides', and the old writers' *Pastinaca*, that is to say, *Tenuifolia*, or Carrot: but the old writers, and especially Dioscorides have called this wild Parsnip by the name of *Elaphoboscum* and we do call them Parsnips and Mypes.

The Temperature.

The Parsnip root is moderately hot, and more dry than moist.

The Virtues.

A. The Parsnips nourish more than do the Turnips or the Carrots, and the nourishment is somewhat thicker, but not faulty nor bad; notwithstanding they be somewhat windy: they pass through the body neither slowly nor speedily: they neither bind nor loose the belly: they provoke urine, and lust of the body: they be good for the stomach, kidneys, bladder, and lungs.

B. There is a good and pleasant food or bread made of the roots of Parsnips, as my friend Mr Plat hath set forth in his book of experiments, which I have made no trial of; nor mean to do.

C. The seed is hotter and drier even unto the second degree, it moveth urine, and consumeth wind.

D. It is reported, saith Dioscorides, that deer are preserved from bitings of serpents, by eating of the herb *Elaphoboscum*, or Wild Parsnip, whereupon the seed is given with wine against the bitings and stingings of Serpents.
CHAP. 406. Of Skirret.

Fig. 1471. Skirret.

The Description.

The leaves of the Skirret do likewise consist of many small leaves fastened to one rib, every particular one whereof is something nicked in the edges, but they are lesser, greener and smoother than those of the Parsnip. The stalks be short, and seldom a cubit high; the flowers in the spoked tufts are white, the roots be many in number, growing out of one head an hand breadth long, most commonly not a finger thick, they are sweet, white, good to be eaten, and most pleasant in taste.

The Place and Time.

This Skirret is planted in gardens, and especially by the root, for the greater and thicker ones being taken away, the lesser are put into the earth again: which thing is best to be done in March or April, before the stalks come up, and at this time the roots which be gathered are eaten raw, or boiled.

The Names.

This herb is called in Latin Sisarum, and also in Greek Sisaron; the Latins do likewise call it Siser; and divers of the later Herbarists, Servillum or Chervillum, or Servilla: the Germans name it Sierlin: Tragus, Zam garten rapunkelen: in the Low Countries, Zanker wortelen, that is to say, Sugar roots, and oftentimes Serillen: in Spanish, Cherinia: Italian, Sisaro: in French, Chervy: in English, Skirret and Skirwort. And this is that Siser or Skirret which Tiberius the Emperor commanded to be conveyed unto him from Gelduba a castle about the river of Rhine, as Pliny reporteth in lib. 19. cap. 5. The Skirret is a medicinable herb, and is the same that the foresaid Emperor did so much commend, insomuch that he desired the same to be brought
unto him every year out of Germany. It is not, as divers suppose, Serapio his Secacul, of which he hath written in his 89th chapter: for Secacul is described by the leaf of Iulben, that is to say, of the Pea, as Matthiolus Sylvaticus expoundeth it and it bringeth forth a black fruit of the bigness of a Chickpea, full of moisture, and of a sweet taste, which is called Granum culcul: but the Skirret hath not the leaf of the Pea, neither doth it bring forth fruit like to the Chickpea; whereupon it is manifest, that the Skirret doth very much differ from Serapio his Secacul: so far is it from being the same.

The Nature and Virtues.

A. The roots of the Skirret be moderately hot and moist; they be easily concocted; they nourish meanly, and yield a reasonable good juice: but they are something windy, by reason whereof they also provoke lust.

B. They be eaten boiled, with vinegar, salt, and a little oil, after the manner of a salad, and oftentimes they be fried in oil and butter, and also dressed after other fashions, according to the skill of the cook, and the taste of the eater.

C. The women in Swabia, saith Hieronymus Heroldus, prepare the roots hereof for their husbands, and know full well wherefore and why, &c.

D. The juice of the roots drunk with goat's milk stoppeth the lask. The same drunk with wine putteth away windiness out of the stomach, and gripings of the belly, and helpeth the hicket or yexing. They stir up appetite, and provoke urine.
CHAP. 407. Of Carrots.

The Description.

1. The leaves of the garden Carrots are of a deep green colour, composed of many fine Fennel-like leaves, very notably cut or jagged, among which riseth up a stalk straight and round, four cubits high, somewhat hairy and hollow, having at the top round spoked tufts, in which do grow little white flowers: in their places cometh the seed, rough and hairy, of a sweet smell when it is rubbed. The root is long, thick and single, of a fair yellow colour, pleasant to be eaten, and very sweet in taste.

2. There is another kind hereof like to the former in all parts and differeth from it only in the colour of the root, which in this is not yellow, but of a blackish red colour.

The Place.

These Carrots are sown in the fields, and in gardens where other pot herbs are: they require a loose and well manured soil.

The Time.

They are to be sown in April; they bring forth their flowers and seed the year after they be sown.
The Names.

The plant which is termed in Latin by the name of Pastinaca latiori folii, or the Garden Parsnip, is described of the old writers by another name: this Carrot is called in Latin likewise, Pastinaca sativa, but with this addition tenuifolia, that it may differ from the garden Parsnip with broad leaves, and white roots. Theophrastus in the ninth book of his history of plants nameth this Staphylinus, or Carrot, Daukos, and writeth that it groweth in Arcadia, and saith that the best is found in Spartensi Achaia, but doubtless he meant that Daucus which we call cretensis, that may be numbered among the Carrots: Galen in his book Of the Faculties of Simple Medicines doth also make it to be Daucus, but yet not simply Daucus; for he addeth also Staphilinus or Pastinaca: in High Dutch it is called Geel ruben: in Low Dutch, Geel Pooten, Geel Worten: in French, Carrotte, and Racine iaulne: in Italian, Pastinaca: in Spanish, Canahoria: in English, Yellow Carrots: the other is called Red Carrot, and Black Carrot.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The root of the Yellow Carrot is most commonly boiled with fat flesh and eaten: it is temperately hot and something moist. The nourishment which cometh thereof is not much, and not very good: it is something windy, but not so much as be the Turnips, and doth not so soon as they pass through the body.

B. The Red Carrot is of like faculty with the yellow. The seed of them both is hot and dry, it breaketh and consumeth windiness, provoketh urine, as doth that of the wild Carrot.
CHAP. 408. Of Wild Carrot.

The Description.

The leaves of the wild Carrot are cut into divers slender narrow parcels, very like unto those of the garden Carrots, but they be somewhat whiter, and more hairy: the stalks be likewise hairy and somewhat rough: the flowers are little, and stand upon broad spoked tufts, of a white colour, of which tuft of flowers the middlemost part is of a deep purple: the whole tuft is drawn together when the seed is ripe, resembling a bird's nest; whereupon it hath been named of some Bird's-Nest: the root slender, and of a mean length.

The Place.

It groweth of itself in untoiled places, in fields, and in the borders thereof, almost everywhere.

The Time.

It flowers and flourisheth in June and July, the seed is ripe in August.

The Names.

The wild Carrot is called in Latin, Pastinaca sylvestre tenuifolia: in shops, Daucus: and it is used instead of the true Daucus, and not amiss, nor unprofitably: for Galen also in his time doth testify that it was taken for Daucus, or Bastard Parsley, and is without doubt Daucus sylvestris genus, or a wild kind of bastard Parsley, so called of Theophrastus: in high Dutch it is named Wild Pastenen, Vogel nest: in Low Dutch Vogels nest, and Wilde Caroten Crookens erupt: in French, Pastena de Sauvage: in English, Wild Carrot, and after the Dutch, Bird's-Nest, and in same places Bees-Nest.
Athenæus citing Diphilus for his author, saith, that the Carrot is called Philipon, because it serveth for love matters; and Orpheus, as Pliny writeth, said, that the use hereof winneth love: which things be written of wild Carrot, the root whereof is more effectual than that of the garden, and containeth in it, as Galen saith, a certain force to procure lust.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. The seed of this wild Carrot, and likewise the root is hot and dry in the second degree, and doth withal open obstructions.

B. The root boiled and eaten, or boiled with wine, and the decoction drunk; provoketh urine, expelleth the stone, bringeth forth the birth; it also procureth bodily lust.

C. The seed drunk bringeth down the desired sickness, it is good for them that can hardly make water, it breaketh and dissolveth wind, it remedieth the dropsy, it cureth the colic and stone, being drunk in wine.

D. It is also good for the passions of the mother, and helpeth conception: it is good against the bitings of all manner of venomous beasts: it is reported, saith Dioscorides, that such as have first taken of it are not hurt by them.
CHAP. 409. Of Candy Carrots.

Fig. 1475. Candy Carrots

The Description.

This *Daucus cretensis*, being the true *Daucus* of Dioscorides, doth not grow in Candy only, but is found upon the mountains of Germany, and upon the hills and rocks of Jura about Geneva, from whence it hath been sent and conveyed by one friendly herbarist unto another, into sundry regions: it beareth leaves which are small, and very finely jagged, resembling either Fennel or Wild Carrot: among which riseth up a stalk of a cubit high, having at the top white spoky tufts, and the flowers of Dill: which being past, there come great plenty of long seed, well smelling, not unlike the seed of Cumin, save that it is whitish, with a certain mossiness, and a sharp taste, and is in greater use than any part of the plant. The root also is right good in medicine, being lesser than the root of a Parsnip, but hotter in taste, and of a fragrant smell.

The Time.

This flowers in June and July, his seed is ripe in August.

The Names.

There is sufficient spoken in the description as touching the name.

The Nature.

These plants are hot and dry, especially the seed of *Daucus creticus*, which is hot and dry in the third degree: but the seed of the wild Carrot is hot and dry in the second degree.
The Virtues.

A. The seed of *Daucus* drunken is good against the strangury, and painful making of water, it prevaileth against the gravel and stone, and provoketh urine.

B. It assuageth the torments and gripings of the belly, dissolveth windiness, cureth the colic, and ripeneth an old cough.

C. The same being taken in wine, is very good against the bitings of beasts, and expelleth poison.

D. The seed of *Daucus creticus* is of great efficacy and virtue being put into treacle, mithridate, or any antidotes, against poison or pestilence.

E. The root thereof drunk in wine stoppeth the lask, and is also a sovereign remedy against venom and poison.
CHAP. 410. Of Stinking and Deadly Carrots.

The Description.

1. The great Stinking Carrot hath very great leaves, spread abroad like wings, resembling those of Fennel Giant (whereof some have taken it to be, a kind, but unproperly) of a bright green colour, somewhat hairy: among which riseth up a stalk of the height of two cubits, and of the bigness of a man's finger; hollow, and full of a spongy pith; whereupon are set at certain joints, leaves like those next the ground, but smaller. The flowers are yellow, standing at the top of the stalks in spoky roundels, like those of Dill: after which cometh the seed, flat and broad like those of the Parsnip, but much greater and broader. The root is thick garnished at the top with certain capillaments or hairy threads, black without, white within, full of milky juice, of a most bitter, sharp, and loathsome taste and smell, insomuch that if a man do stand where the wind doth blow from the plant, the air doth exulcerate and blister the face, and every other bare or naked place that may be subject to his venomous blast, and poisonous quality.

2. This small kind of Stinking or Deadly Carrot is like to the last described in each respect, saving that the leaves are thinner and more finely minced or jagged, wherein consists the difference.
3. The common Deadly Carrot is like unto the precedent, saving that he doth more nearly resemble the stalks and leaves of the Garden Carrot, and is not garnished with the like bush of hair about the top of the stalks: otherwise in seed, root, and evil smell, taste and quality like.

The Place.

These pernicious plants delight in stony hills and mountains: they are strangers in England.

The Time.

They flower in August, or somewhat after.

The Names.

The French physicians have accepted the root of *Thapsia* for a kind of Turpeth, calling it *Turpetum cineritium*; notwithstanding upon better consideration they have left the use thereof, especially in purging, for it mightily hurteth the principal parts, and doth often cause cruel gripings in the guts and belly, with convulsions and cramps; nevertheless the venomous quality may be taken away with those correctives which are used in mitigating the extreme heat and virulent quality of *Sarcocolla, Hammoniacum*, and *Turpetum*: but where there be so many wholesome simples, and likewise compounds, they are not to be used.

Of some it is called *Turpetum griseum*: it is called *Thapsis*, as some think, of the island Thapsus, where it was first found; or as we deem, of the likeness it hath with Carrots.

Of the people of Sicilia and Apulia it is called *Ferulacoli*, where it doth grow in great abundance.
The Temperature and Faculties.

The temperature and faculties in working have been touched in the description, and likewise in the names.
CHAP. 411. Of Fennel.

1. The first kind of Fennel, called in Latin *Fœniculum* is so well known amongst us, that it were but lost labour to describe the same.

2. The second kind of Fennel is likewise well known by the name of Sweet Fennel, so called because the seeds thereof are in taste sweet like unto Anise seeds, resembling the common Fennel, saving that the leaves are larger and fatter, or more oleous: the seed greater and whiter, and the whole plant in each respect greater.

The Place.

These herbs are set and sown in gardens, but the second doth not prosper well in this country: for being sown of good and perfect seed, yet in the second year after his sowing, it will degenerate from the right kind, and become common Fennel.

The Time.

They flower in June and July, and the seed is ripe in the end of August.

The Names.


The Nature.

The seed of Fennel is hot and dry in the third degree.
The Virtues.

A. The powder of the seed of Fennel drunk for certain days together fasting preserveth the eyesight: whereof was written this Distichon following:

\[ F\text{aniculus, Rosa, Verbena, Chelidonia, Ruta,} \]
\[ Ex his \text{ fit aqua que lumina redit acuta.} \]

Of Fennel, Rose, Vervain, Rue, and Celandine,
Is made a water good to clear the sight of eyen.

B. The green leaves of Fennel eaten, or the seed drunken made into a tisane, do fill women's breasts with milk.

C. The decoction of Fennel drunk easeth the pains of the kidneys, causeth one to avoid the stone, and provoketh urine.

D. The roots are as effectual, and not only good for the intents aforesaid, but against the dropsy also, being boiled in wine and drunken.

E. Fennel seed drunk assuageth the pain of the stomach, and wambling of the same, or desire to vomit, and breaketh wind.

F. The herb, seed, and root of Fennel are very good for the lungs, the liver, and the kidneys, for it openeth the obstructions or stoppings of the same, and comforteth the inward parts.

G. The seed and herb of sweet Fennel is equal in virtues with Anise seed.
CHAP. 412. Of Dill.

Dill hath a little stalk of a cubit high, round and jointed; whereupon do grow leaves very finely cut, like to those of Fennel, but much smaller: the flowers be little and yellow, standing in a spoky tuft or roundel: the seed is round, flat and thin: the whole plant is of a strong smell: the root is thready.

The Place.

It is sown in gardens, and is also sometimes found wild.

The Time.

It bringeth forth flowers and seed in August.

The Names.


The Temperature.

Dill, as Galen saith, is hot in the end of the second degree, and dry in the beginning of the same, or in the end of the first degree.

The Virtues.

A. The decoction of the tops of dried Dill, and likewise of the seed, being drunk, engendereth milk in the breasts of nurses, allayeth gripings and windiness,
provoketh urine, increaseth seed, stayeth the yex, hicket, or hicquet, as Dioscorides teacheth.

B. The seed likewise if it be smelled unto stayeth the hicket, especially if it be boiled in wine, but chiefly if it be boiled in wormwood wine, or wine and a few branches of wormwood, and rose leaves, and the stomach bathed therewith.

C. Galen saith, that being burnt and laid upon moist ulcers, it cureth them, especially those in the secret parts, and likewise those sub preputio,[under the foreskin] though they be old and of long continance.

D. Common oil, in which Dill is boiled or sunned, as we do oil of Roses, doth digest, mitigate pain, procureth sleep, bringeth raw and unconcocted humours to perfect digestion, and provoketh bodily lust.

E. Dill is of great force or efficacy against the suffocation or strangling of the mother, if the woman do receive the fume thereof being boiled in wine, and put under a close stool or hollow seat fit for the purpose.
CHAP. 413. Of Caraway.

The Description.

Caraways have an hollow stalk four-square of two cubits high, full of knots or joints; from which proceed sundry other small branches, set full of leaves very finely cut or jagged, like unto those of Carrots or Dill: at the top of the stalks grow spoky white tufts like those of Dill: after which cometh the seed, sharp in eating, yet of a pleasant taste: the root is like that of Parsley, often white, seldom yellow, and in taste like unto the Carrot.

The Place.

It groweth almost everywhere in Germany and in Bohemia, in fat and fruitful fields, and in meadows that are now and then overrun with water: it groweth also in Caria, as Dioscorides showeth, from whence it took his name.

The Time.

It flowereth and seedeth from May to the end of August.

The Names.

Gerard's Herbal

The Temperature.

The seed of Caraways, as Galen saith, is hot and dry in the third degree, and hath a moderate biting quality.

The Virtues.

A. It consumeth wind, it is delightful to the stomach and taste, it helpeth concoction, provoketh urine, and is mixed with counterpoisons: the root may be sodden, and eaten as the Parsnip or Carrot is.

B. The seeds confected, or made with sugar into comfits, are very good for the stomach, they help digestion, provoke urine, assuage and dissolve all windiness: to conclude in a word, they are answerable to Anise seed in operation and virtues.
CHAP. 414. Of Anise.

The Description.

1. The stalk of Anise is round and hollow, divided into divers small branches, set with leaves next the ground somewhat broad and round: those that grow higher are more jagged, like those of young Parsley, but whiter: on the top of the stalks do stand spoky roundels or tufts of white flowers, and afterward seed, which hath a pleasant taste as every one doth know.

2. This other Anise (whose umbels Clusius had out of England from Master Morgan the Queen's apothecary, and James Garret; and which were brought from the Philippines by Mr. Thomas Cavendish in his voyage when he encompassed the world) is thus described by Clusius: The umbels were large, no less than those of the Archangelica, made of divers thick stiff footstalks, each whereof carried not double seed as the common Anise, but more, in a round head some inch over, made of cods set star-fashion, six, 8, or more, of a dusky colour, wrinkled, divided into two equal parts, and open above: most of these husks were empty, yet some of them contained one smooth shining ash-coloured seed, of the bigness of that of Orobus; the taste and smell was the same with our common Anise seed, wherefore they which sent it to Clusius called it Anise: yet in the place where it grew it was called Damor; for Mr. Cavendish had the name so written in the China characters, after their manner of writing.
The Place.

It groweth plentifully in Candy, Syria, Egypt, and other countries of the East. I have often sown it in my garden, where it hath brought forth his ripe seed when the year hath fallen out to be temperate.

The Time.

It is to be sown in these cold regions in the month of May: the seed is ripe in August.

The Names.


The Temperature.

Galen writeth, That the seed of Anise is hot and dry in the third degree: after others, it is hot in the second degree, and much less than dry in the second degree; for it engendereth milk, which it could not do if it were very dry, as Galen in his chapter of Fennel doth whether he will or no declare and testify; in that it doth engender milk, his opinion is that it is not hot above the first degree: which thing also may be in Anise seed, both by this reason, and also because it is sweet. Therefore to conclude, Anise seed is dry in the first degree, and hot in the second.

The Virtues.

A. The seed wasteth and consumeth wind, and is good against belchings and upbraidings of the stomach, allayeth gripings of the belly, provoketh urine gently, maketh abundance of milk, and stirreth up bodily lust: it stayeth the lask, and also the white flux in women.

B. Being chewed it makes the breath sweet, and is good for them that are short winded, and quencheth thirst, and therefore it is fit for such as have the dropsy: it helpeth the yexing or hicket, both when it is drunken or eaten dry: the smell thereof doth also prevail very much.

C. The same being dried by the fire and taken with honey cleanseth the breast very much from phlegmatic superfluities; and if it be eaten with bitter almonds it doth help the old cough.

D. It is to be given to young children and infants to eat which are like to have the falling sickness, or to such as have it by patrimony or succession.

E. It taketh away the Squinancy or Quinsy (that is, a swelling in the throat) being gargled with honey, vinegar, and a little Hyssop gently boiled together.
CHAP. 415. Of Bishop's Weed, Herb-William, or Ameos.

1. The common Ameos, especially with us here in England, hath round green stalks, with divers boughs and branches, and large long leaves, divided into divers other narrow, long and small leaves, dented or snipped about the edges, having at the top of the stalk white flowers in great spoky tufts, which bring forth a little sharp and bitter seed: the root thereof is white and thready.

2. This excellent and aromatical Ameos of Candy hath tufts and leaves like *Daucus creticus*, and a root like unto the garden Carrot, of a yellow colour, and hot seed like *Origanum*, of an excellent spicy savour or smell, growing in spoky tufts or roundels like *Carum*: it hath been brought from Candy and Syria into Venice, and from Venice into France, Flanders, and England, where we have often sown it; but without doubt we have been beguiled therein by the deceitful drugmasters, who have first boiled it, or used some other false and deceitful device, to bring greater admiration unto the Venice treacle, for the confection whereof this seed is a chief and most principal ingredient.
3. There is another kind of Ameos, which is an herb very small and tender, having stalks a foot and a half high, very small and tender, beset with leaves like unto Dill, finely jagged, and somewhat slender; and at the top of the stalks grow little tufts or spoky white roundels, which afterwards do turn into small grey seed, hot and sharp in taste. The root is small and slender.

**The Place.**

These plants do all grow in my garden, except *Ammi creticum*, whereof hath been sufficiently spoken in the description.

**The Time.**

They flower in June and July, and yield their seed in the end of August.

**The Names.**


**The Temperature.**

The seed of Ameos is hot and dry in the later end of the third degree.

**The Virtues.**

A. It availeth against gripings of the belly, in making of urine, against the bitings of serpents taken in wine, and also it bringeth down the flowers: being applied with honey it taketh away black and blue spots which come of stripes: the seed of
Sison doth also the like, for it is hot and dry, and that in the third degree; likewise of thin parts, provoking urine, and bringing down the desired sickness.

B. The seed of Ameos is good to be drunken in wine against the biting of all manner of beasts, and hath power against all manner of poison & pestilent fevers, or the plague, and is used in the correcting of Cantharides, whereby those flies are made medicinable to be applied to the body without danger.

C. Ameos brayed and mingled with honey scattereth congealed blood, and putteth away black and blue marks which come by stripes or falls, if it be applied thereto in manner of a plaster.
CHAP. 416. Of Chervil.

The Description.

1. The leaves of Chervil are slender, and diversely cut, something hairy, of a whitish green; the stalks be short, slender, round, and hollow within, which at the first together with the leaves are of a whitish green, but tending to a red when the seeds are ripe: the flowers be white, and grow upon scattered tufts. The seed is long, narrow, slender, sharp pointed: the root is full of strings.

2. There is found in June and July, almost in every hedge, a certain plant which Tabernamontanus and Bauhin fitly call Charophyllum, or Cerefolium sylvestre: It hath a whitish woody root, from which arise round red and hairy stalks some two cubits high, sometimes more, and oft times somewhat big and swollen about the joints, and they are not hollow but full of pith: toward the top it is divided into sundry branches, which on their tops carry umbels of small pure white little flowers, which are succeeded by longish seeds. The leaves are usually parted into three chief parts, and these again subdivided into five, and they are snipped about the edges, soft and hairy, of a dark green or else reddish colour. It flowereth in June and July, and then ripens the seed.
3. Great Chervil hath large leaves deeply cut or jagged, in show very like unto Hemlocks; of a very good and pleasant smell and taste like unto Chervil, and something hairy, which hath caused us to call it Sweet Chervil. Among these leaves riseth up a stalk somewhat crested or furrowed, of the height of two cubits, at the top whereof grow spoky tufts or roundels with white flowers, which do turn into long brown crested and shining seed, one seed being as big as four Fennel seeds, which being green do taste like Anise seed. The root is great, thick, and long, as big as *Enula campana*, exceeding sweet in smell, and tasting like unto Anise seeds.

4. There is found in some parts of the Alps, as about Geneva and in other places, another *Myrrhis*, which in the leaves and umbels is like that of the last described, but the whole plant is less; the seed is long, small, smooth, and shaped like an Oat, and in taste somewhat like that of the *Daucus creticus*. Lobel hath this by the same name as we here give it you.

5. About mud walls, highways, and such places, here about London, and in divers other places, is found growing a small plant, which in all things but the smell and height agrees with that referred to this kind by Fabius Columna, and called *Myrrha æquicolorum nova*. The root hereof is small and white, perishing every year when it hath perfected his seed: the stalks are slender, hollow, smooth, and not hairy, seldom exceeding the height of a cubit, or cubit and half; it is divided into sundry branches, upon the sides whereof against the setting on of the leaves, or out of their bosoms, grow forth the stalks, which carry umbels of small white flowers: after which follow the seeds, growing two together, and these longish, rough, round, and hairy, about the bigness of Anise seeds. The leaves are small, and finely cut or divided like those of Hemlock, but of a whitish colour, and hairy: it comes up in March, flowers in May, and ripens his seed in June. In Italy they eat the young leaves in salads, and call
it wild Chervil: we may in English for distinction's sake call it Small Hemlock Chervil.

6. To these we may fitly add that plant which in the Hist. Lugd. is called Cicutaria alba, and by Camerarius, Cicutaria palustris; for it flowers at the same time with the last mentioned, and is found in flower and seed in May and June very frequently almost in all places; but afterwards his stalks die down, yet his roots live, and the leaves are green all the year. The root of this is very large, and divided into sundry parts, white also and spongy, of a pleasing strong smell, with a hot and biting taste: the stalks grow up in good ground to be some three cubits high, and they are hollow, jointed, pretty thick; green, and much crested, sending forth of the bosoms of the leaves many branches, which upon their tops carry umbels composed of many white flowers, each flower consisting of five little leaves, whereof the lowest is twice as big as the rest, the two side ones less, and the uppermost the least of all. The leaves are large like those of Myrrhis, but of a dark green colour, and. and those that grow about the tops of the stalks are commonly divided into into three parts; and these subdivided into sundry long sharp pointed and snipped leaves like as in Myrrhis. The seeds grow two together, being longish, round, sharp pointed, black, and shining. We may fitly term this plant, wild Cicely, for that it so much resembles the Myrrhis or garden Cicely, not only in shape, but (if I be not deceived) in virtues also.

The Place.

The common Chervil groweth in gardens with other pot-herbs: it prospers in a ground that is dunged and somewhat moist. The great sweet Chervil groweth in my garden, and in the gardens of other men who have been diligent in these matters.

The Time.

Thest herbs do flower in May, and their seed is ripe in July.

The Names.

Chervil is commonly called in Latin, Cerefolium, and as divers affirm, Chaerofolium, with o in the second syllable. Columna nameth it Chaerophyllum, and it is thought to be so called because it delighteth to grow with many leaves, or rather in that it causeth joy and gladness: in High Dutch, Korffelkraut: in Low Dutch, Kervell: in Italian, Cerefoglio: in French, Du Cerfueil: in English, Chervell, and Chervil.

Myrrhis is also called Myrrha, taken from his pleasant savour of Myrrh: of some, Conila, as it is found noted among the bastard names. It is also by reason of the similitude it hath with Hemlock, called by most late writers, Cicutaria. Of this, Pliny maketh mention lib. 14. cap. 16, where he reporteth that it is called Smyrrhiza: in English it is called Chervil, Sweet Chervil, or Sweet Cicely.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Chervil is held to be one of the pot-herbs, it is pleasant to the stomach and taste: it is of a temperate heat and moderate dryness, but nothing so much as the Parsleys.

B. It provoketh urine, especially being boiled in wine, and applied hot to the share or nethermost part of the belly, and the wine drunk in which it was boiled.

C. It hath in it a certain windiness, by means whereof it procureth lust.
D. It is used very much among the Dutch people in a kind of loblolly or hot-pot which they do eat, called Warmus.

E. The leaves of sweet Chervil are exceeding good, wholesome, and pleasant, among other salad herbs, giving the taste of Anise seed unto the rest.

F. The root, saith Galen, is hot in the second degree, having a thinness of substance joined with it.

G. Dioscorides teacheth, that the root drunk in wine is a remedy against the bitings of the venomous spiders called in Latin Phalangia; and that it bringeth down the menses and secondines, and being boiled and drunk it is good for such as have the phthisic or consumption of the lungs.

H. The seeds eaten as a salad while they are yet green, with oil, vinegar, and pepper, exceed all other salads by many degrees, both in pleasantness of taste, sweetness of smell, and wholesomeness for the cold and feeble stomach.

I. The roots are likewise most excellent in a salad, if they be boiled and after served as the cunning cook knoweth how better than myself: notwithstanding I do use to eat them with oil and vinegar, being first boiled; which is very good for old people that are dull and without courage; it rejoiceth and comforteth the heart, and increaseth their lust and strength.
CHAP. 417. Of Shepherd's Needle or Wild Chervil.

The Description.

1. *Scandix*, or *Pecten veneris*, doth not much differ in the quantity of the stalks, leaves, and flowers, from Chervil; but *Scandix* hath no such pleasant smell as Chervil hath: the leaves be lesser, more finely cut, and of a brown green colour: the flowers grow at the top of the stalks in small white tufts; after which come up long seeds very like unto pack-needles, orderly set one by another like the great teeth of a comb, whereof it took the name *Pecten veneris*, or Venus' comb, or Venus' needle: the root is white, a finger long.

2. This from a slender long and whitish root sends up many small leaves like those of the last described, but of a pleasing smell and taste something like that of the common Chervil; amongst these leaves grow up slender stalks a little hairy, divided into short green and slender branches carrying little umbels, consisting of five, six, seven, or eight small white flowers, composed of five leaves apiece, with a dark purplish chive in the middle: the flowers are succeeded by, or rather grow upon long slender cods, which become some inch long, and resemble those of the last described. It flowers in June, as Clusius affirmeth, who gives us the history of it; and he received it from Honorius Bellus out of Candy; who writes, that in the springtime it is much used in salads, and desired, for that it much excites to venery. He also thinks this plant to be the *Anthriscus* of Pliny, and by the same name Clusius sets it forth, Columna hath called it *Aniso-marathrum*, because the smell and taste is between that of Anise and Fennel.
The Place.

It groweth in most corn fields in England, especially among wheat and barley.

The Time.

It flowereth in May: the seed is ripe in August with corn.

The Names.

The Latins call it Scandix, having borrowed that name of the Grecians: we find among the bastard words, that the Romans did call it Scanaria, and Acula, of the seed that is like unto a needle. Ruellius describeth it under the name Pecten veneris: of others, Acus veneris, and Acus pastoris, or Shepherd's Needle, Wild Chervil, and Lady's Comb: in High Dutch, Naeltbe Karnel. This is that he (saith Pliny, lib. 22. cap. 22) which Aristophanes objected in sport to the poet Euripides, that his mother was wont to sell no right pot-herb but Scandix, or Shepherd's Needle, meaning, as I take it, Visnaga; wherewith the Spaniards do pick their teeth when they have eaten no meat at all except a few oranges or such a like trifle, called also Scandix.

The Temperature.

Shepherd's Needle, saith Galen, is an herb somewhat binding, and bitter in taste, insomuch that it is hot and dry either in the later end of the second degree, or in the beginning of the third.

The Virtues.

A. Dioscorides saith it is eaten both raw and boiled, and that it is an wholesome pot-herb among the Greeks; but in these days it is of small estimation or value, and taken but for a wild wort, as appeareth by Aristophanes taunting of Euripides, as aforesaid.

B. The decoction thereof is good for the bladder, kidneys, and liver; but as I deem he meant Chervil, when he set the same down to be used in physic.
CHAP. 418. Of Toothpick Chervil.

The Description.

1. The first of these Toothpick Chervils beareth leaves like wild Turnips, a round stalk furrowed, jointed, blackish, and hairy, divided into many branches, on the tops whereof grow spoky tufts, beset round about with many small leaves. The flowers thereof are whitish: after cometh the the seed, which being once ripe do cluster and are drawn together, in a round thick tuft like a small bird's nest, as be those of the wild Carrot; whose seeds whoso toucheth, they will cleave and stick to his fingers, by reason of the glutinous or slimy matter they are possessed with. The root is small and whitish, bitter in taste, as is all the rest of the plant.

2. The Spanish Toothpick hath leaves, flowers, and knobby stalks like unto wild carrots, saving that the leaves are somewhat finer, cut or jagged thicker, and tenderer, but not rough or hairy at all as is the former, of a bitter taste, and a reasonable good smell: among which rise up bushy roundels or spoky tufts like those of the wild Carrot or Bird's Nest, closely drawn together when the seed is ripe; at what time also the sharp needles are hardened, fit to make toothpicks and suchlike, for which purpose they do very fitly serve.
The Place.
Both of them grow in Syria, and most commonly in Cilicia: the later is to be found likewise in Spain almost everywhere; and I have it likewise in my garden in great plenty.

The Time.
They flower in my garden about August, and deliver their seed in October.

The Names.
The Latins do name it *Gingidium*: and it is called in Syria *Lepidium*: yet is there another *Lepidium*. It is reported among the bastard names to be called by the Romans, *Bisacutum*, of which name some show remains among the Syrians, who commonly call the later, *Gingidium, Visnaga*; this is named in English, Toothpick Chervil.

The Temperature and Virtues.
A. There is, saith Galen, great increase of *Gingidium* in Syria, and it is eaten no otherwise than Scandex is with us at Pergamum: it is, saith he, very wholesome for the stomach, whether it be eaten raw or boiled; notwithstanding it is evident that it is a medicine rather than a nourishment. As it is bitter and binding, so is it likewise of a temperate heat and dryness. The heat is not very apparent, but it is found to be dry in the later end of the second degree, as also the said author allegeth in his discourse *Of the Faculties of Simple Medicines*.

B. Dioscorides doth also write the same: This pot-herb (saith he) is eaten raw, sodden, and preserved, with great good to the stomach: it provoketh urine, and the decoction thereof made with wine and drunk, is profitable to scour the bladder, provoketh urine, and is good against the gravel and stone.

C. The hard quills whereon the seeds do grow are good to cleanse the teeth and gums, and do easily take away all filth and baggage sticking in them, without any hurt unto the gums, as followeth after many other toothpicks, and they leave a good scent or savour in the mouth.
CHAP. 419. Of Meadow-Sweet, or Queen of the Meadows.

1. This herb hath leaves like those of Agrimony, consisting of divers leaves set upon a middle rib like those of the Ash tree, every small leaf slightly snipped about the edges, white on the inner side, and on the upper side crumpled or wrinkled like unto those of the Elm Tree; whereof it took the name Ulmaria, of the similitude or likeness that the leaves have with the Elm leaves. The stalk is three or four foot high, rough, and very fragile or easy to be broken, of a reddish purple colour: on the top whereof are very many little flowers clustering and growing together; of a white colour tending to yellowness, and of a pleasant sweet smell, as are the leaves likewise: after which come the seeds, small, crookedly turning or winding one with another, made into a fine little head. The root hath a sweet smell, spreading far abroad, black without, and of a darkish red colour within.

2. There is also another which by Fuchsius, Tragus, Lonicerus, Gesner, and others, is called Barba capri: it hath large woody roots, leaves of the bigness, and growing somewhat after the manner of the wild Angelica: the stalks are crested, and divided into sundry branches, which carry long bending spikes or ears of white flowers & seeds somewhat like those of the common kind. This flowers at the same time as the former, and I have not yet heard of it wild with us, but only seen it growing with M. Tradescant.

The Place.

It groweth in the brinks of watery ditches and river's sides, and also in meadows: it liketh watery and moist places, and groweth almost everywhere.
The Time.

It flowereth and flourisheth in June, July, and August.

The Names.

It is called of the later age Regina prati, & Barba capri: of some, Ualaria, a foliorum ulmi smilitudine, from the likeness it hath with the Elm tree leaf: in High Dutch, Štisburt. It is called Barba hirci, which name belongeth to the plant which the Grecians do call Tragopogon: of Anguillara, Potentilla maior. It hath some likeness with Rhodora plinii, but yet we cannot affirm it to be the same. It is called in low Dutch Reijnette: in French, Barbe de Chevre, Reine des Praiz: in English, Meads-Sweet, Meadow-sweet, and Queen of the Meadows. Camerarius of Nuremberg saith it is called of the Germans his countrymen, Wurme kraut: because the roots, saith he, seem to be eaten with worms. I rather suppose they call it so, because the ancient hackney men and horse-leeches do give the decoction thereof to their horses and asses, against the bots and worms, for the which it is greatly commended.

The Temperature.

Meadow-Sweet is cold and dry, with an evident binding quality adjoined.

The Virtues.

A. The root boiled, or made into powder and drunk, helpeth the bloody flux, stayeth the lask, and all other fluxes of blood in man or woman.

B. It is reported, that the flowers boiled in wine and drunk, do take away the fits of a quartan ague, and make the heart merry.

C. The leaves and flowers far excel all other strewing herbs, for to deck up houses, to strew in chambers, halls, and banqueting houses in the summertime; for the smell thereof makes the heart merry, delighteth the senses: neither doth it cause headache, or loathsomeness to meat, as some other sweet smelling herbs do.

D. The distilled water of the flowers dropped into the eyes, taketh away the burning and itching thereof and cleareth the sight.
CHAP. 420. Of Burnet Saxifrage.

The Description.

1. This great kind of Pimpernel, or rather Saxifrage, hath great and long roots, fashioned like a Parsnip, of an hot and biting taste like Ginger: from which riseth up an hollow stalk with joints and knees two cubits high, beset with large leaves, which do more nearly represent Smallage than Pimpernel, or rather the garden Parsnip. This plant consisteth of many small leaves growing upon one stem, snipped or dented about the edges like a saw: the flowers do grow at the top of the stalks in white round tufts: the seed is like the common Parsley, saving that it is hotter and biting upon the tongue.

There is a bigger and lesser of this kind, which differ little, but that the stalks and veins of the leaves of the lesser are of a purplish colour, and the root is hotter.

2. Bipinella is likewise a kind of Burnet or Pimpernel, upon which Pena hath bestowed this addition Saxifraga minor: under which name Saxifraga are comprehended divers herbs of divers kinds, and the one very unlike to the other: but that kind of Saxifrage which is called Hircina, which is rough or hairy Saxifrage, of others Bipinella, is best known. and the best of all the rest, like unto the small Burnet, or common Parsley, saving that it is void of hairs, as may appear by the old Latin verse,

Pimpinella habet pilos, Saxifraga non habet ullos.
Pimpernel hath hairs some, but Saxifrage hath none.
Notwithstanding, I have found a kind hereof growing in our pastures adjoining to London, the leaves whereof if you take and tenderly break with your hands, you may draw forth small threads, like the web of a spider, such as you may draw from the leaves of Scabious. The stalk is hollow, dividing itself from the joints or knees, into sundry other small branches; at the top whereof do grow small tufts or spoky roundels, of a white colour: after which cometh the seed like to Caruia, or Caraways, of a sharp taste: the root is also sharp and hot in taste.

The Place.

These plants do grow in dry pastures and meadows in this country very plentifully.

The Time.

They flower from June to the end of August.

The Names

That which Fuchsius calleth Pimpinella maior, Dodonaus termeth Saxifraga maior, which kind of Saxifrage doth more absolutely answer the true Phellandrium of Pliny, than any other plant whatsoever: wherein the physicians of Paris have been deceived, calling or supposing the Meadow Rue to be the right Phellandrium, whereunto it is not like either in shape or faculty; for it is nothing so effectual in breaking the stone, or provoking of urine, as either of there plants, especially Pimpinella hircina, which is not so called, because it hath any rammish small of a goat, but because practitioners have used to feed goats with, whose flesh and blood is singular good against the stone, but we rather take it to be named Hircina, of Hircinia sylva[A forest, now mostly felled, which extended eastwards from the Rhine across southern Germany], where it doth grow in great abundance, the savour of the herb not being unpleasant, somewhat resembling the smell and taste of Daucus, Ligustrum and Pastinaca: so to conclude, both these are called Saxifragia: the smaller is called of some Petraefindula, Bipinella, and Bipenula: of Baptista Sardus, and also of Leonardus Fuchsius, Pimpinella maior: wherefore divers call it Pimpinella saxifraga: for there is also another Pimpinella called Pimpinella sanguisorba: notwithstanding the verse before rehearsed showeth a difference between Pimpinella and Saxifraga: in High Dutch, it is called Bibernel: in Low Dutch, Bauernaert: in English the greater may be called Great Saxifrage, and the other Small Saxifrage.

Bipinella is called Saxifragia minor: in English, Small Saxifrage, as Pimpinella is called Great Saxifrage. Columna judges it to be the Tragium of Dioscorides.

The Nature.

Saxifrage of both kinds, with their seed, leaves, and roots, are hot and dry in the third degree, and of thin and subtle parts.

The Virtues.

A. The seed and root of Saxifrage drunken with wine, or the decoction thereof made with wine, causeth to piss well, breaketh the stone in the kidneys and bladder, and is singular against the strangury, and the stoppings of the kidneys and bladder: whereof it took the name Saxifragia, or break stone.

B. The juice of the leaves of Saxifrage doth cleanse and take away all spots and freckles of the face, and leaveth a good colour.
Gerard's Herbal

C. The distilled water thereof mingled with some vinegar in the distillation, cleareth the sight, and taketh away all obscurity and darkness of the same.
CHAP. 421. Of Burnet.

The Kinds.

Burnet of which we will treat, doth differ from *Pimpinella*, which is also called *Saxifraga*. One of the Burnets is lesser, for the most part growing in gardens, notwithstanding it groweth in barren fields, where it is much smaller; the other greater, is altogether wild.

The Description.

1. Garden Burnet hath long leaves made up together of a great many upon one stem, every one whereof is something round, nicked on the edges, somewhat hairy: among these riseth a stalk that is not altogether without leaves, something chamfered: upon the tops whereof grow little round heads or knops, which bring forth small flowers of a brown purple colour, and after them cornered seeds, which are thrust up together. The root is long: the whole plant doth smell something like a Melon, or Cucumber.

2. Wild Burnet is greater in all parts, it hath wider and bigger leaves than those of the former: the stalk is longer, sometimes two cubits high: the knops are greater, of a dark purple colour, and the seed is likewise cornered and greater: the root longer, but this Burnet hath no pleasant smell at all.

3. There is kept in some gardens another of this kind, with very large leaves, stalks, and heads, for the heads are some inch and half long, yet but slender considering the length, and the flowers (as I remember) are of a whitish colour: in
other respects it differs not from the precedent: it may fitly be called *Pimpinella sanguisorba hortensis maxima*, Great Garden Burnet.

**The Place.**

The small Pimpernel is commonly planted in gardens, notwithstanding it doth grow wild upon many barren heaths and pastures.

The great wild Burnet growth (as Mr. Lyte saith) in dry meadows about Vilvoorde, and myself have found it growing upon the side of a causeway which crosseth the one half of a field, where of the one part is arable ground, and the other part meadow, lying between Paddington and Lisson Green near unto London, upon the highway.

**The Time**

They flower from June, unto the end of August.

**The Names.**

The later herbarists do call Burnet *Pimpinella sanguisorba*, that it may differ from the other, and yet it is called by several names, *Sanguisorba*, and *Sanguinaria*: Gesner had rather it should be called *Peponella* of the smell of Melons or Pumpkins, to which it is like, as we have said: of others it is named *Pimpinella*, or *Bipennula*: of most men, *Solbastrella*: in High Dutch *Kobleskraut*, her *Gots Bartlin*, *Blutkraut*, *Megelkraut*: in French, *Pimpennelle*, *Sanguisorbe*: in English, Burnet. It agreeeth *cum altera Dioscoridis Sideritide*, that is to say, with Dioscorides his second Ironwort: the leaf (and especially that of the lesser sort) which we have written to consist of many nicks in the edges of the leaves; and this may be the very same which Pliny in his 24th book, chapter 17, reporteth to be named in Persia, *Sissitiepteris*, because it made them merry; he also calleth the same *Protomedia*, and *Casigneta*, and likewise *Dionysionymphas* for that it doth marvellously agree with wine; to which also this Pimpinella (as we have said) doth give a pleasant scent: neither is that repugnant, that Pliny in another place hath written, *De Sideritibus*, of the Ironworts; for it often falleth out that he treateth of one and the selfsame plant in divers places, under divers names: which thing then happeneth sooner when the writers themselves do not well know the plant, as that Pliny did not well know *Sideritis* or Ironwort, it is even thereby manifest, because he setteeth not down his own opinion hereof, but other men's.

**The Temperature.**

Burnet, besides the drying and binding faculty that it hath, doth likewise meanly cool: and the lesser Burnet hath likewise withal a certain superficial, slight, and temperate scent, which when it is put into the wine it doth leave behind it: this is not in the dry herb, in the juice, nor in the decoction.

**The Virtues.**

A. Burnet is a singular good herb for wounds (which thing Dioscorides doth attribute to his second Ironwort) and commended of a number: it stancheth bleeding, and therefore it was named *Sanguisorba*, as well inwardly taken, as outwardly applied.

B. Either the juice is given, or the decoction of the powder of the dry leaves of the herb, being bruised, it is outwardly applied, or else put among other external medicines.
C. It stayeth the lask and bloody flux: it is also most effectual to stop the monthly course.

D. The Lesser Burnet is pleasant to be eaten in salads, in which it is thought to make the heart merry and glad; also being put into wine, to which it yieldeth a certain grace in the drinking.

E. The decoction of Pimpernel drunken, cureth the bloody flux, the spitting of blood, and all other fluxes of blood in man or woman.

F. The herb and seed made into powder, and drunk with wine, or water wherein iron hath been quenched doth the like.

G. The leaves of Pimpernel are very good to heal wounds, and are received in drinks that are made for inward wounds.

H. The leaves of Burnet steeped in wine and drunken, comfort the heart, and make it merry, and are good against the trembling and shaking thereof.
CHAP. 422. Of English Saxifrage.

The Description.

1. This kind of Saxifrage our English women physicians have in great use; and is familiarly known unto them, vouchsafing that name unto it of his virtues against the stone: it hath the leaves of Fennel, but thicker and broader, very like unto Seseli pratense monspeliensium (which addition Pena hath bestowed upon this our English Saxifrage) among which riseth up a stalk, of a cubit high or more, bearing at the top spoky roundels beset with whitish yellow flowers; the root is thick, black without, and white within, and of a good savour.

2. Clusius hath set forth another plant not much different from this our common Saxifrage, and called it Saxifraga Pannoniae, which I have thought fit here to insert: the leaves, saith he, are much shorter than those of Hog's Fennel, and somewhat like those of Fumitory: the stalks are some foot high, slender, having some few small leaves, and at the top carrying an umbel of white flowers: the root is not much unlike that of Hog's Fennel, but shorter and more acrid; it is hairy at the top thereof, whence the stalks and leaves come forth: it grows upon some hills in Hungary and Austria, and flowers in July.

The Place.

Saxifrage groweth in most fields and meadows everywhere throughout this our kingdom of England.
The Time.

It flowereth from the beginning of May to the end of August.

The Names.

*Saxifraga anglicana* is called in our mother tongue Stonebreak or English Saxifrage: Pena and Lobel call it by this name *Saxifraga anglicana*: for that it groweth more plentifully in England than in any other country.

The Nature.

Stonebreak is hot and dry in the third degree.

The Virtues.

A. A decoction made with the seeds and roots of Saxifrage, breaketh the stone in the bladder and kidneys, helpeth the strangury, and causeth one to piss freely.

B. The root of Stonebreak boiled in wine, and the decoction drunken, bringeth down women's sickness, expelleth the secondine and dead child.

C. The root dried and made into powder, and taken with sugar, comforteth and warmeth the stomach, cureth the gnawings and griping pains of the belly.

D. It helpeth the colic, and driveth away ventosities or windiness.

E. Our English women use to put it in their running or rennet for cheese, especially in Cheshire (where I was born) where the best cheese of this land is made.
CHAP. 423. Of Siler Mountain or Bastard Lovage.

The Description.

1. The natural plants of Seseli, being now better known than in times past, especially among our apothecaries, is called by them Siler montanum, and Seseleos: this plant they have retained to very good purpose and confederation; but the error of the name hath caused divers of our late writers to err, and to suppose that Siler montanum, called in shops, Seseleos, was no other than Seseli massiliensium of Dioscorides. But this plant containeth in his substance much more acrimony, sharpness and efficacy in working, than any of the plants called Seselios. It hath stalks like Ferula, two cubits high. The root smelleth like Ligusticum: the leaves are very much cut or divided, like the leaves of Fennel or Seseli massiliense, and broader than the leaves of Peucedanum. At the top of the stalks grow spoky tufts like Angelica; which bring forth a long and leafy seed like Cumin, of a pale colour; in taste seeming as though it were condited with sugar, but withal somewhat sharp, and sharper than Seseli pratense.

2. There is a second kind of Siler which Pena and Lobel set forth under the title of Seseli pratense monspeliensium, which Dodonæus in his last edition calleth Siler pratense alterum, that is in show very like the former. The stalks thereof grow to the height of two cubits, but his leaves are somewhat broader and blacker: there are not so many leaves growing upon the stalk, and they are less divided than the former, and are of little savour. The seed is smaller than the former, and savouring very little
or nothing. The root is black without, and white within, dividing itself into sundry divisions.

**The Place.**

It groweth of itself in Liguria, not far from Genoa in the craggy mountains, and in the gardens of diligent herbarists.

**The Time.**

These plants do flower from June to the end of August.

**The Names.**

It is called commonly Siler Montanum; in French and Dutch by a corrupt name *Ser-Montain*; in divers shops, *Seseleos*, but untruly: for it is not *Sesili*, nor a kind thereof: in English, Siler mountain, after the Latin name, and Bastard Lovage. The first is thought to be the *Ligusticum* of the ancients, and it is so called by Matthiolus and others.

**The Nature.**

This plant with his seed is hot and dry in the third degree.

**The Virtues.**

A. The seeds of *Siler* drunk with Wormwood wine, or wine wherein Wormwood hath been sodden, moveth women's diseases in great abundance: cureth the suffocation and strangling of the matrix, and causeth it to return unto the natural place again.

B. The root stamped with honey, and applied or put into old sores, doth cure them and cover bare and naked bones with flesh.

C. Being drunk it provoketh urine, easeth the pains of the guts or entrails proceeding of crudity or rawness, it helpeth concoction, consumeth wind, and swelling of the stomach.

D. The root hath the same virtue or operation, but not so effectual, as not being so hot and dry.
CHAP. 424. Of Seselios, or Heartwort of Candy.

Fig. 1504. Small Candy Seselios (1)  Fig. 1505. Great Candy Seselios (2)

The Description.

1. This plant being the Seseli of Candy, and in times past not elsewhere found, took his surname of that place where it was first found, but nowadays it is to be seen in the corn fields about Narbonne in France, from whence I had seeds, which prosper well in my garden. This is but an annual plant, and increaseth from year to year by his own sowing. The leaves grow at the first even with the ground, somewhat hairy, of an overworn green colour, in shape much like unto Chervil, but thicker: among which riseth up an hairy rough stalk, of the height of a cubit, bearing at the top spoky tufts with white flowers: which being faded, there followeth round and flat seed, compassed and cunningly wreathed about the edges like a ring.

   The seed is flat like the other, joined two together in one, as you may see in the seed of Ferula or Angelica, in shape like a round target, in taste like Myrrhis. Matthioulos did greatly mistake this plant.

2. There is a kind of Seseli creticum, called also Tordylion: and is very like unto the former, saving that his leaves are more like unto common Parsnips than Chervil, and the whole plant is bigger than the former.
3. There is likewise a kind of Seseli that hath a root as big as a man's arm, especially if the plant be old, but the new and young plants bear roots an inch thick, with some knobs and tuberous sprouts, about the lower part; the root is thick, rough, and covered over with a thick bark, the substance whereof is first gummy, afterward sharp and as it were full of spittle; from the upper part of the root proceed many knobs or thick swelling roots, out of which there issueth great and large wings or branches of leaves, some whereof are notched and dented round about, growing onto one side or rib of the leaf, standing also one opposite unto another, of a dark and delayed green colour, and somewhat shining above, but underneath of a greyish or ash colour: from amongst these leaves there ariseth a streaked or guttered stalk, a cubit and a half high, sometimes an inch thick, having many joints or knees, and many branches growing about them, and upon each joint lesser branches of leaves. At the top of the stalks and upper ends of the branches grow little cups or umbels of white flowers; which being faded, there cometh in place a seed, which is very like *Siler montanum*. So saith our author: I take this here described by him to be the *Seseli montanum* 1 of Clusius, or *Ligusticum alterum belgarum* of Lobel: and therefore I have given you Clusius his figure in this place.

There is also a kind of *Siseli*, which Pena setteth forth for the first kind of *Daucus*, whereof I take it to be a kind, growing everywhere in the pastures about London, that hath large leaves, growing for a time even with the earth, and spread thereupon, and divided into many parts, in manner almost like to the former for the most part in all things, in the round spoky tufts or umbels, bearing stiff and fair white flowers in shape like them of Cinquefoil; in smell like *Sambucus* or Elder. When the flower is faded, there cometh in place a yellow guttered seed, of a spicy and very hot taste. The root is thick, and black without, which roteth and perisheth in the ground (as we may see in many gummy or ferulous plants) after it hath seeded, neither will it
Gerard's Herbal

flower here the second or third year after it is sown. Thus our author, but I am ignorant what he means by this description.

4. There is likewise a kind of Seseli called *Seseli massiliense*, which hath leaves very much cloven or cut, and finely jagged, very much like unto the leaves of sweet Fennel, greater and thicker than the common Fennel. The stalk groweth to the height of three cubits, having knotty joints, as it were knees; bearing at the top thereof tufts like unto Dill, and seed somewhat long and conered, of a sharp and biting taste. The root is long and thick like unto great Saxifrage, of a pleasant smell, and sharp in taste.

There is another *Seseli* of Massilia, which hath large and great leaves like unto *Ferula*, and not much unlike *Siler montanum*: among which rise up stalks four cubits high, bearing at the tops spoky tufts like unto the last before rehearsed, of a good savour. The root is like unto the former in shape, substance, and savour, but that it is greater.

**The Place.**

These plants are strangers in England, notwithstanding I have them in my garden.

**The Time.**

They flower and flourish in September.

**The Names.**

Their names have been touched in their several descriptions.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. It provoketh urine, and helpeth the strangury, bringeth down the sickness and dead birth: it helpeth the cough and shortness of breath, the suffocation of the mother, and helpeth the falling sickness.

B. The seed drunk with wine concoteth raw humours, taketh away the griping and torments of the belly, and helpeth the ague, as Dioscorides saith.

C. The juice of the leaves is given to goats and other cattle to drink, that they may the sooner be delivered of their young ones, as the same author reporteth.
CHAP. 425. Of Spignel, Spicknel, or Meu.

The Description.

1. Spignel hath stalks rising up to the height of a cubit and a half, beset with leaves resembling Fennel or Dill, but thicker, more bushy, and more finely jagged; and at the top of the stalks do grow spoky tufts like unto Dill. The roots are thick, and full of an oleous substance, smelling well, and chafing or heating the tongue, of a reasonable good savour.

2. There is a bastard kind of Spignel like unto the former, saving that the leaves are not so finely cut or jagged: the flowers are tufted more thicker than the former: the roots are many, thick, and full of sap.

The Place.

Meu, or Meon growth in Westmorland, at a place called Roundtwhat betwixt Appleby and Kendal, in the parish of Orton.

Bastard Meu, or Meum, growth in the waste mountains of Italy, and the Alps, and (as it hath been told me) upon Saint Vincent's rock by Bristol, where I spent two days to seek it, but it was not my hap to find it, therefore I make some doubt of the truth thereof.

The Time.

These herbs do flower in June and July, and yield their seed in August.
The Names.

It is called of the Grecians, *Meon*, likewise of the Latins *Meum*: of the Italians, *Meo*: in Apulia, as Matthiolus declareth, it is called *Imperatrix*: in divers places of Spain, *Sistra*: in others, *Pinello*: in High Dutch, *Beereuwrt*: in French, *Sistre*: Ruellius saith that it is named in France *Anethum tortuosum*, and *sylvestre*, or writhed Dill, and wild Dill: also it is called in English, Spignel, or Spicknell, of some Meu, and Bearwort.

The second may be called bastard Spignel.

The Temperature.

These herbs, especially the roots of right *Meon*, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second.

The Virtues.

A. The roots of *Meon*, boiled in water and drunk, mightily open the stoppings of the kidneys and bladder, provoke urine and bodily lust, ease and help the strangury, and consume all windiness and belchings of the stomach.

B. The same taken with honey doth appease the grief of the belly, and is exceeding good against all catarrhs, rheums, and aches of the joint, as also any phlegm which falls upon the lungs.

C. If the same be laid plasterwise upon the bellies of children, it maketh them to piss well.

D. They cleanse the entrails, and deliver them of obstructions or stoppings: they provoke urine, drive forth the stone, and bring down the flowers: but if they be taken more than is requisite, they cause the headache; for seeing they have in them more heat than dryness, they carry to the head raw moisture and windy heat, as Galen saith.
CHAP. 426. Of Harstrang or Sulphurwort.

The Description.

1. Sulphurwort or Hog's Fennel hath a stiff and hard stalk full of knees or knots, beset with leaves like unto Fennel, but greater, coming nearer unto Ferula, or rather like the leaves of wild Pine-tree, and at the top of the stalks round spoky tufts.
full of little yellow flowers, which do turn into broad brown seed. The root is thick
and long: I have digged up roots thereof as big as a man's thigh, black without, and
white within, of a strong and grievous smell, and full of yellow sap or liquor, which
quickly waxeth hard or dry, smelling not much unlike brimstone, called sulphur;
which hath induced some to call it Sulphurwort; having also at the top toward the
upper face of the earth, a certain bush of hair, of a brown colour, among which the
leaves and stalks do spring forth.

2. The second kind of *Peucedanum* or Hog's Fennel is very like unto the
former, saving that the leaves be like *Ferula*: the roots are nothing so great as the
former, but all the rest of the plant doth far exceed the other in greatness.

3. There is another kind of *Peucedanum* or Hog's Fennel, which Pena found
upon Saint Vincent's Rock by Bristol, whose picture he hath set forth in his
*Adversaria*, which that famous English physician of late memory, D. Turner found
there also, supposing it to be the right and true *Peucedanum*, whereof no doubt it is a
kind: it growth not above a foot high, and is in shape and leaves like the right
*Peucedanum*, but they be shorter and lesser, growing somewhat like the writhed
Fennel of Massilia, but the branches are more largely writhed, and the leaves are of
the colour of the branches, which are of a pale green colour. At the top of the branches
grow small white tufts, having seed like Dill, but shorter and slenderer, of a good
taste, somewhat sharp. The root is thicker than the smallness of the herb will well
bear. Among the people about Bristol, and the rock aforesaid, this hath been thought
good to eat.

This is the *Selinum montanum pumilum* of Clusius; and the *Peucedani facie
pucilla planta* of Pena and Lobel; wherefore Bauhin was mistaken in his
*Pinax*, whereas he refers that of Lobel to his third *Peucedanum*: the root of this is black
without, and white within, but short, yet at the top about the thickness of one's finger:
the leaves are small and green, commonly divided into five parts; and these again
subdivided by threes: the stalk is some six inches or half a foot high, divided into
sundry branches, crested, broad, and at the tops of the branches, even when they first
shoot up, appear little umbels of white flowers very small, and consisting of five
leaves apiece. The seed is black, shining and round, two being joined together, as in
most umbelliferous plants. It flowers in May, and ripens the seed in July: I received in
July 1632, same plants of this from Bristol, by the means of my oft mentioned friend
Master George Bowles, who gathered it upon Saint Vincent's Rock, whereas the
authors of the *Adversaria* report it to grow.

The Place.

The fisrt kind of *Peucedanum* or Hog's Fennel groweth very plentifully on the
South side of a wood belonging to Waltham, at the Nase in Essex by the highway
side; also at Whitstable in Kent, in a meadow near to the seaside, sometime belonging
to Sir Henry Crisp, and adjoining to his house there. It groweth also in great plenty at
Feversham in Kent, near unto the haven upon the banks thereof, and in the meadows
adjoining.

The second kind groweth upon the sea coasts of Montpellier in France, and in
the coasts of Italy.

The Time

These plants do flower in June, July, and August.
The Names.

The Grecians and Latins call it *Peucedanos*, or *Peucedanum*, and also *Pinastellum*: most of the shops, and likewise the common people name it *Fœniculum porcinum*: of divers, *Stataria*: of the prophets, *Agathos daimon*, that is to say, a good angel or ghost: in High Dutch, *Harstrang*, *Schweffel wurkel*, *Sewfenkel*: in Italian and French, *Peucedano*: in Spanish *Herbatum*: in English, Hore-strange, and Harstrang, Sow-Fennel, or Hog's Fennel, Sulphurwort, or Brimstone-wort. it is called *Peucedanum* and *Pinastellum*, of the Greek and Latin words *Peuke* and *Pinus*.

The Temperature.

These herbs, especially the yellow sap of the root, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the beginning of the third.

The Virtues.

A. The yellow sap of the root of Hog's Fennel, or as they call it in same places of England, Horestrange, taken by itself, or with bitter almonds and Rue, is good against the shortness of breath, it assuageth the griping pains of the belly, dissolveth and driveth away ventosity or windiness of the stomach; it wasteth the swelling of the milt or spleen, looseth the belly gently, and purgeth by siege both phlegm and choler.

B. The same taken in manner aforesaid provoketh urine, easeth the pain of the kidneys and bladder, causeth easy deliverance of child, and expelleth the secondine, or after-birth, and the dead child.

C. The sap or juice of the root mixed with oil of Roses, or Vinegar, and applied, easeth the palsy, cramps, contraction or drawing together of sinews, and all old cold diseases, especially the sciatica.

D. It is used with good success against the rupture or burstings in young children, and is very good to be applied unto the navels of children that stand out over much.

E. The decoction of the root drunk is of like virtue unto the juice, but not altogether so effectual against the foresaid diseases.

F. The root dried and made into powder doth mundify and cleanse old stinking and corrupt sores and ulcers, and healeth them: it also draweth forth the corrupt and rotten bones that hinder the same from healing, and likewise splinters and other things fixed in the flesh.

G. The said powder or juice of the root mixed with oil of Roses, causeth one to sweat, if the body be anointed therewith, and therefore good to be put into the unction or ointment for the French disease.

H. The congealed liquor tempered with oil of Roses, and applied to the head after the manner of an ointment, is good for them that have the lethargy, that are frantic, that have dizziness in the head, that are troubled with the falling sickness, that have the palsy, that are vexed with convulsions and cramps, and generally it is a remedy for all infirmities of the sinews, with Vinegar and oil, as Dioscorides teacheth.

I. The same being smelt unto reviveth and calleth them again that be strangled with the mother, and that lie in a dead sleep.
K. Being taken in a rear egg it helpeth the cough and difficulty of breathing, gripings and windiness, which, as Galen addeth, proceedeth from the grossness and claminess of humours.

L. It purgeth gently, it diminisheth the spleen, by cutting, digesting, and making thin humours that are thick: it causeth easy travail, and openeth the matrix.

M. A small piece of the root holden in the mouth is a present remedy against suffocation of the mother.
CHAP. 427. Of Herb Ferula, or Fennel-Giant.

The Kinds.

Dioscorides maketh mention of a Ferula, out of which is gathered the gum sagapene; and also he declareth, that the gums galbanum and ammoniacum are liquors of this herb Ferula: but what difference there is in the liquors, according to the climate or country where it groweth, he doth not set down; for it may be that out of one kind of Ferula sundry juices may be gathered, that is to say, according to the diversity of the countries where they grow, as we have said: for as in laser, the juice of Laserwort that groweth in Cyrene doth differ from that liquor which groweth in Media and Syria; so it is likely that the herb Ferula doth bring forth in Media sagapenum, in Cyrene ammoniacum, and in Syria galbanum. Theophrastus saith that the herb Ferula is divided into two kinds, and he calleth one great, by the name of Ferula; and another little, by the name Ferulago.

The Description.

1. Ferula, or Fennel-Giant, hath very great and large leaves of a deep green colour, cut and jagged like those of Fennel, spreading themselves abroad like wings: amongst which riseth up a great hollow stalk, somewhat reddish on that side which is next unto the sun, divided into certain spaces, with joints or knees like those of Hemlocks or Kexes, of the bigness of a man's arm in the wrist, of the height of four or five cubits where it groweth naturally, as in Italy, Greece, and other hot countries; notwithstanding it hath attained to the height of fourteen or fifteen foot in my garden, and likewise growtheth fairer and greater than from whence it came, as it fareth with
other plants that come hither from hot regions: as for example our great Artichoke, which first was brought out of Italy into England, is become (by reason of the great moisture which our country is subject unto) greater and better than those of Italy; insomuch that divers Italians have sent for some plants of our Artichokes, deeming them to be of another kind; nevertheless in Italy they are small and dry as they were before. Even so it happeneth to this Ferula, as we have said. This foresaid stalk divideth itself toward the top into divers other smaller branches, whereon are set the like leaves that grow next the ground, but much lesser. At the top of the branches at the first budding of the flowers appear certain bundles enclosed in thin skins, like the yolk of an egg, which divers call Corculum Ferulae, or the little heart of Ferula; which being brought to maturity, open themselves into a tuft or umbel like that of Dill, of a yellowish colour: after which come the seed, in colour and fashion like those of the Parsnip, but longer and greater, always growing two together, so closely joined, that it cannot be discerned to be more than one seed until they be divided: the root is very thick and great, full of a certain gummy juice, that floweth forth, the root being bruised, broken, or cut; which being dried or hardened, is that gum which is called sagapenum, and in some shops serapinum.

2. There is likewise another smaller Ferula like unto the former in each respect, saving that it is altogether less: the root likewise being wounded yieldeth forth a sap or juice, which when it is hardned is called galbanum: of the Assyrians, metopium.

I have likewise another sort sent me from Paris, with this title Ferula nigra; which prospereth exceeding well in my garden, but difference I cannot find any from the former, save that the leaves are of a more black or swart colour.

---

Fig. 1513. Æsculapius' All-Heal (3)
3. I know not where more fitly than in this place to give you the history of that *Ferula* or Ferulaceous plant that Dodonæus, Lobel, and others have set down under the name of *Panax aesculapium*. The stalk hereof is slender, a cubit high, crested and jointed, and from these joints proceed leaves bigger than those of Fennel and also rougher, and of a strong smell: at the tops of the branches grow umbels of yellow flowers: the seed is flattish, like that of the other *Ferula*: the root long, white, and of a strong smell. This grows naturally in Istria.

**The Place.**

These plants are not growing wild in England; I have them all in my garden.

**The Time.**

They flower in June and July; they perfect their seed in September; not long after, the stalk with his leaves perish: the root remaineth fresh and green all winter.

**The Names.**


**The Temperature.**

These plants with their gums are hot in the third degree, and dry in the second.

**The Virtues.**

A. The pith or marrow, called *Corculum Ferulæ*, as Galen teacheth, is of an astringent or binding quality, and therefore good for them that spit blood, and that are troubled with the flux.

B. Dioscorides saith, that being put into the nostrils it stayeth bleeding, and is given in wine to those that are bitten with vipers.

C. It is reported to be eaten in Apulia roasted in the embers, first wrapped in leaves or in old clouts, with pepper and salt; which, as they say, is a pleasant sweet food, that stirreth up lust, as they report.

D. The seed doth heat, and attenuate or make thin: it is a remedy against cold fits of an ague, by procuring sweat, being mixed with oil, and the body anointed therewith.

E. A dram of the juice of *Ferula* which beareth *sagapenum*, purgeth by siege tough and slimy humours, and all gross phlegm and choler, and is also good against all old and cold diseases which are hard to be cured; it purgeth the brain, and is very good against all diseases of the head, against the apoplexy and epilepsy.

F. Being taken in the same manner, it is good against cramps, palsies, shrinkings and pains of the sinews.

G. It is good against the shortness of breath, the cold and long cough, the pain in the side and breast, for it mundifieth and cleanseth the breast from all cold phlegm and rheumatic humours.

H. *Sagapenum* infused or steeped in vinegar all night, and spread upon leather or cloth, scattereth, dissolveth, and driveth away all hard and cold swellings, tumours, botches, and hard lumps growing about the joints or elsewhere, and is excellent good to be put into or mingled with all ointments or emplasters which are made to mollify or soften.
I. The juice of *Ferula galbanifera*, called *galbanum*, drunk in wine with a little myrrh, is good against all venom or poison that hath been taken inwardly, or shot into the body with venomous darts, quarrels, or arrows.

K. It helps women's painful travail, if they do take therof in a cup of wine the quantity of a bean.

L. The perfume of *galbanum* helpeth women that are grieved with the rising of the mother, and is good for those that have the falling sickness.

M. Galbanum softeneth, mollifieth, and draweth forth thorns, splinters, or broken bones, and consumeth cold and phlegmatic humours, serving in sundry ointments and emplasters for the use of surgery, and hath the same physical virtues that are attributed unto *sagapenum*.
CHAP. 428. Of Dropwort, or Filipendula.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Dropworts, some of the champion or fertile pastures, some of more moist and dankish grounds, and some of the mountain.

The Description.

1. The first kind of *Filipendula* hath leaves growing and spread abroad like feathers, each leaf consisting of sundry small leaves dented or snipped round about the edges, growing to the stalk by a small and slender stem: these leaves resemble wild Tansy or Burnet, but that they be longer and thicker, set like feathers, as is aforesaid: among these rise up stalks a cubit and a half high, at the top whereof grow many fair white flowers, each small flower consisting of six slender leaves, like a little star, bushing together in a tuft like the flowers of Meadowsweet, of a soft sweet smell: the seed is small, and groweth together like a button: the roots are small and black, whereupon depend many little knobs or black pellets, much like the roots of the female Peony, saving that they be a great deal smaller.

2. The second kind of *Filipendula*, called of Pena in his Observations, *Oenanthe, sive Philipendula alter montana* is neither at this day very well known, neither did the old writers heretofore once write or speak of it: but Pena that painful herbarist found it growing naturally in Narbonne in France, near unto Veganium, on the top of the high hills called Paradisus Dei, and near unto the mountain Calcaris: this rare plant hath many knobby long roots, in shape like to *Asphodeum luteus*, or
rather like the roots of Corruda, or wild Asparagus; from which riseth up a stalk a foot high, and more, which is thick, round, and channelled, beset full of leaves like those of common Filipendula, but they be not so thick set or winged, but more like unto the leaves of a Thistle, consisting of sundry small leaves, in fashion like to Coronopus ruellii, that is, Ruellius his Buck's Horn: round about the top of the stalk there groweth a very fair tuft of white flowers, resembling fine small hoods, growing close and thick together like the flowers of Pedicularis, that is, Red Rattle, called of Carolus Clusius, Alectorolophos, whereof he maketh this plant a kind, but in my judgement and opinion it is rather like Cynosorchis, a kind of Satyrion.

3. There is another kind of Filipendula set forth under the name Oenanthe, that hath many tuberous and thick roots like those of Dropwort, but white of colour, and every one of those knobs hath a certain string or fibre annexed thereto; from whence ariseth a crested stalk two foot high, dividing itself toward the top into sundry arms or branches: from the hollow place or bosom of every joint (out of which do grow those branches) the leaves do also proceed, very much cut or jagged like Fennel: at the top of those branches come forth spoky roundels of white flowers fashioned like stars.

4. The fourth kind of Filipendula is as strange a plant as the former, especially with us here in England, except in the watery places, and rills in the North, where Paludapium or Water Smallage groweth; whereunto in leaves it is not unlike, but more like Ruta pratensis: it hath many large branches, a naughty savour, and in colour and shape like Cicuta, that is, Hemlock. The stalks are more than two cubits high, coming from a root which exceedingly multiplies itself into bulbs, like Asphodelus albus. The smell of this plant is strong and grievous; the taste hot and biting, it being full of a juice, at first milky, but afterwards turning yellow. The spoky tufts or
roundels growing at the top are like *Cicuta*, yea, it much resembleth Hemlock in property and qualities, and so do they affirm that have proved and seen the experience of it: for being eaten in salads it did well nigh poison those which ate of it, making them giddy in their heads, waxing very pale, staggering and reeling like drunken men. Beware and take good heed of this and such like simples; for there is no physician that will give it, because there be many other excellent good simples which God hath bestowed upon us from the preventing and curing of diseases. Pernicious and not excusable is the ignorance of some of our time, that have bought and (as one may probably conjecture) used the roots of this plant instead of those of Peony; and I know they are daily by the ignorant women in Cheapside sold to people more ignorant than themselves, by the name of Water Lovage; *Caveat emptor*. The danger that may ensue by using them may be gathered by that which our author hath here set down, being taken out of the *Adversaria*, pag. 326.

![Filipendula aquatica](image)

**Fig. 1518. Water Dropwort (5)**

5. The fifth and last kind of Filipendula, which is the fourth according to Matthiolus his account, hath leaves like Water Smallage, which Pliny calleth *Sylaus*, the leaves very much resembling those of *Laver crateuæ*: among which riseth up a small stalk deeply furrowed or crested, bearing at the top thereof spoky or bushy roundels of white flowers thick thrust together. The roots are compact of very many filaments or threads; among which come forth a few tuberous or knobby roots like unto the second.

**The Place and Time.**

The first growtheth plentifully upon stony rocks or mountains, and rough places, and in fertile pastures. I found great plenty thereof growing in a field adjoining to Sion House, sometime a nunnery, near London, on the side of a meadow called Sion Meadow.
The second hath been sufficiently spoken of in the description. The third groweth near unto brooks and rivers' sides. The fourth groweth between the ploughed lands in the moist and wet furrows of a field belonging to Battersea by London. It also groweth in great abundance in many places by the Thames' side; as amongst the osiers against York House, a little above the Horseferry, against Lambeth, &c. The fifth groweth near the sides of rivers and water-streams, especially near the river of Thames, as in St. George's Fields, and about the Bishop of London's house at Fulham, and such like places.

**The Time.**

They flower from May to the end of June.

**The Names.**

They are commonly called *Filipendulae*. The first is called of Nicolaus Myrepsus, *Philipendula*; of some, *Saxifragra rubra*, and *Millefolium sylvestre*; of Pliny, *Molon*; in Italian and Spanish, *Filipendula*; in English, *Filipendula* and Dropwort. Water Filipendula is called *Filipendula aquatica*, *Oenanthe aquatica*, and *Silaus plinii*.

The fourth, whose leaves are like to Hemlocks, is as some think called of Cordus, *Oisenichium*: in English Hemlock Filipendula.

**The Nature.**

These kinds of Filipendula are hot and dry in the third degree, opening and cleansing, and yet with a little astriction or binding. All the kinds of *Oenanthes* have the same faculty, except the fourth, whose pernicious faculty we have formerly touched.

**The Virtues.**

A. The root of common Filipendula boiled in wine and drunken, is good against all pains of the bladder, causeth one to make water, and breaketh the stone. The like Dioscorides hath written of Oenanthe; the root, saith he is good for them that piss by drops.

B. The powder of the roots of Filipendula often used in meat, will preserve a man from the falling sickness.
CHAP. 429. Of Hemlocks, or Herb Bennet.

The Description.

1. The first kind of Hemlock hath a long stalk, five or six foot high, great and hollow, full of joints like the stalks of Fennel, of an herby colour; powdered with small red spots, almost like the stems of Dragons. The leaves are great, thick, and small cut or jagged like the leaves of Chervil, but much greater, and of a very strong and unpleasant savour. The flowers are white, growing by tufts or spoky tops, which do change and turn into a white flat seed: the root is short, and somewhat hollow within.
Fig. 1520. Broad-Leaved Hemlock (2)

2. The apothecaries in times past not knowing the right *Seseli peloponnense*, have erroneously taken this *Cicuta latifolia* for the same. The leaves whereof are broad, thick, and like unto *Cicutaria*, yet not the same; they called it *Seseli peloponnense cum folio Cicuta*, the faculties whereof deny and refute that assertion and opinion, yea and the plant itself, which being touched, yieldeth or breatheth out a most virulent or loathsome smell: these things sufficiently argue, that it is not a kind of *Seseli*, besides the reasons following: *Seseli* hath a reasonable good savour in the whole plant, the root is bare and single, without fibres, like a Carrot; but *Cicuta* hath not only a loathsome smell, but his roots are great, thick, and knobby, like the roots of *Myrrhis*: the whole plant doth in a manner resemble the leaves, stalks and flowers of *Myrrhis odorata*, whose small white flowers do turn into long and crooked seeds, growing at the top of the branches three cubits high.
3. This in leaves, stalks, and roots is larger than the last described, the stalks equalling or exceeding the height of man; the smell is strange and grievous, and in all the parts thereof it is like to the other plants of this kind. Lobel figures it by the name of *Cicataria maxima bracionis*, and questions whether it be not *Thapsia tertia salamanticensium* of Clusius; but Clusius denies it so to be.

**The Place.**

Common Hemlock groweth plentifully about town walls and villages in shadowy places, and fat soils near ditches.

The second groweth upon mountains and desert places, and is a stranger in England; yet I have plants thereof in my garden.

**The Time.**

They flourish and seed in September.

**The Names.**


The second is called *Cicuta latifolia*, and *Cicutaria latifolia*, and *Seseli peloponnense quorundam*: in English, great Hemlocks, and garden Homlock.

**The Temperature.**

Galen saith, that Hemlock is extreme cold in operation, even in the fourth degree of coldness.
The Virtues.

A. It is therefore a very rash part to lay the leaves of Hemlock to the stones of young boys or virgin breasts, and by that means to keep those parts from growing great; for is doth not only easily cause those members to pine away, but also hurteth the heart and liver, being outwardly applied: then must it of necessity hurt more being inwardly taken; for it is one of the deadly poisons which killeth by his cold quality, as Dioscorides writeth, saying, Hemlock is a very evil, dangerous, hurtful, and poisonous herb, insomuch that whosoever taketh of it into his body dieth remediless, except the party drink some wine that is naturally hot, before the venom have taken the heart, as Pliny saith: but being drunk with wine the poison is with greater speed carried to the heart, by reason whereof it killeth presently; therefore not to be applied outwardly, much less taken inwardly into the body.

B. The great Hemlock doubtless is not possessed with any one good faculty, as appeareth by his loathsome smell, and other apparent signs, and therefore not to be used in physic.
CHAP. 430. Of Wild and Water Hemlocks.
The Description.

1. This wild kind of Hemlock hath a small tough white root, from which rise up divers stiff stalks, hollow, somewhat reddish toward the sun, jointed or knee'd at certain distances; from which joints spring forth long leaves very green, and finely minced or jagged like the common Chervil or Parsley: the flowers stand at the tops of the stalks in small spoky umbels, with little longish green leaves about them: the seed followeth, like those of Hemlock, or as they grow together on the tops of the stalks they resemble Coriander seeds, but less: the whole plant is of a naughty smell.

2. Water Hemlock, which Lobel calleth *Cicutaria palustris*: Clusius and Dodoneus, *Phellandrium*, riseth up with a thick fat and empty hollow stalk, full of knees or joints, cre Red, chamfered, or furrowed, of a yellowish green colour: the leaves shoot forth of the joints and branches, like unto wild Hemlock, but much thicker, fatter, and oleous, very finely cut or jagged almost like those of the smallest *Visnaga*, or Spanish Toothpicks: the flowers stand at the top of the stalks in small whitish tufts: the seed followeth, blackish, of the bigness of Anise seed, and of a sweet savour: the root is thick and long, within the water, very soft and tender, with very many strings fastened thereto.

The Place.

1. This grows among stones and rubbish, by the walls of cities and towns almost everywhere.
The other groweth in the midst of water ditches and standing pools and ponds, in most places or England; it groweth very plentifully in the ditches by a causeway, as you go from Redriff to Deptford near London, and in many other places.

The Time.

They flower and flourish in July and August.

The Names.

1. This is *Petroselini vitium* of Travis; and *Dauci inutilis genus* of Gesner: Thalius calls it *Apium cicutarium*: Lobel, *Cicutaria fatua*: Tabernamontanus, *Petroselinum caninum*: which name we may fitly make English, and call it Dog's-Parsley.

2. This is *Ligusticum sylvestris* & *Fœniculum sylvestris* of Tragus: *Cicutaria palustris* of Lobel and others: Dodonæus thinks it Pliny's *Phellandrion*; and Cæsalpinus judges it his *Silaus*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

Their temperature and faculties are answerable to the common Hemlock, which have no use in physic, as we have said.
CHAP. 431. Of Earthnut, Earth Chestnut, or Kipper-nut.

The Description.

1. Earth-Nut or Kipper-Nut, called after Lobel, *Nucula terrestris*, hath small even crested stalks a foot or somewhat more high: whereon do grow next the ground leaves like those of Parsley, and those that do grow higher like unto those of Dill; the white flowers do stand on the top of the stalks in spoky roundels, like the tops of Dill, which turn into small seed, growing together by couples, of a very good smell, not unlike to those of Fennel, but much smaller: the root is round, knobbed, with certain eminences or bunchings out; brown without, white within; of a firm and solid substance, and of a taste like the Chestnut or Chess-nut, whereof it took his name.

2. There is also another Earth-Nut that hath stalks a foot high, whereon do grow jagged leaves like those of English Saxifrage, of a bright green colour: the flowers grow at the top of the branches, in small spoky tufts consisting of little white flowers: the root is like the other, bulbous fashion, with some few strings hanging at the bottom, of a good and pleasant smell. This differs from the former, in that the leaves are larger and greener: the root also is not so far within the ground, and it also sends forth some leaves from the bulb itself; whereas our common kind hath only the end of a small root that carries the stem and leaves upon it, fastened unto it as you see it expressed in the former figure.
The Place.
These herbs do grow in pastures and corn fields almost everywhere: there is a field adjoining to Highgate, on the right side of the middle of the village, covered over with the same; and likewise in the next field unto the conduit heads by Marylebone, near the way that leadeth to Paddington by London, and in divers other places. Thus saith our author, but I have not yet observed the second grow wild with us.

The Time.
They flower in June and July: the seed cometh to perfection afterward.

The Names.
Alexander Trallianus hath made mention of Bolbocastanon, Lib. 7, reckoning it up among those kinds of meat or sustenances which be good for such as have rotten lungs: of some it is called Agriocastanon.

Guinterius thought the word was corrupted, and that Balanocastanon should be read: but this is as strange a word as Bolbocastanon, which was derived of the form of a bulb and the taste of a Chestnut: of some, Nucula terrestris, or the little Earth-Nut: it is thought to be Bunium dioscoridis of some; but we think not so: of Dr. Turner, Apios; yet there is another Apios, being a kind of Tithymale: of Matthiolus, Oenanthe, making it a kind of Filipendula: in High Dutch, Eerdnusz; in Low Dutch, Eertnoten: the people of Savoy call it Faverottes: in English, Earth-Nuts, Kipper-Nuts, and Earth Chestnuts.

The Temperature.
The roots of Earth-Nuts are moderately hot and dry, and also binding: but the seed is both hotter and drier.

The Virtues.
A. The seed openeth and provoketh urine, and so doth the root likewise.
B. The root is good for those that spit and piss blood, if the root be eaten raw, or roasted in the embers.
C. The Dutch people do use to eat them boiled and buttered, as we do Parsnips and Carrots, which so eaten comfort the stomach, and yield nourishment that is good for the bladder and kidneys.
D. There is a plaster made of the seeds hereof, whereof to write in this place were impertinent to our history.
CHAP. 432. Of Cumin.

The Description.

This Garden Cumin is a low or base herb of a foot high: the stalk divideth itself into divers small branches, whereon do grow little jagged leaves very finely cut into small parcels, like those of Fennel, but more finely cut, shorter and lesser: the spoky tufts grow at the top of the branches and stalks, of a red or purplish colour: after which come the seed, of a strong or rank smell, and a biting taste: the root is tender, which perisheth when it hath ripened his seed.

The Place.

Cumin is husbanded and sown in Italy and Spain, and is very common in other hot countries, as in Æthiopia, Egypt, Cilicia, and all the lesser Asia.

It delights to grow especially in putrefied and hot soils: I have proved the seeds in my garden, where they have brought forth ripe seed much fairer and greater than any that cometh from beyond the seas.

The Time.

It is to be sown in the middle of the spring; a shower of rain presently following doth much hinder the growth thereof, as Ruellius saith.

Myself did sow it in the midst of May, which sprung up in six days after: and the seed was ripe in the end of July.

The Names.

It is called in Greek Kuminon emeron, that is, tame or garden Cumin, that it may differ from the wild ones: it is named in Latin Cuminum: in shops, Cyminum: in High

**The Temperature.**

The seed of garden Cumin, as Galen saith, is hot and dry in the third degree: Dioscorides saith that it hath in it also a binding quality.

**The Virtues.**

A. The seed of Cumin scattereth and breaketh all the windiness of the stomach, belly, guts, and matrix: it is good against the griping torments, gnawing or fretting of the belly, not only received inwardly by the mouth, but also in clysters, and outwardly applied to the belly with wine and barley meal boiled together to the form of a poultice.

B. Being handled according to art, either in a cataplasm, poultice, or plaster, or boiled in wine and so applied, it taketh away blastings, swellings of the cods or genitals: it consumeth windy swellings in the joints, and such like.

C. Being taken in a supping broth it is good for the chest and for cold lungs, and such as are oppressed with abundance of raw humours.

D. It stancheth bleeding at the nose, being tempered with vinegar and smelt unto.

E. Being quilted in a little bag with some small quantity of bay salt, and made hot upon a bedpan with fire or such like, and sprinkled with good wine vinegar, and applied to the side very hot, it taketh away the stitch and pains thereof, and easeth the pleurisy very much.
CHAP. 433. Of Wild Cumin.

The Kinds.

There be divers plants differing very notably one from another in shape, and yet all comprehended under the title of wild Cumin.

The Description.

1. The Wild Cumin hath small white roots with some fibres thereto appendant; from the which arise sundry little jagged leaves, confining of many lesser leaves, finely dented about the edges, in fashion like the smallest leaves of wild Parsnip: among which springeth up a slender bending stalk a foot high, like unto Pecten veneris, bearing at the top thereof white round and hairy buttons or knops, like Arction, as Diorcorides hath right well observed: within which knops is contained a tender downy substance, among which is the seed, like the seed of Dens leonis, but much lesser.

2. The second kind of Cumin is very like unto the foresaid wild Cumin, save that it beareth a number of horneed or crooked cods, after the manner of Scorpioides, but thicker, and less crooked, and the seeds within the cods are severally distinct and separated one from another by equal partitions, in small crosses, yellow of colour, & somewhat long: the stalks are little and tender, beset with leaves much like unto the small leaves of Carvi, or Pecten veneris: and at the top of the stalks there do grow pretty yellow flowers, like those of great Celandine or Rocket, saving that they be somewhat lesser.
3. The third kind of Cumin is very like unto the last before mentioned, but the leaves are much greater, more slender, & more finely cut or jagged, like the leaves of *Seseli* of Massilia: among which riseth up a stalk a cubit high or somewhat more, very smooth and whitish: at the top whereof spring forth fine yellow flowers, not like the former, but consisting of six leaves apiece; whereoftwo are large, and edged with green on the outside: the other four are small ones, and grow two on a side between the two larger leaves: these flowers being faded, there succeed crooked cods, greater, and more full of knots or divisions than the former, wherein is contained a small and flat yellow seed like *Galega*: the root is long, thick, and single.

**The Place.**

These wild Cumins do grow in Lycia, and Galatia, a province of Asia, and in Carthage a city of Spain and in Provençe in France; seldom seen in these Northern parts: notwithstanding at the impression hereof, the last did flower and flourish in my garden.

**The Time.**

They flower in August, and perfect their seed in September.

**The Names.**

Their names have been touched in their titles in as ample manner as hath been set down by any author.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

Their temperature and virtues are referred to the garden Cumin; notwithstanding I cannot read in any author of their use in physic.
CHAP. 434. Of Fluxweed.

The Description.

1. Fluxweed hath round and hard stalks, a cubit & a half high, whereon do grow leaves most finely cut and divided into innumerable fine jags, like those of the sea Wormwood called Seriphium, or Absinthium tenuifolium, but much finer and smaller, drawing near unto the smallest leaves of Corianders, of an overworn green colour: the flowers grow alongst the tops of the spriggy branches, of a dark yellow colour: after which come long cods full of small red seeds: the root is long, straight, and of a woody substance.

2. The second sort differeth not from the precedent, saving that the leaves of this plant are broader, wherein especially consisteth the difference; notwithstanding in mine opinion Tabernamontanus found this second sort growing in some fertile place, whereby the leaves did grow broader and greater, which moved him to make of this a second sort, whereas in truth they are both but one and the self-same plant.

The Place.

This Fluxweed groweth in most places of England, almost everywhere in the ruins of old buildings, by highways, and filthy obscure base places.

The Time.

It flowereth and seedeth from June to the end of September.

The Names.

Fluxweed is called Thalietrum; and of some, Thalictrum, but unproperly; for Thalictrum belongeth to English Rhubarb: the Paracelsians do vaunt and brag very
much of an herb called *Sophia*, adding thereto the surname *Paracelsi*, wherewith they imagine to do wonders, whether this be the same plant it is disputable, the controversy not as yet decided; nevertheless we must be content to accept of this for the true *Sophia*, until some disciple or other of his do show or set forth the plant wherewith their master Paracelsus, did such great matters: in English we call it Fluxweed, of his faculty against the flux.

**The Temperature.**

*Sophia* drieth without any manifest sharpness or heat.

**The Virtues.**

A. The seed of *Sophia* or Fluxweed drunk with wine, or smith's water, stoppeth the bloody flux, the lask, and all other issues of blood.

B. The herb bruised or put into unguents, closeth and healeth ulcers, or old sores and wounds, as Paracelsus saith, and that because it drieth without acrimony or sharpness.
CHAP. 435. Of the Great Celandine, or Swallow-Wort.

The Description.

1. The great Celandine hath a tender brittle stalk, round, hairy, and full of branches, each whereof hath divers knees or knotty joints, set with leaves not unlike to those of Columbine, but tenderer and deeper cut or jagged, of a greyish green under, and green on the other side tending to blueness: the flowers do grow at the top of the stalks, of a gold yellow colour, in shape like those of the Wallflower: after which come long cods, full of bleak or pale seeds: the whole plant is of a strong smell, nothing pleasant, and yieldeth a thick juice of a milky substance, of the colour of Saffron: the root is thick and knobby, with some threads annexed thereto, which being broken or bruised, yieldeth a sap or juice of the colour of gold.

2. This other doth not in form and magnitude differ from the former, but in the leaves, which are finelier cut and jagged, and somewhat in their shape resemble an oaken leaf: the flowers also are a little jagged or cut about the edges: and in these two particulars consists the whole difference. Clusius calls it Chelidonium majus laciniato flore; and Bauhin, Chelidonium majus foliis quernis.

The Place.

It groweth in untilled places, by common waysides, among briars and brambles, about old walls, and in the shade, rather than in the sun.
The Time.

It is green all the year, it flowereth from April to a good part of summer, the
cods are perfected in the meantime.

The Names.

It is called in Latin, *Chelidonium majus*, and *Hirundinaria major*: amongst the
apothecaries, *Chelidonia*: divers miscall it by the name *Celidonium*: it is named in
Italian, *Celidonia*: in Spanish, *Celiduhenha, Yerva de las golundrinhas*: in High
Dutch, *Grosz Scholwurtz*: in low Dutch *Stinkende Gouwe*: in French, *Esclere* or
*Esclayre*, and *Celidoine*: in English, Celandine, or Great Celandine, Swallow-Wort,
and Tetterwort.

It is called Celandine, not because it then first springeth at the coming in of the
Swallows, or dieth when they go away: for as we have said, it may be found all the
year, but because some hold opinion, that with this herb the dams restore sight to their
young ones when their eyes be out: the which things are vain and false; for Cornelius
Celsus in his sixth book doth witness, that when the sight of the eyes of divers young
birds be put forth by same outward means, it will after a time be restored of itself, and
soonest of all the sight of the Swallow, whereupon (as the same author saith) that the
tale or fable grew, how through an herb the dams restore that thing, which healeth of
itself: the very same doth Aristotle allege in the sixth book *Of the History of Living
Creatures*: The eyes of Swallows (saith he) that are not fledged, if a man do prick
them out, do grow again, and afterwards do perfectly recover their sight.

The Temperature.

The great Celandine is manifestly hot and dry, and that in the third degree, and
withal scours and cleanseth effectually.

The Virtues.

A. The juice of the herb is good to sharpen the sight, for it cleanseth and
consumeth away slimy things that cleave about the ball of the eye, and hinder the
sight, and especially being boiled with honey in a brazen vessel, as Dioscorides
teacheth.

B. The root cureth the yellow jaundice, which cometh of the stopping of the
gall, especially when there is no ague adjoined with it, for it openeth and delivereth
the gall and liver from stoppings.

C. The root being chewed, is reported to be good against the toothache.

D. The juice must be drawn forth in the beginning of summer, and dried in the
sun, saith Dioscorides.

E. The root of Celandine boiled with Anise seed in white wine, openeth the
stoppings of the liver, and cureth the jaundice very safely, as hath been often proved.

F. The root cut in small pieces is good to be given unto hawks against sundry
diseases, whereunto they are subject, as worms, cray, and such like.

G. I have by experience found (saith Clusius) that the juice of the great
Celandine dropped into small green wounds of what sort soever, wonderfully cures
them.
CHAP. 436. Of Coxcomb, or Yellow Rattle.

Cista galli, or Crista gallinacea, hath a straight upright stalk, set about with narrow leaves, snipped round about the edges: the flowers grow at the top of the stems, of a yellow colour; after which come up little flat pouches or purses, covered over or contained within a little bladder, or flat skin, open before like the mouth of a fish, wherein is contained flat yellowish seed, which being ripe and dry, will make a noise or rattling when it is shaken or moved, of which property it took the name Yellow Rattle.

The Place.

It groweth in dry meadows and pastures, and is to them a great annoyance.

The Time.

It flowereth most part of the summer.

The Names.

It is called in Low Dutch Ratelen, and Geel Ratelen: commonly in Latin, Crista Galli, and Gallinacea crista: in English, Coxcomb, Penny Grass, Yellow or White Rattle: in High Dutch it is called Geel Rodel: in French Creste de Coq: divers take it to be the old writers Alectorolophos. Some think it to be the Mimmulus: or as others (& that more fitly) read it, Nummulus, mentioned by Pliny, lib. 18. cap. 28.

The Temperature and Virtues.

But what temperature or virtue this herb is of, men have not as yet been careful to know, seeing it is accounted unprofitable.
CHAP. 437. Of Red Rattle, or Lousewort.

The Description.

Red Rattle (of Dodonæus called Fistularia, and according to the opinion & censure of Carolus Clusius, Pena & others, the true Alectorolophos) hath very small, rent, or jagged leaves, of a brown red colour, and and tender stalks, whereof some lie along trailing upon the ground; within very moorish meadows they grow a cubit high and more, but in moist and wet heaths, and such like barren grounds not above an handful high: the flowers grow round about the stalk, from the midst thereof even to the top, and are of a brown red colour, in shape like the flowers of Dead Nettle; which being past, there succeed little flat pouches, wherein is contained flat and black seed, in show very like unto the former: the root is small, white, and tender.

The Place.

It groweth in moist and moorish meadows, the herb is not only unprofitable, but also hurtful, and an infirmity of the meadows.

The Time.

It is found with his flowers and stalks in May and June.

The Names.

It is called in High Dutch, Braun Rödt: in Latin, Pedicularis, of the effect, because it fillet sheep and other cattle that feed in meadows where this groweth full of lice: divers of the later Herbarists call it Fistularia: of some, Crista Galli: and divers take it to be Mimmulus herba: in English, Rattle-grass, Red Rattle-grass and Lousewort.

The Temperature.

It is cold and dry and astringent.
The Virtues.

A. It is held to be good for fistulas and hollow ulcers, and to stay the overmuch flowing of the menses, or any other flux of blood, if it be boiled in red wine and drunk.
CHAP. 438. Of Yarrow, or Nose-Bleed.

The Description.

1. Common Yarrow hath very many stalks coming up a cubit high, round, and somewhat hard: about which stand long leaves, cut in the sides sundry wise, and as it were made up of many small jagged leaves, every one of which seem to come near to the slender leaves of Coriander: there stand at the top tufts or spoked roundels: the flowers whereof are either white or purple, which being rubbed do yield a strong smell, but unpleasant; the root sendeth down many strings.

2. The second kind of Milfoil or Yarrow hath stalks, leaves and roots like unto the former, saving that his spoky tufts are of an excellent fair red or crimson colour, and being a little rubbed in the hand, of a reasonable good savour.

The Place.

The first groweth everywhere in dry pastures and meadows: Red Milfoil groweth in a field by Sutton in Kent called Holly-Deane, from whence I brought those plants that do grow in my garden; but it is not common everywhere as the other is.

The Time.

They flower from May to the end of October.
The Names.

Yarrow is called of the Latin herbarists *Millefolium*: it is Dioscorides his *Achilleos*: in Latin, *Achillea*, and *Achillea sideritis*; which thing he may very plainly see that will compare with that description which Dioscorides hath set down: this was found out, saith Pliny in his 25th book, chap. 5, by Achilles, Chiron's disciple, which for that cause is named *Achilleios*: of others, *Sideritis*: among us, *Millefolium*: yet be there other *Sideritides* and also another *Panaces heracleion* whereof we will treat in another place: Apuleius setteth down divers names hereof, some of which are also found among the bastard names in Dioscorides: in Latin it is called *Militaris, Supercilium veneris, Acrum, or Acorum sylvaticum*: of the Frenchmen, *Millefeuille*: in High Dutch, *Garben, Scharffgras*: in Low Dutch, *Geruwe*: in Italian, *Millefoglio*: in Spanish, *Milhoyas yerva*: in English, Yarrow, Nosebleed, Common Yarrow, Red Yarrow, and Milfoil.

The Temperature.

Yarrow, as Galen saith, is not unlike in temperature to the *Sideritides*, or Ironworts, that is to say, cleansing, and meanly cold, but it most of all bindeth.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of Yarrow do close up wounds, and keep them from inflammation, or fiery swelling: it stancheth blood in any part of the body, and it is likewise put into baths for women to sit in: it stoppeth the lask, and being drunk it helpeth the bloody flux.

B. Most men say that the leaves chewed, and especially green, are a remedy for the toothache.

C. The leaves being put into the nose, do cause it to bleed, and ease the pain of the megrim.

D. It cureth the inward excorations of the yard of a man, coming by reason of pollutions or extreme flowing of the seed, although the issue do cause inflammation and swelling of those secret parts, and though the spermatic matter do come down in great quantity, if the juice be injected with a syringe, or the decoction. This hath been proved by a certain friend of mine, sometime a Fellow of Kings College in Cambridge, who lightly bruised the leaves of common Yarrow, with hog's grease, and applied it warm unto the privy parts, and thereby did divers times help himself, and others of his fellows, when he was a student and a single man living in Cambridge.

E. One dram in powder of the herb given in wine, presently taketh away the pains of the colic.
CHAP. 439. Of Yellow Yarrow, or Milfoil.

The Description.

1. Yellow Yarrow is a small plant seldom above a span high: the stalks whereof are covered with long leaves, very finely cut in the edges like feathers in the wings of little birds: the tufts or spoky roundels bring forth yellow flowers, of the same shape and form of the common Yarrow: the root consisteth of thready strings.

2. Achilles' Yarrow, or Noble Milfoil, hath a thick and tough root, with strings fastened thereto: from which immediately rise up divers stalks, very green and crested, whereupon do grow long leaves composed of many small jags, cut even to the middle rib: the flowers stand on the top of the stalks with spoky umbels or tufts, of a whitish colour, and pleasant smell.

The Place.

These kinds of Yarrow are seldom found: they grow in a fat and fruitful soil, and sometimes in meadows, and are strangers in England.

The Time.

They flower from May until August.

The Names.

Dioscorides' description doth sufficiently declare, that this herb is *Stratiotes millefolium*: the height of the herb showeth it, the form of the leaves agree; there is
some ambiguity or doubt in the colour of the flowers, which Dioscorides describeth to be white, as the vulgar copies have; but Andreas Lacuna addeth out of the old book, of a yellow colour: it is named of the later age, *Millefolium minus*, or little Yarrow, and *Millefolium luteum*, yellow Yarrow, or Nose-bleed: the apothecaries and common people know it not.

**The Temperature.**

Yarrow is meanly cold and somewhat binding.

**The Virtues.**

A. It is a principal herb for all kind of bleedings, and to heal up new and old ulcers and green wounds: there be some, saith Galen, that use it for fistulas.

B. This plant *Achillea* is thought to be the very same wherewith Achilles cured the wounds of his soldiers, as before in the former chapter.
CHAP. 440. Of Valerian, or Setwall.

The Description.

1. The tame or garden Valerian hath his first leaves long, broad, smooth, green, and undivided; and the leaves upon the stalks greater, longer, and deeply gashed on either side, like the leaves of the greater Parsnip, but yet lesser: the stalk is
above a cubit high, smooth, and hollow, with certain joints far distant one from
another: out of which joints grow forth a couple of leaves, and in the tops of the stalks
upon spoky roundels and flowers heaped together, which are small, opening
themselves out of a long little narrow neck; of colour whitish, and sometimes withal
of a light red: the root is an inch thick, growing aslope, fastened on the upper part of
the earth by a multitude of strings, the most part of it standing out of the ground, of a
pleasant sweet smell when it is broken.

2. The greater wild Valerian hath leaves divided and jagged, as those of the
former; those about the stalk hereof are also smooth, hollow, and jointed, and above a
cubit high: the flowers stand on spoky roundels like to those of the former, but of a
light purple colour: the roots are slender, and full of strings and small threads, not
altogether without smell.

3. The other wild one is much like in form to the garden Valerian, but far
lesser: the first leaves thereof be undivided, the other are parted and cut in sunder: the
stalks a span long: the flowers which stand on spoky roundels are like to those of the
others, of a light whitish purple colour: the roots be slender, growing aslope, creeping,
and full of fine small threads, of little smell.

4. There is a small Valerian growing upon rocks and stony places, that is like
unto the last described, saving it is altogether less. The stalk is some half foot high,
and strait, dividing itself into branches toward the top, and that always by couples: the
bottom leaves are whole, the top leaves much divided, the flowers are small, of a
whitish purple colour, parted into five, and standing upon round rough heads, which
when the flowers are fallen, become star-fashioned, divided into six parts: it flowers
in June, and is an annual plant.
5. The fifth sort of Valerian hath divers small hollow stalks, a foot high and somewhat more, garnished with leaves like unto those that do grow on the upper part of the stalks of common Valerian, but smaller, cut or jagged almost to the middle rib: at the top of the stalks do grow the flowers clustering together, of a blue colour, consisting of five leaves apiece, having in the middle thereof small white threads tipped with yellow: the seed is small, growing in little husks or seed vessels: the root is nothing else but as it were all of threads.

6. I have another sort of Valerian (the seed whereof was sent me from that reverend physician Bernard Paludane, under the title of Valeriana mexicana:) having small tender stalks trailing upon the ground, very weak and brittle: whereupon do grow smooth greenish leaves like those of Corn Salad (which we have set forth amongst the Lettuce, under the title Lactuca agnina, or Lambs' Lettuce:) among the leaves come forth the flowers clustering together, like unto the great Valerian in form, but of a deep purple colour: the root is very small and thready, which perisheth with the rest of the plant, when it hath brought his seed to maturity or ripeness, and must be sown anew the next year in May, and not before.

7. There is also another sort or kind of Valerian called by the name Phyteuma, of the learned physicians of Montpellier and others (set forth under the stock or kindred of the Valerians, resembling the aforesaid Corn Salad, which is called of some Prolifera, from the Greek title Phyteuma, as if you should say, good to make conception, and to procure love:) the lowest leaves are like those of the small Valerian, of a yellowish colour: the upper leaves become more jagged: the stalks are an handful high: on the tops whereof do stand small round spoky tufts of white flowers,; which being past, the seeds appear like small round pearls, which being ripe, grow to be somewhat flat, having in the middle of each seed the print of an hole, as it were graven or bored therein. The root is small and single, with some fibres annexed thereto.
8. This sends forth from a white and woody root many leaves spread upon the ground; green, and not unlike those of the Star-Thistle: among these rise up some round hollow branched stalks two cubits high: at each joint grow forth two leaves lesser, yet like the lower: at the tops of the branches grow the flowers as it were in little umbels, consisting of five leaves piece; and these of a light red, or flesh colour: and then these as it were umbels grow into longish branches bearing seed almost like, yet less than the red Valerian: it flowers in July, and perisheth when it hath ripened the seed. Clusius hath set this forth by the name of *Valeriana annua altera*.

9. The same author hath also given us the history of some other plants of this kind; and this he calls *Valeriana sylvatica alpina latifolia*; the stalk hereof is some foot high, round, green, and crested: upon which stand leaves sharp pointed, and cut in with two or three deep gashes: but the bottom leaves are more round and larger, coming near to these of *Trachelium*, yet lesser, slenderer, and bitter of taste: the flowers which are white of colour, and the seed, are like those of the other Valerians: the root is small, creeping, fibrous, white and aromatic; it grows upon the Alps, and flowers in June and July.
Gerard's Herbal

Fig. 1544. Small Alpine Valerain (10)

10. This sends forth leaves like those of the Mountain Daisy: out of the midst of which riseth up a stalk four foot high, jointed, and at the top divided into little branches, carrying white flowers like the other Valerians: the root is as aromatic as that of the last mentioned; and grows in the chinks of the Alpine rocks, where it flowers in June and July. Clusius hath it by the name of Valeriana sylvestris alpina 2. Saxatilis.

The Place.

The first and likewise the Greek Valerian are planted in gardens; the wild ones are found in moist places hard to rivers' sides, ditches, and watery pits; yet the greater of these is brought into gardens where it flourisheth, but the lesser hardly prospereth.

The Time.

These flower in May, June, and July, and most of the summer months.

The Names.

Generally the Valerians are called by one name, in Latin, Valeriana: in Greek, Phu: in shops also Phu, which for the most part is meant by the garden Valerian, that is called in Latin, Sylvestris, or Rustica Nardus: of Pliny, Nardus cretica: which names are rather referred to those of the next chapter, although these be reckoned as wild kinds thereof: of certain in our age, Marinella, Amantilla, Valentiana, Genicularis, Herba Benedicta, and Theriacaria: in most shops, Valeriana domestica: of Theophrastus Paracelsus, Pardina: in High Dutch, Gros; Valdrian: in low Dutch, Speercrupt, S. Joris Cruyt, and Valeriane: in English, Valerian, Capon's Tail, and Setwall; but unproperly, for that name belongeth to Zedoaria, which is not Valerian: what hath been set down in the titles shall serve for the distinctions of the other kinds.
The Temperature.

The garden Valerian is hot, as Dioscorides saith, but not much, neither the green root, but the dried ones; for the green is easily perceived to have very little heat, and the dried to be hotter, which is found by the taste and smell.

The Virtues.

A. The dry root, as Dioscorides teacheth, provoketh urine, bringeth down the desired sickness, helpeth the pain in the sides, and is put into counterpoisons and medicines preservative against the pestilence, as are treacles, mithridates, and such like: whereupon it hath been had (and is to this day among the poor people of our Northern parts) in such veneration amongst them, that no broths, pottage, or physical meats are worth anything, if Setwall were not at an end: whereupon some woman poet or other hath made these verses;

They that will have their heal;
Must put Setwall in their keel.

B. It is used generally in slight cuts, wounds, and small hurts.

C. The extraction of the roots given, is a most singular medicine against the difficulty of making water, and the yellow Jaundice.

D. Wild Valerian is thought of the later herbarists to be good for them that are bursten, for such as be troubled with the cramp and other convulsions, and also for all those that are bruised with falls.

E. The leaves of these and also those of the garden, are good against ulcers and soreness of the mouth and gums, if the decoction thereof be gargarized or held in the mouth.

F. Some hold opinion that the roots of wild Valerian dried and powdered, and a dram weight thereof taken with wine, do purge upward and downward.
CHAP. 441. Of Mountain Setwall, or Nardus.

The Description.

1. The Nardus named celtica, but now by some, ligustica flourisheth in high mountains. The Vallesians in their mother tongue call it Selliga; whence Gesner thought it to be Saliunca; neither do I doubt, but that it is the same which Virgil speaketh of in these verses:

\[\text{Puniceis humilis quantum Saliunca roseis}\\ \text{Judicio nostro tantum tibi cedit Amintas.}\]

["As far as the lowly Celtic nard yields to roses,\nSo far, I judge, does Amintas yield to you."
Virgil, Eclogues, V.]

For it is a very little herb creeping on the ground, and afterward lifting up itself with a stalk of a handful high, whereupon from the lower part grow small thin leaves, first green, but afterwards somewhat yellowish: upon the roughness of the root there are many scales, plaited one upon another; but under the root there are many brown strings and hairy threads, in smell like the roots of Astrabacca, or rather the wild mountain Valerian, whereof it seems to be a kind, in taste sharp and bitter. The flowers grow along the upper branches, white or yellowish, and very small.

2. The second sort of Spikenard hath many thready roots, from the which rise up many scaly rough and thick stalks, having at the top certain flat hoary leaves growing upon small and tender footstalks. The whole plant is of a pleasant sweet smell.
3. Hirculus is a plant very rare, which as yet I never saw, notwithstanding we are greatly beholden to Carolus Clusius the father of foreign simples, who finding this plant among many bunches or handfuls of mountain Spikenard, hath made it known unto posterity: as he hath done many other rare plants, in translating of Garcias the Lusitanian physician, he setteth it forth with a light description, saying, It is a base and low herb two handfuls high, bringing forth leaves without any stalks at all, very hairy about the root, and blackish, having no pleasant scent at all. The leaves chewed yield no aromatic taste; but are clammy, or viscid; whereas the leaves of Celtic Nard are hot, with a little astriction, and of a pleasant smell and taste.
4. Mountain Spikenard hath a great thick knobbed root, set here and there with some tender fibres, of a pleasant sweet smell; from the which come forth three or four smooth broad leaves, and likewise jagged leaves deeply cut even to the middle rib: among which rise up naked stalks, garnished in the middle with a tuft of jagged leaves. The flowers grow at the top of the stalks, in an umbel or tuft like those of the wild Valerian in shape and colour, and such also is the seed. I have given you the figure of the root and whole leaves as they show themselves when they first appear, as it was taken by Clusius.
5. The Spikenard of India is a low plant, growing close unto the ground, composed of many rough brown hairy cloves, of a strong, yet not unpleasant smell. The root is small and thready. It hath certainly stalks, flowers, and seeds, but none of our Indian writers or travellers have as yet described them. I have seen little pieces of slender hollow stalks some two inches long fastened to the roots that are brought to us.

6. This French Spikenard, being a bastard kind, groweth close upon the ground like the precedent, compact of scaly rough leaves: in the middle whereof cometh forth a great bush of round green stiff and rushy leaves: among the which shoot up divers round stalks a cubit high, set from the middle to the top with greenish little cuds, standing in chaffy husks like those of Schœnanth. The root is small and thready: the whole plant is altogether without smell, which showeth it to b a bastard kind of Spikenard.

The Place.

These plants [the first four] are strangers in England, growing in great plenty upon the mountains of Iudenberg and Helvetia, on the rocks among the moss, and in the mountains of Tirol and Salzburg.

The first and second, if my memory fail me not, do grow in a field in the North part of England, called Crag Close, and in the foot of the mountain called Ingleborough Fells. The fourth may be found in some gardens with us. The fifth grows in the East Indies, in the provinces of Mandou and Chito in the kingdom of Bengal and Deccan. The last grows in Provençe in France, near a little city called Ganges.
The Time.

The leaves grow to withering in September, at which time they smell more pleasantly than when they flourished and were green.

The Names.

*Nardus* is called in Pannonia or Hungary, of the country people, *Speick*: of some, *Bechi fiu*; that is, the herb of Vienna, because it doth grow there in great abundance, from whence it is brought into other countries: of Gesner, *Saliunca*: in English, Celtic Spikenard: of the Vallesians, *Selliga*, and *Nardus celtica*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Celtic Nard mightily provokes urine, as recordeth Rondeletius; who travelling through the desert country, chanced to lodge in a monastery where was a canon that could not make his water, but was presently helped by the decoction of this herb, through the advice of the said Rondeletius.

B. The true Spikenard or Indian Nard hath a heating and drying faculty, being (according to Galen) hot in the first degree [yet the Greek copy hath the third] and dry in the second. It is composed of a sufficiently astringent substance, and not much acrid heat, and a certain light bitterness. Consisting of these facultys, according to reason, both inwardly and outwardly used it is convenient for the liver and stomach.

C. It provoketh urine, helps the gnawing pains of the stomach, dries up the defluxions that trouble the belly and entrails, as also those that molest the head and breast.

D. It stays the fluxes of the belly, and those of the womb, being used in a pessary, and in a bath it helps the inflammation thereof.

E. Drunk in cold water, it helps the nauseousness, gnawings, and windiness of the stomach, the liver, and the diseases of the kidneys, and it is much used to be put into antidotes.

F. It is good to cause hair to grow on the eyelids of such as want it, and is good to be strewed up on any part of the body that abounds with superfluous moisture, to dry it up.

G. The Celtic Nard is good for all the forementioned uses, but of less efficacy, unless in the provoking of urine. It is also much used in antidotes.

H. The mountain Nard hath also the same facultys, but is much weaker than the former, and not in use at this day that I know of.
CHAP. 442. Of Lark's Heel or Larkspur.

1. The Garden Larkspur hath a round stem full of branches, set with tender jagged leaves very like unto the small Southernwood: the flowers grow amongst the stalks toward the tops of the branches, of a blue colour, consisting of five little leaves
which grow together and make one hollow flower, having a tail or spur at the end turning in like the spur of Toadflax. After come the seed, very black, like those of Leeks: the root perisheth at the first approach of winter.

2. The second Larkspur is like the precedent, but somewhat smaller in stalks and leaves; the flowers are also like in form, but of a white colour, wherein especially is the difference. These flowers are sometimes of a purple colour, sometimes white, murrey, carnation, and of sundry other colours, varying infinitely, according to the soil or country wherein they live.

3. Larkspur with double flowers hath leaves, stalks, roots, and seeds like the other single kind, but the flowers of this are double; and hereof there are as many several varieties as there be of the single kind, to wit, white, red, purple, blush, &c.

4. There is also another variety of this plant, which hath taller stalks and larger leaves than the common kind: the flowers also are more double and larger, with a lesser heel: this kind also yieldeth usually less seed than the former. The colour of the flower is as various as that of the former, being either blue, purple, white, red, or blush, and sometimes mixed of some of these.

5. The wild Larkspur hath most fine jagged leaves, cut and hacked into divers parts, confusedly set upon a small middle tendril: among which grow the flowers, in shape like the others, but a great deal lesser, sometimes purple, otherwhiles white, and often of a mixed colour. The root is small and thready.

**The Place.**

These plants are set and sown in gardens: the last groweth wild in corn fields, and where corn hath grown, but not with us, that I have yet observed; though it be frequently found in such places in many parts of Germany.
Gerard's Herbal

The Time.

They flower for the most part all summer long, from June to the end of August and oft-times after.

The Names.

Lark's Heel is called *Flos regius*: of divers, *Consolida regalis*; who make it one of the Confounds or Comfreys. It is also thought to be the *Delphinium* which Dioscorides describes in his third book; wherewith it may agree. It is reported by Gerardus of Veltwijcke, who remained lieger with the great Turk from the Emperor Charles the Fifth, that the said Gerardus saw at Constantinople a copy which had in the chapter of *Delphinium*, not leaves but flowers like dolphins: for the flowers, and especially before they be perfected, have a certain show and likeness of those dolphins, which old pictures and arms of certain ancient families have expressed with a crooked and bending figure or shape; by which sign also the heavenly dolphin is set forth. And it skilleth not, though the chapter of *Delphinium* be thought to be falsified and counterfeited; for although it be some other man's, and not of Dioscorides, it is notwithstanding some one of the old writers, out of whom it is taken, and foisted into Dioscorides his books: of some it is called *Bucinus*, or *Bucinum*: in English, Larkspur, Lark's Heel, Lark's Toes, and Lark's Claw: in High Dutch, *Ridder spooren*, that is, *Equitis calcar*, Knight's spur: in Italian, *Sperone*: in French, *Pied d'alouette*.

The Temperature.

These herbs are temperate and warm of nature.

The Virtues.

A. We find little extant of the virtues of Lark's Heel, either in the ancient or later writers, worth the noting, or to be credited; for it is set down, that the seed of Larkspur drunken is good against the stingings of scorpions; whose virtues are so forcible, that the herb only thrown before the scorpion or any other venomous beast causeth them to be without force or strength to hurt, insomuch that they cannot move or stir until the herb be taken away: with many other such trifling toys not worth the reading.
CHAP. 443. Of Gith, or Nigella.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Gith or Nigella, differing some in the colour of the flowers, others in the doubleness thereof, and in smell of the seed.
The Description.

1. The first kind of Nigella hath weak and brittle stalks of the height of a foot, full of branches, beset with leaves very much cut or jagged, resembling the leaves of Fumitory, but much greener: the flowers grow at the top of the branches, of a whitish blue colour, each flower being parted into five small leaves, star fashion: the flowers being faded, there come up small knobs or heads, having at the end thereof five or six little sharp horns or pointels, and every knob or head is divided into sundry small cells or partitions, wherein the seed is contained, which is of a blackish colour, very like unto onion seed, in taste sharp, and of an excellent sweet savour.

2. The wild Nigella hath a streaked stalk a foot or more high, beset full of greyish leaves, very finely jagged, almost like the leaves of Dill: the flowers are like the former, save that they are bluer: the cobs or knops are like the heads or husks of Columbines, wherein is contained the sweet and pleasant seed, like the former.

3. The third kind of Nigella, which is both fair and pleasant, called Damask Nigella, is very like unto the wild Nigella in his small cut and jagged leaves, but his stalk is longer: the flowers are like the former, but greater, and every flower hath five small green leaves under him, as it were to support and bear him up: which flowers being gone, there succeed and follow knops and seed like the former, but without smell or savour.

4. This in the smallness, and shape of the leaves and the manner of growing is like to the last described, having small leaves growing under the flower, which is not single, as in the last described, but double, consisting of five or more ranks of little bluish leaves, which are succeeded by such cornered heads as those of the former, having in them a black seed without any manifest smell.
5. The fifth kind of Nigella hath many small and slender stalks, set full of slender and thin leaves deeply cut or jagged, of a faint yellowish green colour: the flowers grow at the top of the stalks, of a whitish colour, and exceeding double: which being faded, there succeed bowls or knobs, full of sweet black seed like the former: the root is small and tender.

6. The root of this is slender, and yellowish; the stalk some cubit high, round, green, crested, and toward the top divided into sundry branches, the leaves toward the bottom are somewhat small cut, but somewhat larger upon the stalks. The flower is much larger than any of the former, composed of five leaves, of a light blue above, and somewhat whitish underneath, with large veins running about them: in the middle stands up the head, encompassed with black threads, and some 7 or 8 little gaping bluish flowers at the bottoms of them; the leaves of the flowers decaying, the head becomes bigger, having at the tops thereof 6, 7, or 8 longish twined horns growing in a star fashion; the inside is parted into cells containing a yellowish green, or else blackish seed. It is set forth in the *Hortus Eystettensis* by the name of *Melanthium hispanicum maius*; by Mr. Parkinson it is called *Nigella hispanica flore simplici*; and Bauhin in his *Prodromus* hath it by the name of *Nigella latifolia flore maiore simplici caeruleo*. It is an annual plant, and flowers in July; it is sometimes to be found in the gardens of our florists.

**The Place.**

The tame are sown in gardens: the wild ones do grow of themselves among corn and other grain, in divers countries beyond the seas.

**The Time.**

The seed must be sown in April: it flowereth in July and August.

**The Names.**


**The Temperature.**

The seed of the garden Nigella is hot and dry in the third degree, and of thin parts.

**The Virtues.**

A. The seed of *Nigella romana* drunk with wine is a remedy against the shortnes of breath, dissolveth and putteth forth windiness, provoketh urine, the menses, increaseth milk in the breasts of nurses if it be drunk moderately, otherwise it is not only hurtful to them, but to any that take thereof too often or in too great a quantity.
B. The seed killeth and driveth forth worms, whether it be taken with wine or water, or laid to the navel in manner of a plaster.

C. The oil that is drawn forth thereof hath the same property.

D. The seed parched or dried at the fire, brought into powder, and wrapped in a piece of fine lawn or sarsenet, cureth all murrs, catarrhs, rheums and the pose, drieth the brain, and restoreth the sense of smelling unto those which have lost it; being often smelled unto from day to day, and made warm at the fire when it is used.

E. It takes away freckles, scurfs, and hard swellings, being laid on mixed with vinegar. To be brief, as Galen saith, it is a most excellent remedy where there is need of cleansing, drying, and heating.

F. It serveth well among other sweets to put into sweet waters, bags, and odoriferous powders.
**CHAP. 444. Of Cockle.**

*Pseudomelanthium.*

Balfour Nigella, or Cockle.

![Fig. 1556. Cockle](image)

**The Description.**

Cockle is a common and hurtful weed in our corn, and very well known by the name of Cockle, which Pena calleth *Pseudomelanthium*, and *Nigellastrum*, by which names Dodonæus and Fuchsius also term it; Mutonus calleth it *Lolium*; and Tragus calleth it *Lychnoides segetum*. This plant hath straight, slender, and hairy stems, garnished with hairy and greyish leaves, which grow together by couples, enclosing the stalk round about; the flowers are of a purple colour, declining to redness, consisting of five small leaves, in proportion very like to wild Campions; when the flowers be faded there follow round knops or heads full of blackish seed, like unto the seed of *Nigella*, but without any smell or savour at all.

**The Place and Time.**

The place of his growing, and time of his flowering, are better known then desired.

**The Names.**

Cockle is called *Pseudomelanthium*, and *Nigellastrum*, wild or bastard *Nigella*: of Fuchsius, *Lolium*: of Mouton, *Lychnoides segetum*: of Tragus, *Githago*: in High Dutch, *Kornegele*: in Low Dutch, *Korn Roosen*: in French, *Nielle des Bledz*: in English, Cockle, Field Nigella, or Wild Nigella: in Italian, *Githone*: whereupon most herbarists being moved with the likeness of the word, have thought it to be the true Gith or *Melanthium*; but how far they are deceived it is better known, than needful to be confuted: for it doth not only differ in leaves from the true Gith, but also in other properties, and yet it is called Gith or *Melanthium*, and that is of the blackeness of the seed; yet not properly, but with a certain addition, that it may differ from the true
Melanthium: for Hippocrates calleth it *Melanthium ex Tritico*, of Wheat: Octavius Hortianus calleth that Gith which groweth among Corn: and for the same cause it is named of the learned of this our time *Nigellastrum*, *Gigatho*, and *Pseudomelanthium*: Ruellis saith it is called in French *Niele*, and *Flos micancalus*.

**The Temperature.**

The seed of Cockle is hot and dry in the later end of the second degree.

**The virtues.**

A. The seed made in a pessary or mother suppository, with honey put up, bringeth down the desired sickness, as Hippocrates in his book *Of Women's Diseases* doth witness.

B. Octavianus Hortianus giveth the seed parched and beaten to powder to be drunk against the yellow jaundice.

C. Some ignorant people have used the seed hereof for the seed of Darnel, to the great danger of those who have received the same: what hurt it doth among corn; the spoil unto bread, as well in colour, taste, and unwholesomeness, is better known than desired.
CHAP. 445. Of Fumitory.

There be divers herbs comprehended under the title of Fumitory; some wild, and others of the garden; some with bulbous or tuberous roots, and others with fibrous or thready roots: and first of those whose roots are nothing but strings.
The Description

1. Fumitory is a very tender little herb: the stalks thereof are slender, having as it were little knots or joints full of branches, that scarce grow up from the ground without proppings, but for the most part they grow sidelong: the leaves round about are small, cut on the edges as those of Coriander, which as well as the stalks are of a whitish green: the flowers be made up in clusters at the tops of the small branches, of a red purple colour: then rise up husks, round and little, in which lieth the small seed: the root is slender, and groweth straight down. This is also found with flowers of a purple violet colour, and also sometimes with them white.

2. The second kind of Fumitory hath many small long and tender branches, whereupon grow little leaves, commonly set together by threes or fours, in colour and taste like unto the former; having at the top of the branches many small clasping tendrils, with which it taketh hold upon hedges, bushes, and whatsoever groweth next unto it: the flowers are small, and clustering together, of a white colour, with a little spot in their middles; after which succeed cods containing the seed: the root is single, and of a finger's length.

3. The third kind of Fumitory hath a very small root, consisting of divers little strings; from which arise small and tender branches trailing here and there upon the ground, beset with many small and tender leaves most finely cut and jagged, like the little leaves of Dill, of a deep green colour tending to blueness: the flowers stand on the tops of the branches, in bunches or clusters thick thrust together, like those of the Meadow Cleaver, or Three-Leaved Grass, of a most bright red colour, and very beautiful to behold: the root is very small and thread.

4. The yellow Fumitory hath many crambling thready roots, somewhat thick, gross, and fat, like those of Asparagus: from which rise divers upright stalks a cubit high, dividing themselves toward the top into other smaller branches whereon are confusedly placed leaves like those of Thalictrum, or English Rhubarb, but lesser and thinner: amongst the tops of the branches grow yellow flowers, resembling those of Sage: which being past, there followeth small seed like unto dust.

The Place.

The Fumitories grow in corn fields among Barley and other grain; in vineyards, gardens, and such like manured places. I found the second and third growing in a corn field between a small village called Charlton and Greenwich.

The Time.

Fumitory is found with his flower in the beginning of May, and so continues to the end of summer. When it is in flower is the best time to gather it to keep dry, or to distil.

The Names.


The Temperature.

Fumitory is not hot, as some have thought it to be, but cold and something dry; it openeth and cleanseth by urine.
The Virtues.

A. It is good for all them that have either scabs or any other filth growing on the skin, and for them also that have the French disease.

B. It removeth stoppings from the liver and spleen: it purifieth the blood, and is oft times good for them that have a quartan ague.

C. The decoction of the herb is used to be given, or else the syrup that is made of the juice: the distilled water thereof is also profitable against the purposes aforesaid.

D. It is oftentimes boiled in whey, and in this manner it helpeth in the end of the spring and in summertime those that are troubled with scabs.

E. Paulus Ægineta saith that it plentifully provoketh urine, and taketh away the stoppings of the liver, and feebleness thereof; that it strengtheneth the stomach, and maketh the belly soluble.

F. Dioscorides affirmeth, that the juice of Fumitory, of that which groweth among Barley, as Ægineta addeth, with gum Arabic, doth take away unprofitable hairs that prick the eyes, growing upon the eyelids, the hairs that prick being first plucked away, for it will not suffer others to grow in their places.

G. The decoction of Fumitory drunken driveth forth by urine and siege all hot choleric burnt and hurtful humours, and is a most singular digester of salt and pituitous humours.
The Description.

1. The leaves of Great Hollow-Root are jagged and cut in sunder, as be those of Coriander, of a light greenish colour, that is to say, like the grey colour of the leaves of Columbine, whereunto they be also in form like, but lesser: the stalks be smooth, round, and slender, an handful long; about which, on the upper part stand little flowers orderly placed, long, with a little horn at the end like the flowers of Toad-Flax, of a light red tending to a purple colour: the seed lieth in flat cods, very soft and greenish when it is ready to yield up his black shining ripe seed: the root is bumped or bulbous, hollow within, and on the upper part pressed down somewhat flat, covered over with a dark yellow skin or bark, with certain strings fastened thereto, and of a bitter and austere taste.

2. The second is like unto the first in each respect, saving that it bringeth flowers of a white colour, and the other not so.

3. The Small Purple Hollow-Root hath roots, leaves, stalks, flowers, and seeds like the precedent, the especial difference is, that this plant is somewhat less.

4. The Small White Hollow-Root likewise agreeth with the former in each respect, saving that this plant bringeth white flowers, and the other not so.

5. This kind of Hollow-Root is also like the last described, saving that the flowers thereof are mixed with purple and white, which maketh it to differ from the others.
6. There is no difference in this, that can possibly be distinguished, from the last described, saving that the flowers hereof are of a mixed colour, white and purple, with some yellow in the hollowness of the same, wherein consisteth the difference from the precedent.

7. This thin leaved Hollow-Root hath likewise an hollow root, covered over with a yellow pilling, of the bigness of a tennis ball: from which shoot up leaves spread upon the ground, very like unto the leaves of Columbines, as well in form as colour, but much thinner, more jagged, and altogether lesser: among which rise up small tender stalks, weak and feeble, of an handful high, bearing from the middle thereof to the top very fine flowers, fashioned unto one piece of the Columbine flower, which resembeleth a little bird of a purple colour.

8. This other thin leaved Hollow-Root is like the precedent, saving that this plant brings forth white flowers tending to yellowness, or as it were of the colour of the field Primrose.

9. **Bunnikens Holwortele**, as the Dutch men do call it, hath many small jagged leaves growing immediately from the ground, among which rise up very slender stalks, whereon do grow such leaves as those next the ground: on the top of the branches stand fair purple flowers like unto the others of his kind, saving that the flowers hereof are as it were small birds, the bellies or lower parts whereof are of a white colour, wherein it differeth from all the rest of the Hollow-Roots.

10. The last and small Hollow-Root is like the last described, saving that it is altogether less, and the flowers hereof are of a green colour, not unlike in shape to the
flowers of Cinquefoil. This plant, whose figure our author here gave with this small description, is that which from the smell of musk is called Moschatella, by Cordus and others: it is the Denticulata of Dalechampius: the Funaria bulbosa tuberosa minima of Tabernamontanus: and the Ranunculus minimus septentrionalium herbido muscoso flore of Lobel. The root hereof is small and toothed, or made of little bulbs resembling teeth. and ending in white hairy fibres: it sendeth up divers little branches some two or three inches high: the leaves are somewhat like those of the Yellow Fumitory, or Radix cava, but much less: the flowers grow clustering on the top of the stalk, commonly five or seven together, each of them made of four yellowish green leaves with four threads in them; it flowers in April, and is to be found in divers places amongst bushes at that time, as in Kent about Chislehurst, especially in Pitts his wood, and at the further end of Cray Heath, on the left hand under a hedge among briars and brambles, which is his proper seat.

The Place

These plants do grow about hedges, briars, and in the borders of fields and vineyards, in low and fertile grounds, in Germany and the Low Countries, nevertheless the two first, and also this two last described do grow in my garden.

The Time.

These do flower in March, and their seed is ripe in April: the leaves and stalks are gone in May, and nothing remaining save only the roots, so little a while do they continue.

The Names.

Hollow-Root is called in high Dutch Holwurtz: in Low Dutch Hoolewortele, that is, Radix cava: in English, Hollow-Root, and Holewort: it is used in shops instead of Aristolochia, or Round Birthwort; which error is better known than needful to be confuted: and likewise their error is apparent, who rashly judge it to be Pistolochia or little Birthwort. It should seem the old writers knew it not; wherefore some of our later authors have made it Leontopetal species, or a kind of Lion's Turnip: others, Eriphium: and other some Thesium: most men, Capnos chelidonia: it seemeth to agree with Leontopetalon in bulbed roots, and somewhat in leaves, but in no other respects, as may be perceived by Dioscorides' and Pliny's description of Leontopetalon. And if Eriphium have his name apo to eros, that is to say of the spring, then this root may be not unproperly Eriphium, and Veris planta, or the plant of the spring, for it is evident that it appeareth and is green in the spring only: some think it hath been called Eriphium, ab Haedo, or of the Goat: but this Eriphion is quite another plant, as both Apuleius writeth, and that book also mentioneth which is attributed to Galen, and dedicated to Paternianus. In the book which is dedicated to Paternianus, there be read these words; Eriphion is an herb which is found upon high mountains: it hath leaves like Smallage, a fine flower like the Violet, and a root as great as an Onion: it hath likewise other roots which send forth roots after roots. Whereby it is evident that this root whereof we entreat is not this kind of Eriphium. Concerning Thesium the old writers have written but little: Theophrastus saith, that the root thereof is bitter and being stamped purgeth the belly. Pliny in his 2nd book, chap. 7, sheweth that the root which is called Thesium is like the bulbed plants, and is rough in taste: Athenæus citing Timachida for an author, saith, that Thesion is called a flower, of which Ariadne's garland was made. These things seem well to agree with Hollow-Root; for it is bumped or bulbous, of taste bitter and austere or something rough, which is also
thought to purge: but what certainty can be affirmed, seeing the old writers are so brief? What manner of herb Capnos chelidonia is, which groweth by hedges, and hereupon is surnamed Phragmitos, Aetius doth not expound, only the name thereof is found in his second Tetrab. the third book, chap. 110, in Martianus his Collyrium, and in his Tetrab. 3rd book, 2nd chap., among such things as strengthen the liver. But if Capnos chelidonia be that which Pliny in his 25th book, chap. 13, doth call Prima Capnos, or the first Capnos, and commendeth it for the dimness of the sight, it is plain enough that Radix cava, or the Hollow-Root, is not Capnos chelidonia: for Pliny's first Capnos is branched, and foldeth itself upon hedges: but Hollow-Root hath no such branches growing on it, and is a low herb, and is not held up with props, nor needeth them. But if Aetius his Capnos chelidonia be another herb differing from that of Pliny (which thing perchance was the cause why it should be surnamed Chelidonia) there is same reason why it should be called Capnos chelidonia; for it is somewhat like Fumitory in leaves, though greater, and, cometh up at the first spring, which is about the time when the swallows do come in; nevertheless it doth not follow, that it is true and right Capnos chelidonia, for there be also other herbs coming up at the same season, and perish in short time after, which notwithstanding are not called Chelidonia.

The Temperature.

Hollow-Root is hot and dry, yet more dry than hot, that is to say, dry in the third degree, and hot in the second; it bindeth, cleanseth, and somewhat wasteth.

The Virtues.

A. Hollow-Root is good against old and long lasting swellings of the almonds in the throat, and of the jaws: it likewise prevaieth against the pains of the hæmorrhoides, which are swollen and painful, being mixed with the ointment of Poplar buds, called ung. Populeon.

B. It is reported that a dram weight hereof being taken inwardly, doth purge by siege, and draweth forth phlegm.
CHAP. 447. Of Columbine.

The Description.

1. The Blue Columbine hath leaves like the great Celandine, but somewhat rounder, indented on the edges, parted into divers sections, of a bluish green colour, which being broken yield forth little juice or none at all: the stalk is a cubit and a half
high, slender, reddish, and slightly haired: the slender sprigs whereof bring forth every one one flower with five little hollow horns, as it were hanging forth, with small leaves standing upright, of the shape of little birds. These flowers are of colour sometimes blue, at other times of a red or purple, often white, or of mixed colors which to distinguish severally would be to small purpose, being things so familiarly known to all: after the flowers grow up cuds, in which is contained little black and glittering seed: the roots are thick, with some strings thereto belonging, which continue many years.

2. The second doth not differ saving in the colour of the flowers; for like as the others are described to be blue, so these are of a purple red, or horse-flesh colour, which maketh the difference.

3. The double Columbine hath stalks, leaves, and roots, like the former: the flowers hereof are very double, that is to say, many of those little flowers (having the form of birds) are thrust one into the belly of another, sometimes blue, often white, and other whiles of mixed colours, as nature list to play with her little ones, differing so infinitely, that to distinguish them apart would require more time than were requisite to lose: and therefore it shall suffice what hath been said for their descriptions.

4. There are also other varieties of this double kind, which have the flowers of divers or party colours, as blue and white, and white and red variously marked or spotted.
5. This kind hath the flowers with their heels or spurs turned outward or in the middle of the flower, whence it is called *Aquilina inversa*: the flowers of this are commonly reddish, or of a light or dark purple colour, and double.

6. This differs from the last in the colour of the flowers which are white, yet double, and inverted as the former.
7. The roots, leaves, and stalks of this are not unlike those of the precedent, but the flower is much different in shape; For it hath no heels or spurs, but is made of sundry long leaves lying flat open, being sometimes more single, and otherwhiles more double. The colour of the flower is either red, white, blue, or variously mixed of these as the former.

8. This though it be termed degenerate, is a kind of itself, and it differs from the last described in that the utmost leaves are the largest, and the colour thereof is commonly green, or green somewhat inclining to a purple.

The Place.

They are set and sown in gardens for the beauty and variable colours of the flowers.

The Time.

They flower in May, June, and July.

The Names.


The Temperature.

Columbines are thought to be temperate between heat and moisture.

The Virtues.

A. Notwithstanding what temperature or virtues Columbines have is not yet sufficiently known, for they are used especially to deck the gardens of the curious, garlands, and houses: nevertheless Tragus writeth, that a dram weight of the seed, with half a scruple or ten grains of Saffron given in wine, is a good and effectual medicine for the stopping of the liver, and the yellow jaundice, but, saith he, that whoso hath taken it must be well covered with clothes, and then sweat.

B. Most in these days following others by tradition, do use to boil the leaves in milk against the soreness of the throat, falling and excoriation of the uvula: but the ancient writers have said nothing hereof. Ruellius reporteth, that the flowers of Columbines are not used in medicine: yet some there be that do affirm they are good against the stopping of the liver, which effect the leaves do also perform.

C. Clusius saith, that Dr. Francis Rapard a physician of Bruges in Flanders, told him that the seed of this common Columbine very finely beaten to powder, and given in wine, was a singular medicine to be given to women to hasten and facilitate their labour, and if the first taking it were not sufficiently effectual; that then they should repeat it again.
CHAP 448. Of Wormwood.

1 Absinthium latifolium seu Ponticum.
Broad Leaved Wormwood.

2 Absinthium transulcilum Ponticum Galeni.
Small Pontic Wormwood.

The Description.

1. The first kind being our common and best known Wormwood, hath leaves of a greyish colour very much cut or jagged, and very bitter: the stalks are of woody substance, two cubits high, and full of branches; alongst which do grow little yellowish buttons, wherein is found small seed like the seed of Tansy, but smaller: the root is likewise of a woody substance, and full of fibres.

2. The second kind of Wormwood bringeth forth slender stalks about a foot high or somewhat more, garnished with leaves like the former, but whiter, much lesser, and cut or jagged into most fine and small cuts or divisions: the flowers are like the former, hanging upon small stems with their heads downward: the roots are whitish, small and many, crawling and crambling one over another, and thereby infinitely do increase, of savour less pleasant than the common Wormwood. Some have termed this plant Absinthium santonicum, but thy had slender reason so to do: for if it was so called because it was imagined to grow in the province of Saintonge, it may very well appear to the contrary: for in the Alps of Galatia, a country in Asia Minor, it groweth in great plenty, and therefore may rather be called Galatium sardonicum and not santonicum: but leaving controversies impertinent to the History, it is the Pontic Wormwood of Galen's description, and so holden of the learned Paludane (who for his singular knowledge in plants is worthy triple honour) and likewise many others.
The Place.

This Broad-Leaved Wormwood delighteth to grow on rocks and mountains, and in untilled places; it groweth much upon dry banks, it is common everywhere in all countries: the best, saith Dioscorides, is found in Pontus, Cappadocia, and on Mount Taurus: Pliny writeth, that Pontic Wormwood is better than that of Italy: and in these words doth declare that Pontic Wormwood is extreme bitter:

*Turpia deformes gignunt Absinthia campi,*  
*Terraque de fructu, quam sit amara docet.*

Untilled barren ground the loathsome Wormwood yields,  
And known it's by the fruit how bitter are the fields.

And Bellonius in his first book *Of Singularities*, chap. 76. doth show, that there is also a broad-leaved Wormwood like unto ours, growing in the Provinces of Pontus, and is used in Constantinople by the physicians there; it is likewise found in certain cold places of Switzerland, which by reason of the chillness of the air riseth not up, but creepeth upon the ground, whereupon divers call it Creeping Wormwood.

The Time.

The little flowers and seeds are perfected in July and August, then may Wormwood be gathered and laid up for profitable uses.

The Names.


2. This is commonly called *Absinthium romanum*: and in low Dutch, *Roomische Alsene*: by which name it is known to very many, physicians and apothecaries, who use this instead of Pontic Wormwood: furthermore it hath a leaf and flower far less than the other wormwoods: likewise the smell of this is not only pleasant, but it yieldeth also a spicy scent, whereas all the rest have a strong and loathsome smell: and this Pontic Wormwood doth differ from that which Dioscorides commendeth: for Dioscorides his Pontic Wormwood is accounted among them of the first kind, or of Broad-leaved Wormwood; which thing also Galen affirmeth in his sixth book *Of the Faculties of Medicines*, in the chapter of Southernwood. There be three kinds of Wormwood (saith he) whereof they use to call one by the general name, and that is especially Pontic: whereby it is manifest that Galen in this place hath referred Pontic to no other than to the first wormwood; and therefore many not without cause marvel, that Galen hath written in his book *Of the Method of Curing*, how Pontic Wormwood is less in flower and leaf: many excuse him, and lay the fault upon the corruption of the book, and in his 9th book *Of Method*, the lesser they would have the longer: therefore this wormwood with the lesser leaf is not the right Pontic Wormwood, neither again the Arabians Roman Wormwood, who have no other Roman than Pontic of the Grecians. Also many believe that this is called *Santonicum*, but this is not to be sought for in Mysia, Thracia, or other countries eastward, but in
Gerard's Herbal

France beyond the Alps, if we may believe Dioscorides: his copies there be that would have it grow not beyond the Alps of Italy, but in Galatia a country in Asia, & in the region of the Sardines, which is in the lesser Asia; whereupon it was: called in Greek Sardonion, which was changed into the name Santonicum through the error of the translators: Dioscorides his copies keep the word Sardonium, & Galen's copies Santonicum, which came to posterity as it seemeth. It is called in English, Roman Wormwood, Garden or Cyprus Wormwood, and French Wormwood.

**The Temperature.**

Wormwood is of temperature hot and dry, hot in the second degree, and dry in the third: it is bitter and cleansing, and likewise power to bind or strengthen.

**The Virtues.**

A. It is very profitable to a weak stomach that is troubled with choler, for it cleanseth it through his bitterness, purgeth by siege and urine: by reason of the binding quality, it strengtheneth and comforteth the stomach, but helpeth nothing at all to remove phlegm contained in the stomach, as Galen addeth.

B. If it be taken before a surfeit it keepeth it off, and removeth loathsomeness, saith Dioscorides, and it helpeth not only before a surfeit, but also it quickly refresheth the stomach and belly after large eating and drinking.

C. It is oftentimes a good remedy against long and lingering agues, especially tertians: for it doth not only strengthen the stomach and make an appetite to meat, but it yieldeth strength to the liver also, and rideth it of obstructions or stoppings, cleansing by urine naughty humours.

D. Furthermore, Wormwood is excellent good for them that vomit blood from the spleen, the which happeneth when the spleen being overcharged and filled up with gross blood doth unburden itself, and then great plenty of blood is oftentimes cast up by vomit. It happeneth likewise that store of black and corrupt blood mixed with excrements passeth downwards by the stool, and it oftentimes happeneth that with violent and large vomiting the sick man fainteth or swooneth, or when he is revived doth fall into a difficult and almost incurable tympany, especially when the disease doth often happen; but from these dangers Wormwood can deliver him, if when he is refreshed after vomit and his strength any way recovered, he shall a good while use it in what manner soever he himself shall think good.

E. Again, Wormwood voideth away the worms of the guts, not only taken inwardly, but applied outwardly: it withstandeth all putrefactions; it is good against a stinking breath; it keepeth garments also from the moths, it driveth away gnats, the body being anointed with the oil thereof.

F. Likewise it is singular good in poultices and fomentations to bind and to dry.

G. Besides all this Dioscorides declareth, that it is good also against windiness and gripeing pains of the stomach and belly, with Seseli and French Spikenard: the decoction cureth the yellow jaundice or the infusion, if it be drunk thrice a day some ten or twelve spoonfuls at a time.

H. It helpeth them that are strangled with eating of mushrooms or toadstools if it be drunk with vinegar.
I. And being taken with wine, it is good against the poison of *Ixia* (being a viscous matter proceeding from the thistle *Chamelion*) and of Hemlock, and against the biting of the shrew mouse, and of the Sea Dragon: it is applied to the quinsy or inflammations of the throat with honey and nitre, and with water to night wheals, and with honey to swartish marks that come upon bruises.

K. It is applied after the same manner to dim eyes, and to mattering ears.

L. Ioachimius Camerarius of Nuremberg commendeth it greatly against the jaundice, giving of the flowers of Wormwood, Rosemary, Sloes, of each a small quantity, and a little saffron, boiled in wine, the body first being purged and prepared by the learned physician.
CHAP. 449. Of Small-leaved Wormwood.

The Description.
1. Small leaved Wormwood bringeth forth very many little branches, slender, a span or a foot high, full of leaves, less by a great deal, and tenderer than the former, most finely and nicely minced; the flowers like those of the former, hang upon the little branches and sprigs; the roots are small, creeping overtwhart, from whence do rise a great number of young sprouts: this Wormwood also is somewhat white, and no less bitter than the broad leaved one, and hath not so rank, or so unpleasant a smell, but rather delightful.

The Place.
It grows plentifully in Mysia, Thrace, Hungary and Austria, and in other regions near adjoining: it is also found in Bohemia, and in many untilled places of Germany; it is a garden plant in the Low Countries, and in England.

The Time.
It bringeth forth flowers and seed in autumn: a little while after when winter cometh, the herb withereth away, but the root remaineth alive, from which leaves and stalks do come again in the spring.

The Names.
The Temperature.
Small-leaved Wormwood is of faculty hot and dry, it is as bitter also as the broad-leaved one, and of like faculty.

The Virtues.
The faculties are referred unto the common Wormwood.
CHAP. 450. Of Sea Wormwood.

The Description.

1. The white or common Sea Wormwood hath many leaves cut and divided into infinite fine jags, like those of Southernwood, of a white hoary colour and strong smell, but not unpleasant: among which rise up tough hoary stalks set with the like leaves, on the top wherof do grow small yellowish flowers; the root is tough, and creepeth far abroad, by means whereof it greatly increaseth.

2. The Broad-Leaved Sea Wormwood hath many weak slender branches commonly two foot long at their full growth, red of colour, and creeping upon the ground: the leaves are small, narrow, long and jagged, or parted towards their ends into sundry parcels: they are green above, and greyish underneath: the tops of the branches are set with many little stalks, some inch long: which upon short footstalks coming out of the bosoms of little longish narrow leaves carry small round knops, like as in other plants of this kind: the flowers grow on the tops of the stalks, of a yellowish colour; the root is tough and creeping: the taste is a little bitterish, and the smell not unpleasant. This grows with Mr Parkinson and others, and (as I remember) it was first sent over from the Isle of Rees by Mr John Tradescant. Lobel in his Observations mentions it by the name of Absinthium ponticum supinum herbariorum; and Tabernamontanus sets it forth by the title of Absinthium repens.
The Place.

These Wormwoods do grow upon the raised grounds in the salt marshes near unto the sea, in most places of England; which being brought into gardens doth there flourish as in his natural place, and retaineth his smell, taste, and natural quality, as hath been often proved. So saith our author, but I have not heard that the latter grows wild in any place with us in England.

The Time.

These bring forth flowers and seeds when the other Wormwoods do. The later scarce seeds with us, it flowers so late in the year.

The Names.

Sea Wormwood is called in Latin, *Absinthium marinum*, and likewise *seriphium*: in Dutch, *See Alsene*: of divers, *Santonicon*, as witnesseth Dioscorides: nevertheless there is another *Santonicum* differing from Sea Wormwood: in English of some women of the country, Garden Cypress.

The Temperature.

Sea Wormwood is of nature hot and dry, but not so much as the common.

The Virtues.

A. Dioscorides affirmeth, that being taken of itself, or boiled with rice, and eaten with honey, it killeth the small worms of the guts, and gently looseth the belly, the which Pliny doth also affirm.

B. The juice of sea Wormwood drunk with wine resisteth poison, especially the poison of Hemlocks.

C. The leaves stamped with figs, saltpetre and the meal of Darnel, and applied to the belly, sides, or flanks, help the dropsy, and such as are splenetic.

D. The same is singular against all inflammations, and heat of the stomach and liver, exceeding all the kinds of Wormwood for the same purposes that common Wormwood serveth.

E. It is reported by such as dwell near the sea side, that the cattle which do feed where it groweth become fat and lusty very quickly.

F. The herb with his stalks laid in chests, presses, and wardrobes, keepeth clothes from moths and other vermin.

The Description.

This Wormwood called Sementina, and Semen sanctum, which we have Englished, Holy, is that kind of Wormwood which beareth that seed which we have in use, called wormseed: in shops, Semen santolinum: about which there hath been great controversy amongst writers: some holding that the seed of Santonicum galatium to be the true wormseed: others deeming it to be that of Absinthium romanum: it doth much resemble the first of the sea Wormwoods in shape and proportion: it riseth up with a woody stalk, of the height of a cubit, divided into divers branches and wings; whereupon are set very small leaves: among which are placed clusters of seeds in such abundance, that to the first view it seemeth to be a plant consisting all of seed.

The Place.

It is a foreign plant: the seeds being sown in the gardens of hot regions do prosper well; in these cold countries it will not grow at all. Nevertheless there is one or two companions about London, who have reported unto me that they had great store of it growing in their gardens yearly, which they sold at a great price unto our London apothecaries, and gained much money thereby; one of the men dwelleth by the Bag and Bottle near London whose name is Cornewall; into whose garden I was brought to see the thing that I would not believe; for being often told that there it did grow, I still persisted it was not true: but when I did behold this great quantity of Wormwood, it was nothing else but common Amneos. How many apothecaries have been deceived, how many they have robbed of their money, and how many children have been nothing the better for taking it, I refer it to the judgement of the simplest, considering their own report, to have sold many hundred pounds weight of it; the more to their shame be it spoken and the idle wit or skill in the apothecaries: therefore
have I set down this as a caveat unto those that buy of these seeds, first to taste and try
the same before they give it to their children, or commit it to any other use. Certainly
our author was either misinformed, or the people of these times were very simple, for
I dare boldly say there is not any apothecary, or scarce any other so simple as to be
thus deceived now.

The Time.

It flowereth and bringeth forth his seed in July and August.

The Names.

The French men call it Barbotin; the Italians, Semen Zena: whereupon also the
Latin name Sementina came: the seed is called everywhere Semen sanctum, holy seed;
and Semen contra lumbricos: in English, Wormseed; the herb itself is also called
Wormseed, or Wormseed-Wort: some name it Semen Zedoariæ, Zedoary seed;
because it hath a smell somewhat resembling that of Zedoary.

The Temperature.

The seed is very bitter, and for that cause of nature hot and dry.

The Virtues.

A. It is good against worms of the belly and entrails, taken any way, and better
also if a little Rhubarb be mixed withal, for so the worms are not only killed, but
likewise they are driven down by the siege, which thing must always be regarded.

B. The seed mixed with a little Aloe succotrina, and brought to the form of a
plaster, and applied to the navel of a child doth the like.
CHAP. 452. Of Foreign and Bastard Wormwoods.

The Description.

1. *Absinthium album* hath straight and upright stalks, a foot high, beset with broad leaves, but very deeply cut or cloven, in show like unto those of the Great Daisy, but white of colour: at the top of the stalks, out of scaly heads, as in an umbel grow flowers, compact of six small white leaves: the root is long, with some fibres annexed into it.

2. This kind of Wormwood Gesner and that learned apothecary Valerandus Donraz, called *Absinthium egyptium*: the leaves of this plant are very like to the leaves of *Trichomanes*, which is our common Maidenhair, of a white colour, every small leaf standing one opposite against another, and of a strong savour.
3. This Wormwood, which Dodonæus calleth *Absinthium inodorum*, and *insipidum*, is very like unto the Sea Wormwood, in his small and tender leaves: the stalk beareth flowers also like into the foresaid Sea Wormwood, but it is of a sad or deep colour, having neither bitter taste, nor any savour at all; whereupon it was called, and that very fitly, *Absinthium inodorum*, or *Absinthium insipidum*: in English, foolish, or unsavoury wormwood. Dodonæus saith not that his *Absinthium inodorum* is like the Sea Wormwood, but that it is very like our common broad leaved Wormwood, and so indeed it is, and that so like, that it is hard to be discerned therefrom, but only by the want of bitterness and smell.

4. This kind of Sea Wormwood is a shrubby and woody plant, in face and show like to Lavender Cotton, of a strong smell, having flowers like those of the common Wormwood, at the first show like those of Lavender Cotton: the root is tough and woody.

**The Place.**

There plants are strangers in England, yet we have a few of them in herbarist's gardens.

**The Time.**

The time of their flowering and seeding is referred to the other Wormwoods.

**The Names.**

The White Wormwood Conradus Gesnerus nameth *Seriphium fœmina*, and saith, that it is commonly called *Herba alba*, or white herb: another had rather name it *Santonicum*; for as Dioscorides saith, *Santonicum* is found in France beyond the Alps
and beareth his name of the same country where it groweth, but that part of Switzerland which belongeth to France is accounted of the Romans to be beyond the Alps; and the province of Santon is far from it: for this is a part of Guienne, situate upon the coast of the ocean, beneath the flood Gironde northward: therefore Santon Wormwood, is it have his name from the Santons, groweth far from the Alps: but if it grow near adjoining to the Alps, then hath it not his name from the Santons.

**The Temperature**

White Wormwood is hot and somewhat dry.

**The Virtues.**

A. Unsavory Wormwood, as it is without smell and taste, so is it scarce of any hot quality, much less hath it any scouring faculty. These are not used in physic, where the others may be had, being as it were wild or degenerate kinds of Wormwood; some of them participating both of the form and smell of other plants.
CHAP. 453. Of Mugwort.

The Description.

1. The first kind of Mugwort hath broad leaves, very much cut or cloven like the leaves of common Wormwood, but larger, of a dark green colour above, and hoary underneath: the stalks are long and straight, and full of branches, whereon do grow small round buttons, which are the flowers, smelling like Marjoram when they wax ripe: the root is great, and of a woody substance.

2. The second kind of Mugwort hath a great thick and woody root, from whence arise sundry branches of a reddish colour, beset full of small and fine jagged leaves, very like unto Sea Southernwood: the seed groweth amongst the small twiggy branches, like unto little berries, which fall not from their branches in a long time after they be ripe. This differeth from the former, in the colour of the stalk and flowers, which are red or purplish; whereas the former is more whitish.
3. There is also another Mugwort, which hath many branches rising from a woody root, standing upright in distances one from another, of an ashy colour, beset with leaves not much unlike Sea Purslane; about the lower part of the stalks, and toward the top of the branches they are narrower and lesser, and cut with great and deep jags thick in substance, and of a whitish colour, as all the rest of the plant is: it yieldeth a pleasant smell like Abrotanum marinum, and in taste is somewhat saltish; the flowers are many, and yellow: which being faded, there followeth seed like unto that of the common Wormwood. The leaves of this plant are of two sorts; for some of them are long and narrow, like those of Lavender (whence Clusius hath called it Artemisia folio lavendulæ;) other some are cut in or divided almost to the middle rib; as you may see it expressed apart in the figure by itself, which shows both the whole, as also the divided leaves.

The Place.

The common Mugwort groweth wild in sundry places about the borders of fields, about highways, brook sides, and such like places.

Sea Mugwort groweth about Rye and Winchelsea castle, and at Portsmouth by the Isle of Wight.

The Time.

They flower in July and August.

The Names.

Mugwort is called in Greek and also in Latin Artemisia, which name it had of Artemisia Queen of Halicarnassus, and wife of noble Mausolus King Of Caria, who adopted it for her own herb: before that it was called Parthenis, as Pliny writeth.
Apuleius affirmeth that it was likewise called *Parthenion*; who hath very many names for it, and many of them are placed in Dioscorides among the bastard names: most of these agree with the right *Artemisia*, and divers of them with other herbs, which now and then are numbered among the Mugworts: it is also called *Mater Herbarum*: in High Dutch, *Beifus*, and *Sant Johannes Gurtell*: in Spanish and Italian, *Artemisia*: in French, *Armoisa*: Low Dutch, *Bijvoet*, *Sint Jans Kruyt*: in English, Mugwort, and common Mugwort.

**The Temperature.**

Mugwort is hot and dry in the second degree, and somewhat astringent.

**The Virtues.**

A. Pliny saith that Mugwort doth properly cure women's diseases.

B. Dioscorides writeth, that it bringeth down the terms, the birth, and the after-birth.

C. And that in like manner it helpeth the mother, and the pain of the matrix, to be boiled as baths for women to sit in; and that being put up with myrrh, it is of like force that the bath is of. And that the tender tops are boiled and drunk for the same infirmities, and that they are applied in manner of a poultice to the share, to bring down the monthly course.

D. Pliny saith, that the traveller or wayfaring man that hath the herb tied about him feeleth no wearisomeness at all; and that he who hath it about him can be hurt by no poisonous medicines, nor by any wild beast, neither yet by the sun itself; and also that it is drunk against opium, or the juice of black Poppy. Many other fantastical devices invented by poets are to be seen in the works of the ancient writers, tending to witchcraft and sorcery, and the great dishonour of God; wherefore I do of purpose omit them, as things unworthy of my recording, or your reviewing.

E. Mugwort pounded with oil of sweet almonds, and laid to the stomach as a plaster, cureth all the pains and griefs of the same.

F. It cureth the shakings of the joints, inclining to the palsy, and helpeth the contraction or drawing together of the nerves and sinews.
CHAP. 454. Of Southernwood.

The Kinds.

Dioscorides affirmeth that Southernwood is of two kinds, the female and the male, which are everywhere known by the names of the greater and of the lesser: besides these there is a third kind, which is of a sweeter smell, and lesser than the others, and also others of a bastard kind.

The Description.

1. The greater Southernwood by careful manuring doth oftentimes grow up in manner of a shrub, and cometh to be as high as a man, bringing forth stalks an inch thick, or more; out of which spring very many sprigs or branches, set about with leaves diversely jagged and finely indented, somewhat white, and of a certain strong smell: instead of flowers, little small clusters of buttons do hang on the sprigs, from the middle to the very top, of colour yellow, and at the length turn into seed. The root hath divers strings.

2. The lesser Southernwood growth low, full of little sprigs of a woody substance: the leaves are long, and smaller than those of the former, not so white: it beareth clustering buttons upon the tops of the stalks: the root is made of many strings.
3. The third kind is also shorter: the leaves hereof are jagged and deeply cut after the manner of the greater Southernwood, but they are not so white, yet more sweet, wherein they are like unto Lavender Cotton. This kind is very full of seed: the buttons stand alone on the sprigs, even to the very top, and be of a glittering yellow. The root is like to the rest.

4. The Unsavoury Southernwood groweth flat upon the ground, with broad leaves deeply cut or jagged in the edges like those of the common Mugwort: among which rise up weak and feeble stalks trailing likewise upon the ground, set confusedly here and there with the like leaves that grow next the ground, of a greyish or hoary colour, altogether without smell. The flowers grow along the stalks, of a yellowish colour, small and chaffy: the root is tough and woody, with some strings annexed thereto.
5. This Wild Southernwood hath a great long thick root, tough and woody, covered over with a scaly bark like the scaly back of an adder, and of the same colour: from which rise very many leaves like those of Fennel, of an overworn green colour: among which grow small twiggy branches on the tops, and amongst the stalks do grow small clustering flowers of a yellow colour: the whole plant is of a dark colour, as well leaves as stalks, and of a strong unsavoury smell.

The Place.

Theophrastus saith that Southernwood delighteth to grow in places open to the sun: Dioscorides affirmeth that it groweth in Cappadocia, and Galatia a country in Asia, and in Hierapolis a city in Syria: it is planted in gardens almost everywhere: that of Sicilia and Galatia is most commended of Pliny.

The Time.

The buttons of Southernwood do flourish and be in their prime in August, and now and then in September.

The Names.

It is called in Greek Abrotanon: the Latins and apothecaries keep the same name Abrotanum: the Italians and divers Spaniards call it Abrotano: and other Spaniards, Yerva lombriguera: in high Dutch, Sthabwurtz: in Low Dutch, Averone, and Avercrurt: the French, Avrone, and Avroesme: the Englishmen, Southernwood: it hath divers bastard names in Dioscorides; the greater kind is Dioscorides his fœmina, or female Southernwood; and Pliny his montanum, or mountain Southernwood: the mountain Southernwood we take for the female, and the champion for the male. There be notwithstanding some that take Lavender Cotton to be the Female Southernwood; grounding thereupon, because it bringeth forth yellow flowers in the top of the sprigs.
like cluster buttons: but if they had more diligently pondered Dioscorides his words, they would not have been of this opinion: the lesser Southernwood is *mas*, the male, and is also Pliny's champion Southernwood; in Latin, *campestre*. The third, as we have said, is likewise the female, and is commonly called Sweet Southernwood, because it is of a sweeter scent than the rest. Dioscorides seemeth to call this kind *Siculum*, Sicilian Southernwood.

**The Temperature.**

Southernwood is hot and dry in the end of the third degree: it hath also force to distribute and to rarify.

**The Virtues.**

A. The tops, flowers, or seed boiled, and stamped raw with water and drunk, helpeth them that cannot take their breaths without holding their necks straight up, and is a remedy for the cramp, and for sinews shrunk and drawn together; for the sciatica also, and for them that can hardly make water; and it is good to bring down the terms.

B. It killeth worms, and driveth them out: if it be drunk with wine it is a remedy against deadly poisons.

C. Also it helpeth against the stinging of scorpions and field spiders, but it hurts the stomach.

D. Stamped and mixed with oil it taketh away the shivering cold that cometh by the ague fits, and it heateth the body if it be anointed therewith before the fits do come.

E. If it be pounded with barley meal and laid to pushes it taketh them away.

F. It is good for inflammations of the eyes, with the pulp of a rotted Quince, or with crumbs of bread, and applied poultice-wise.

G. The ashes of burnt Southernwood, with some kind of oil that is of thin parts, as of *Palma Christi*, Radish oil, oil of sweet Marjoram, or Organy, cureth the pilling of the hair off the head, and maketh the beard to grow quickly: being strewed about the bed, or a fume made of it upon hot embers, it driveth away serpents: if but a branch be laid under the bed's head they say it provoketh venery.

H. The seed of Southernwood made into powder, or boiled in wine and drunk, is good against the difficulty and stopping of urine; it expelleth, wasteth, consumeth, and digesteth all cold humours, tough slime and phlegm, which do usually stop the spleen, kidneys, and bladder.

I. Southernwood drunk in wine is good against all venom and poison.

K. The leaves of Southernwood boiled in water until they be soft, and stamped with barley meal and barrow's grease unto the form of a plaster, dissolve and waste all cold tumors and swellings, being applied or laid thereto.
CHAP. 455. Of Oak of Jerusalem, and Oak of Cappadocia.

The Description.

1. Oak of Jerusalem, or *Botrys*, hath sundry small stems a foot and a half high, dividing themselves into many small branches, beset with small leaves deeply cut or jagged, very much resembling the leaf of an Oak, which hath caused our English women to call it Oak of Jerusalem; the upper side of the leaf is of deep green, and somewhat rough and hairy, but underneath it is of a dark reddish or purple colour: the seedy flowers grow clustering about the branches, like the young clusters or blowings of the Vine: the root is small and thready: the whole herb is of a pleasant smell and savour, and of a faint yellowish colour, and the whole plant dieth when the seed is ripe.

2. The fragrant smell that this kind of *Ambrosia* or Oak of Cappadocia yieldeth, hath moved the poets to suppose that this herb was meat and food for the gods: Dioscorides saith it groweth three handfuls high: in my garden it groweth to the height of two cubits, yielding many weak crooked and streaked branches, dividing themselves into sundry other small branches, having from the midst to the top thereof many mossy yellowish flowers not much unlike common Wormwood, standing one before another in good order; and the whole plant is as it were covered over with bran or a mealy dust: the flowers do change into small prickly cornered buttons, much like unto *Tribulus terrestris*; wherein is contained black round seed, not unpleasant in taste and smell: the leaves are in shape like the leaves of Mugwort, but thinner and more
tender: all the whole plant is hoary, and yieldeth a pleasant savour: the whole plant perished with me at the first approach of winter.

The Place.

These plants are brought unto us from beyond the seas, especially from Spain and Italy.

The Time.

They flower in August, and the seed is ripe in September.

The Names.

Oak of Jerusalem is called in Greek and Latin Botrys: in Italian, Botri: in Spanish, Bien Granada: in High Dutch, Trautenkraut, and Krøttencraut: in French and Low Dutch, Pyment: in English, Oak of Jerusalem; and of some, Oak of Paradise.

Oak of Cappadocia is called in Greek and Latin, Ambrosia; neither hath it any other known name. Pliny saith that Ambrosia is a wandering name, and is given unto other herbs: for Botrys (Oak of Jerusalem, as we have written) is of divers also called Ambrosia: In English it is called Oak of Cappadocia.

The Temperature.

These plants are hot and dry in the second degree, and consist of subtle parts.

The Virtues.

A. These plants be good to be boiled in wine, and ministered unto such as have their breasts stopped, and are short winded, and cannot easily draw their breath; for they cut and waste gross humours and tough phlegm. The leaves are of the same force; being made up with sugar they commonly call it a conserve.

B. It giveth a pleasant taste to flesh that is sodden with it, and eaten with the broth.

C. It is dried and laid among garments, not only to make them smell sweet, but also to preserve them from moths and other vermin; which thing it doth also perform.
CHAP. 456. Of Lavender Cotton.

Lavender Cotton bringeth forth clustered buttons of a golden colour, and of a sweet smell, and is often used in garlands and deck ing up of gardens and houses. It hath a woody stock, out of which grow forth branches like little boughs, slender, very many, a cubit long, set about with little leaves, long, narrow, purled, or crumpled; on the tops of the branches stand up flowers, one alone on every branch, made up with short threads thrust close together, like to the flowers of Tansy, and to the middle buttons of the flowers of Camomile, but yet something broader, of colour yellow, which be changed into seed of an obscure colour. The root is of a woody substance. The shrub itself is white both in branches and leaves, and hath a strong sweet smell.

There are same varieties of this plant, which Matthiolus, Lobel, and others refer to Abrotanum faemina, and so call it; and by the same name our author gave the figure thereof in the last chapter save one, though the description did not belong thereto, as I have formerly noted. Another sort thereof our author, following Tabernamontanus and Lobel, set forth a little before by the name of Absinthium marinium abrotani faeminae facie, that Dodonæus calls Santolina prima; and this here figured, Santolina altera. He also mentioneth three other differences thereof, which chiefly consist in the leaves; for his third hath very short and small leaves like those of Heath; whence Bauhin calls it Abrotanum faemina foliis ericae. The fourth hath the leaves less toothed, and more like to Cypress, hence it is called in the Adversaria, Abrotanum peregrinum cupressi foliis. The fifth hath not the stalks growing upright, but creeping: the leaves are toothed, more thick and hoary than the rest; in other respects alike. Bauhin calls it Abrotanum faemina repens canescens.
The Place.
Lavender Cotton growtheth in gardens almost everywhere.

The Time.
They flower in July and August.

The Names.
They are called by one name Santolina, or Lavender Cotton: of most, Chamecyparissus. But Pliny concerning Chamecyparissus is so short and brief, that by him their opinions can neither be rejected nor received.

They are doubtless much deceived that would have Lavender Cotton to be Abrotanum fœmina, or the female Southernwood: and likewise they are in the wrong who take it to be Seriphium, Sea Wormwood; and they who first set it abroach to be a kind of Southernwood we leave to their errors; because it is not absolutely to be referred to one, but a plant participating of Wormwood and Southernwood.

The Temperature.
The seed of Lavender Cotton hath a bitter taste, being hot and dry in the third degree.

The Virtues.
A. Pliny saith, that the herb Chamaecyparissus being drunk in wine is a good medicine against the poisons of all serpents and venomous beasts.

B. It killeth worms either given green or dry, and the seed hath the same virtue against worms, but avoideth them with greater force. It is thought to be equal with the usual worm-seed.
CHAP. 457. Of Sperage, or Asparagus.

1. The first being the manured or garden Sperage, hath at his first rising out of the ground thick tender shoots very soft and brittle, of the thickness of the greatest swan's quill, in taste like unto the green bean, having at the top a certain scaly soft bud, which in time growtheth to a branch of the height of two cubits, divided into divers other smaller branches, whereon are set many little leaves like hairs, more fine than the leaves of Dill: among which come forth small mossy yellowish flowers, which yield forth the fruit, green at the first, afterward red as Coral, of the bigness of a small pea; wherein is contained gross blackish seed exceeding hard, which is the cause that it lieth so long in the ground after the sowing, before it do spring up. The roots are many thick soft and spongy strings hanging down from one head, and spread themselves all about, whereby it greatly increaseth.

2. We have in our marsh and low grounds near unto the sea, a Sperage of this kind, which differeth a little from that of the garden, and yet in kind there is no difference at all, but only in manuring, by which all things or most things are made more beautiful, and larger. This may be called Asparagus palustris, Marsh Sperage.

3. Stone or Mountain Sperage is one of the wild ones, set forth under the title of Corruda, which Lobel calleth Asparagus petraeus; and Galen, Myacanthinus, that doth very well resemble those of the garden, in stalks, roots, and branches, saving that those fine hairy leaves which are in the garden Sperage be soft, blunt, and tender; and in this wild Sperage, sharp hard and pricking thorns, though they be small and
slender: the fruit hereof is round, of the bigness of a pea, and of a black colour; the roots are long, thick, fat, and very many.

4. This fourth kind differeth from the last described, being a wild Sperage of Spain and Hungary: the plant is altogether set with sharp thorns (three or four coming forth together) as are the branches of Whins, Gorse, or Furze: the fruit is black when it is ripe, and full of a greenish pulp, wherein lie hard and black seeds, sometimes one, otherwhiles two in a berry; the roots are like the others, but greater and tougher.

5. Carolus Clusius describeth also a certain wild Sperage with sharp prickles all alone the stalks, orderly placed at every joint one, hard, stiff, and whitish, the points of the thorns pointing downward: from the which joints also do grow out a few long green leaves fastened together, as also a little yellow flower, and one berry, three-cornered, and of a black colour, wherein is contained one black seed, seldom more: the roots are like the other.
6. *Drypis* being likewise a kind hereof, hath long and small roots, creeping in the ground like Couch grass; from which spring up branches a cubit high, full of knotty joints: the leaves are small like unto Juniper, not much differing from *Corruda* or *Nepa*: the flowers grow at the top of the stalk in spoky tufts or roundels, of a white colour, closely thrust together: the seed before it be taken out of the husk is like unto Rice; being taken out, like that of Melilot, of a saffron colour.

**The Place.**

The first being our garden Asparagus groweth wild in Essex, in a meadow adjoining to a mill, beyond a village called Thorpe; and also at Singleton not far from Carby, and in the meadows near Moulton in Lincolnshire. Likewise it groweth in great plenty near unto Harwich, at a place called Bandamar Lading, and at North Moulton in Holland, a part of Lincolnshire.

The wild Sperages grow in Portugal and Biscay among stones, one of the which Petrus Bellonius doth make mention to grow in Candy, in his first book *Of Singularities*, cap. 18.

**The Time.**

The bare naked tender shoots of Sperage spring up in April, at what time they are eaten in salads; they flower in June and July; the fruit is ripe in September.

**The Names.**

The garden Sperage is called in Greek and Latin likewise *Asparagus*: in shops, Sparagus, and Speragus: in High Dutch, *Spargen*: in Low Dutch, *Asparges*, and *Coralcrupy*: that is to say, *Herba coralli*, or Coral-Wort, of the red berries, which bear the colour of Coral: in Spapish, *Asparragos*: in Italian, *Asparago*: in English, Sperage, and likewise Asparagus, after the Latin name: in French, *Asperges*. It is named *Asparagus* of the excellency, because *asparagi*, or the springs hereof are preferred before those of other plants whatsoever; for this Latin word *Asparagus* doth properly
signify the first spring or sprout of every plant, especially when it is tender and before
it do grow into a hard stalk, as are the buds, tendrils, or young springs of wild Vine or
hops, and such like.

Wild Sperage named in Latin *Asparagus sylvestris*, and *Corruda*.

**The Temperature.**

The roots of the garden Sperage, and also of the wild, do cleanse without
manifest heat and dryness.

**The Virtues.**

A. The first sprouts or naked tender shoots hereof be oftentimes sodden in
flesh broth and eaten, or boiled in fair water, and seasoned with oil, vinegar, salt, and
pepper, then are served at men's tables for a salad; they are pleasant to the taste, easily
concocted, and gently loose the belly.

B. They somewhat provoke urine, are good for the kidneys and bladder, but
they yield unto the body little nourishment, and the same moist, yet not faulty: they
are thought to increase seed, and stir up lust.
CHAP. 458. Of Horsetail, or Shavegrass.

1. Great Horsetail riseth up with a round stalk, hollow within like a Reed, a cubit high, compact as it were of many small pieces, one put into the end of another, sometimes of a reddish colour, very rough, and set at every joint with many stiff rush-like leaves or rough bristles, which maketh the whole plant to resemble the tail of a horse, whereof it took his name: on the top of the stalk do stand instead of flowers clustered and thick catkins, not unlike to the first shoots of Sperage, which is called Myacantha: the root is jointed, and creepeth in the ground.

2. This small or naked Shave-grass, wherewith fletchers and comb-makers do rub and polish their work, riseth out of the ground like the first shoots of Asparagus, jointed or kneed by certain distances like the precedent, but altogether without such bristly leaves, yet exceeding rough and cutting: the root growth aslope in the earth, like those of the Couch-grass.
3. Horsetail which for the most part growth among corn, and where corn hath been, hath a very slender root, and single; from which rise up divers jointed stalks, whereon do grow very long rough narrow jointed leaves, like unto the first described, but thicker and rougher, as is the rest of the plant.
4. Water Horsetail, that grows by the brinks of rivers and running streams, and often in the midst of the water, hath a very long root, according to the depth of the water, gross, thick, and jointed, with some threads annexed thereto: from which riseth up a great thick jointed stalk, whereon do grow long rough rushy leaves, pyramid or steeple fashion. The whole plant is also tough, hard, and fit to shave and rub wooden things as the other.

5. This kind of Horsetail that grows in woods and shadowy places, hath a small root, and single, from which riseth up a rough chamfered stalk jointed by certain spaces, having at each joint two e of rough bristly leaves set one against another like the other of his kind.

6. The female Horsetail groweth for the most part in waterish places, and on the brinks of small rills and purling brooks; it hath a long root like that of Couch Grass, from which rise up divers hollow stalks, set about at certain distances with small leaves in roundels like those of Woodruff, altogether barren of seed and flower, whereof it was called by Lobel, *Polygona fœmine semine vidua*. So sayeth our author, but it is sometimes found with ten or more seeds at each joint; whence Bauhin hath called it *Equisetum palustre brevioribus foliis polyspermon*.

7. In some boggy places of this kingdom is found a rare and pretty *Hippuris* or Horsetail, which grows up with many little branches, some two or three inches high, putting forth at each joint many little leaves, clustering close about the stalk, and set after the manner of other Horsetails: towards the tops of the branches the joints are very thick: the colour of the whole plant is grey, a little inclining to green, very brittle, and as it were stony or gravelly like Coralline, and will crash under your feet, as if it were frozen; and if you chew it, you shall find it all stony or gravelly. My friend Mr Leonard Buckner was the first that found this plant, and brought it to me; he had it three miles beyond Oxford, a little on this side Evansham ferry, in a bog upon a common by the Beacon hill near Cummer-wood, in the end of August, 1632. Mr Bowles hath since found it growing upon a bog not far from Chislehurst in Kent. I question whether this be not the *Hippuris lacustris quædam foliis mansu arenolis* of Gesner: but if Gesner's be that which Bauhin in his *Prodromus*, pag. 24. sets forth by the name of *Equisetum nudum minus variegatum*, then I judge it not to be this of my description: for Bauhin's differs from this in that it is without leaves, and oft times bigger: the staks of his are hollow, these not so: this may be called *Hippuris coralloides*; Horsetail Coralline.

8. Towards the later end of the year, in divers ditches, as in Saint James his Park, in the ditches on the back of Southwark towards Saint George's fields, &c. you may find covered over with water a kind of stinking Horsetail: it grows sometimes a yard long, with many joints and branches, and each joint set with leaves, as in the other Horsetails, but they are somewhat jagged or divided towards the tops. I take this to be the *Equisetum fætidum sub aqua repens*, described in the first place of Bauhin his *Prodromus*: we may call it in English, Stinking Water Horsetail.
9. Clusius hath set forth a plant, that he referreth unto the stock of Horsetails, which he thus describeth: it hath many twiggy or rushy stalks, whereupon it was called *Iuncaria*: and may be Englished, Rush-Weed: the leaves grow upon the branches like those of Flax: on the tops of the stalks grow small chaffy flowers of a whitish colour. The seed is small, and black of colour. The root is little and white: the whole plant is sweetish in taste.

10. Dodonæus setteth forth another Horsetail, which he called climbing Horsetail, or Horsetail of Olympus. There is (saith he) another plant like Horsetail, but greater and higher. It riseth up oftentimes with a stalk as big as a man's arm, divided into many branches: out of which there grow long slender sprigs very full of joints, like to the first Horsetail. The flowers stand about the joints, of a mossy substance, small as are those of the Cornel tree; in place whereof grow up red fruit full of some juice, not unlike to little Mulberries, in which is the seed. The root is hard and woody. This grows now and then to a great height, and sometimes lower. Bellonius writeth in his *Singularities*, that it hath been seen to be equal in height with the Plane tree: it cometh up lower, near to shorter and lesser trees or shrubs, yet doth it not fasten itself to the trees with any tendrils or clasping aglets; much less doth it wind itself about them, yet doth it delight to stand near and close unto them.

The Place.

The titles and descriptions show the place of their growing: the last Bellonius reporteth to grow in divers valleys of the mountain Olympus, and not far from Ragusa a city in Slavonia.

The Time.

They flower from April to the end of summer.
Gerard's Herbal

The Names.


Shave-grass is not without cause named Asprella, of his ruggedness, which is not unknown to women, who scour their pewter and wooden things of the kitchen therewith: which the German women call Rannenkraut: and therefore some of our housewives do call it Pewterwort. Of some the tenth is called Ephedra, Anobasis, and Caucon.

The Temperature.

Horsetail, as Galen saith, hath a binding faculty, with some bitterness, and therefore it doth mightily dry, and that without biting.

The Virtues.

A. Dioscorides saith, that Horsetail being stamped and laid to, doth perfectly cure wounds, yea though the sinews be cut in sunder, as Galen addeth. It is of so great and so singular a virtue in healing of wounds, as that it is thought and reported for truth, to cure the wounds of the bladder, and other bowels, and helpeth ruptures or burstings.

B. The herb drunk either with water or wine, is an excellent remedy against bleeding at the nose, and other fluxes of blood. It stayeth the overmuch flowing of women's flowers, the bloody flux, and the other fluxes of the belly.

C. The juice of the herb taken in the same manner can do the like, and more effectually.

D. Horsetail with his roots boiled in wine, is very profitable for the ulcers of the kidneys & bladder, the cough and difficulty of breathing.

The Description.

1. Small Sea Grape is not unlike to Horsetail: it bringeth forth slender stalks, almost like rushes, set with many little joints, such as those are of the Horsetail, and divided into many wings and branches; the tops whereof are sharp pointed, somewhat hard and pricking: it is without leaves: the flowers grow in clusters out of the joints, with little stems, they are small and of a whitish green colour: the fruit consisteth of many little pearls, like to the unripe berries of Raspis or Hindberry: when it is ripe it is red with a saffron colour, in taste sweet and pleasant: the seed or kernel is hard, three square, sharp on every side, in taste binding: the root is jointed, long, and creeps aslope: the plant itself also doth rather lie on the ground than stand up: it groweth all full of small stalks and branches, casting themselves all abroad.
2. Carolus Clusius hath set forth another sort of Sea Grape, far different from the precedent; it riseth up to the height of a man, having many branches of a woody substance, in form like to Spanish Broom, without any leaves at all: whereupon do grow clusters of flowers upon slender footstalks, of a yellowish mossy or herby colour, like those of the Cornel tree: after which come the fruit like unto the mulberry, of a reddish colour and sour taste, wherein lie hid one or two seeds like those of Millet, black without, and white within; the root is hard, tough, and woody.

3. *Tragon matthioli*, or rather *Tragos improbus matthioli*, which he unadvisedly called *Tragon*, is without controversy nothing else but a kind of *Kali*: this plant riseth up out of the ground with stalks seldom a cubit high, divided into sundry other gross, thick, and wirthing branches, set, or armed with many pricking leaves, of the colour and shape of *Aizoon*, and somewhat thick and fleshy: among which come forth such prickly burs, as are to be seen in *Tribulus terrestris*, as that it is hard for a man to touch any part thereof without pricking of the hands: the flowers are of an herby colour, bringing forth flat seed like unto *Kali*: the root is slender, and spreadeth under the turf of the earth: the whole plant is full of clammy juice, not anything astringent, but somewhat saltish, and of no singular virtue that is yet known: wherefore I may conclude, that this cannot be *Tragos dioscoridis*, and the rather, for that this *Tragon* of Matthiolus is an herb, and not a shrub, as I have before spoken in *Uva marina*, neither beareth it any berries or grains like wheat, neither is it pleasant in taste and smell, or anything astringent, all which are to be found in the right *Tragos* before expressed; which (as Dioscorides saith) is without leaves, neither is it thorny as *Tragus improbus matthioli* is: this plant I have found growing in the Isle of Sheppey, in the tract leading to the house of Sir Edward Hobby, called Sherland.
The Place.

It loveth to grow upon dry banks and sandy places near to the sea: it is found in Languedoc, not far from Montpellier, and in other places by the sea side, and is a stranger in England.

The Time.

When it groweth of itself the fruit is ripe in autumn, the plant itself remaineth long green, for all the cold in winter.

The Names.

It is called of the later herbarists, *Uva Marina*: in French, *Raisin de mer*, of the pearled fruit, and the likeness that it hath with the Raspis berry, which is as it were a Raisin or Grape, consisting of many little ones: it is named in Greek Tragos, but it is not called Tragos, or Traganos, of a goat (for so signifieth the Greek word) or of his rank and rammish smell, but because it bringeth forth fruit fit to be eaten, of the verb Trogein, which signifieth to eat: it may be called Scorpion, because the sprigs thereof are sharp pointed like to the Scorpion's tail.

The Temperature.

The berries or raisins, and especially the seed that is in them have a binding quality, as we have said, and they are dry in the later end of the second degree.

The Virtues.

A. Dioscorides writeth, that the raisins of Sea Grape do stay the flux, and also the whites in women, when they much abound.
CHAP. 460. Of Madder.

The Kinds

There is but one kind of Madder only which is manured or set for use, but if all those that are like unto it in leaves and manner of growing were referred thereto, there should be many sorts: as Goose-Grass, Soft Cleaver, Our Lady's Bedstraw, Woodruff, and Crosswort, all which are like to Madder in leaves, and therefore they be thought to be wild kinds thereof.

The Description.

1. The garden or manured Madder hath long stalks or trailing branches dispersed far abroad upon the ground, square, rough, and full of joints; at every joint set round with green rough leaves, in manner of a star, or as those of Woodruff: the flowers grow at the top of the branches, of a faint yellow colour: after which come the seed, round, green at the first, afterward red, and lastly of a black colour: the root long, fat, full of substance, creepeth far abroad within the upper crust of the earth, and is of a reddish colour when it is green and fresh.

2. Wild Madder is like in form unto that of the garden, but altogether smaller, and the leaves are not so rough, but smooth and shining: the flowers are white; the root is very small and tender, and oftentimes of a reddish colour.
3. Sea Madder hath a root two foot long, with many dry threads hanging thereat, of a reddish colour like Alkanet, on the outside of the same form and bigness, but within it of the colour of the scrapings of Juniper, or Cedar wood, sending forth divers slender stalks round and full of joints: from which come forth small thin leaves, stiff and sharp pointed, somewhat hairy, in number commonly four, standing like a Burgundian cross; from the bosom of which come forth certain tufts of smaller leaves thrust together upon a heap: the flowers grow at the top of the stalks, of a pale yellowish colour.

*Rubia spicata cretica clusii.*

4. This hath proceeding from the root many knotty four-square rough little stalks, a foot high, divided immediately from the root into many branches, having but one side branch growing forth of one joint: about which joints grow spread abroad four or five, sometimes six narrow, short, sharp pointed leaves, somewhat rough; the top of the stalks and branches are nothing but long small four square spikes or ears, made of three-leaved green husks: out of the top of each husk groweth a very small greenish yellow flower, having four exceeding small leaves scarce to be seen: after which followeth in each husk one small blackish seed, somewhat long, round on the one side, with a dent or hollowness on the other. The root is small, hard, woody, crooked or scragged, with many little branches or threads, red without, and white within, and perisheth when the seeds are ripe. July 19, 1621.

*Synanchia Lug. p. 1185.*

5. The root is crooked, blackish without, yellow underneath the skin, white within that and woody; about five or six inches long, with many hairy strings: from
the root arise many four-square branches trailing upon the ground, sometimes reddish towards the root: the leaves are small and sharp pointed, like those of Gallium, and grow along the stalk, on certain knees or joints, four or five together, sometimes fewer: from those joints the stalk divideth itself towards the top into many parts, whereon grow many flowers, each flower having four leaves, sometimes white, sometimes of a flesh colour, and every leaf of these flesh coloured leaves is artificially streaked in the middle, and near the sides with three lines of a deeper red, of no pleasant smell: after which cometh the seed something round, growing two together like stones. It flowereth all the summer long, and groweth in dry chalky grounds abundantly. August 13, 1619. John Goodyer.

Fig. 1600. Dwarf Madder (6)

6. Lobel thus describes this Dwarf Madder: there is another (saith he) which I gathered, growing upon Saint Vincent's Rocks not far from Bristol: the leaves are of the bigness of those of Rupturewort, sharp pointed, and growing after the manner of those of Madder, upon little creeping stalks, some inch and half high, whereon grow yellowish small flowers. The root is small, and of the colour of coral.

The Place.

Madder is planted in gardens, and is very common in most places of England. Master George Bowles found it growing wild on Saint Vincent's Rock; and out of the cliffs of the rocks at Aberdovy in Merionethshire.

The second groweth in moist meadows, in moorish grounds, and under bushes almost everywhere.

3. This grows by the sea side in most places.

The fourth grows only in some few gardens with us, but the fifth may be found wild in many places: I found it in great plenty on the hill beyond Chatham in the way to Canturbury.

The Time.

They flourish from May unto the end of August: the roots are gathered and dried in autumn, and sold to the use of dyers and medicine.
The Names.


The Temperature.

Of the temperature of Madder, it hath been disputed among the learned, and as yet not censured, whether it do bind or open: some say both; divers diversely deem: a great physician (I do not say the great learned) called me to account as touching the faculties hereof; although he had no commission so to do, notwithstanding I was content to be examined upon the point, what the nature of Madder was, because I have written that it performeth contrary effects, as shall be showed: the roots of Madder, which both the physicians and dyers do use, as they have an obscure binding power and force; so be they likewise of nature and temperature cold and dry: they are withal of divers thin parts, by reason whereof their colour doth easily pierce: yet have they at the first a certain little sweetness, with an harsh binding quality presently following it; which not only we ourselves have observed, but Avicenna the prince of physicians, who in his 58th Chapter hath written, that the root of Madder hath a rough and harsh taste: now Mr Doctor, whether it bind or open I have answered, attending your censure: but if I have erred, it is not with the multitude, but with those of the best and best learned.

The Virtues.

A. The decoction of the roots of Madder is everywhere commended for those that are bursten, bruised, wounded, and that are fallen from high places.

B. It stancheth bleeding, mitigateth inflammations, and helpeth those parts that be hurt and bruised.

C. For these causes they be mixed with potions, which the later physicians call wound drinks, in which there is such force and virtue, as Matthiolus also reporteth, that there is likewise great hope of curing of deadly wounds in the chest and entrails.

D. Our opinion and judgement is confirmed by that most expert man, sometimes physician of Louvain, *Iohannes Spiringus*, who in his *Rapsodes* hath noted, that the decoction of Madder given with *Triphera*, that great composition is singular good to stay the reds, the hemorrhoids and bloody flux, and the same approved by divers experiments: which confirmeth Madder to be of an astringent and binding quality.

E. Of the same opinion as it seemeth is also Eros Julia her freed man (commonly called Trotula) who in a composition against untimely birth doth use the same: for if he had thought that Madder were of such a quality as Dioscorides writeth it to be of, he would not in any wise have added it to those medicines which are good against an untimely birth.

F. For Dioscorides reporteth, that the root of Madder doth plentifully provoke urine, and that gross and thick and oftentimes blood also, and it is so great an opener, that being but only applied, it bringeth down the menses, the birth, and after-birth: but the extreme redness of the urine deceived him, that immediately followeth the taking
of Madder, which redness came as he thought, from blood mixed therewith, which notwithstanding cometh no otherwise then from the colour of the Madder.

G. For the root hereof taken any manner of way doth by & by make the urine extreme red: no otherwise than Rhubarb doth make the same yellow, not changing in the meantime the substance thereof, not making it thicker than it was before, which is to be understood in those which are in perfect health, which thing doth rather show that it doth not open, but bind; no otherwise than Rhubarb doth: for by reason of his binding quality the waterish humours do for a while keep their colour. For colours mixed with binding things do longer remain in the things coloured, and do not so soon fade: this thing they will know that gather colours out of the juices of flowers and herbs, for with them they mix alum, to the end that the colour may be retained and kept the longer, which otherwise would be quickly lost. By these things it manifestly appeareth that Madder doth nothing vehemently either cleanse or open, and that Dioscorides hath rashly attributed unto it this kind of quality, and after him Galen and the rest that followed, standing stiffly to his opinion.

H. Pliny saith, that the stalks with the leaves of Madder, are used against serpents.

I. The root of Madder boiled in mead or honeyed water, and drunken, openeth the stopping of the liver, the milt and kidneys, and is good against the jaundice.

K. The same taken in like maner provoketh urine vehemently, insomuch that the often use thereof causeth one to piss blood, as some have dreamed.

L. Longius and other excellent physicians have experimented the same to amend the loathsome colour of the King's evil, and it helpeth the ulcers of the mouth, if unto the decoction be added a little alum and honey of Roses.

M. The fifth being the Synanchica of Dalechampius, dries without biting, and it is excellent against squinancies, either taken inwardly, or applied outwardly, for which cause they have called it Synanchica; Hist. Lugd.
CHAP. 461. Of Goose-Grass, or Cleavers.

The Description.

1. *Aparine*, Cleavers or Goose-Grass, hath many small square branches, tough and sharp, full of joints, beset at every joint with small leaves star fashion, and like unto small Madder: the flowers are very little and white, perching on the tops of the sprigs: the seeds are small, round, a little hollow in the midst in manner of a navel, set for the most part by couples: the roots slender and full of strings: the whole plant is rough, and his ruggedness taketh hold of men's vestures and woollen garments as they pass by: being drawn along the tongue it fetcheth blood: Dioscorides reports, that the shepherds instead of a colander do use it to take hairs out of milk, if any remain therein.

2. The great Goose-Grass of Pliny is one of the Moonworts of Lobel, it hath a very rough tender stalk, whereupon are set broad leaves somewhat long, like those of Scorpion grass, or *Alysson galeni*, Gale's Moonwort, very rough and hairy, which grow not about the joints, but three or four together on one side of the stalk: the flowers grow at the top of the branches, of a blue colour: after which cometh rough cleaving seeds, that do stick to men's garments which touch it: the root is small and single.

The Place.

Goose-Grass groweth near the borders of fields, and oftentimes in the fields themselves mixed with the corn: also by common ways, ditches, hedges, and among
Gerard's Herbal

thorns: Theophrastus and Galen write, that it groweth among Lentils, and with hard embracing it doth choke it, and by that means is burdensome and troublesome unto it.

The Time.
It is found plentifully everywhere in summer time.

The Names.
It is named in Greek Apparine: in Latin, Lappa minor, but not properly: Pliny affirmeth it to be Lappaginis speciem: of some, Philanthropos, as though he should say, a man's friend, because it taketh hold of men's garments; of divers also for the same cause Philadelphos: in Italian, Speronella: in Spanish, Presera, or Amor de Hortalano: in High Dutch Kleeb kraut: in French, Reble, ou Grateron: in low Dutch, Kleefcrupt: in English, Goose-Share, Goose-Grass, Cleaver, or Claver.

The Temperature.
It is, as Galen saith, moderately hot and dry, and somewhat of thin parts.

The Virtues.
A. The juice which is pressed out of the seeds, stalks, and leaves, as Dioscorides writeth, is a remedy for them that are bitten of the poisonous spiders called in Latin Phalangia, and of vipers if it be drunk with wine.

B. And the herb stamped with swine's grease wasteth away the kernels by the throat.

C. Pliny teacheth that the leaves being applied do also stay the abundance of blood issuing out of wounds.

D. Women do usually make pottage of Cleavers with a little mutton and oatmeal, to cause lankness, and keep them from fatness.
CHAP. 462. Of Crosswort.

The Description.

1. Crosswort is a low and base herb, of a pale green colour, having many square feeble rough stalks full of joints or knees, covered over with a soft down: the leaves are little, short, & small, always four growing together, and standing crosswise one right against another, making a right Burgundian cross: toward the top of the stalk, and from the bosom of those leaves come forth very many small yellow flowers, of a reasonable good savour, each of which is also shaped like a Burgundian cross: the roots are nothing else but a few small threads or fibres.

2. This in mine opinion may be placed here as fitly as any where else; for it hath the leaves standing crossways four at a joint, somewhat like those of the largest Chickweed: the stalks are between a foot and a half and two cubits high. The white star-fashioned flowers stand in roundels about the tops of the stalks. It grows plentifully in Piedmont, on the hills not far from Turin. Lobel sets it forth by the name of *Rubia lævis taurinensium*.

The Place.

*Cruciata*, or Crosswort, groweth in moist and fertile meadows; I found the same growing in the churchyard of Hampstead near London, and in a pasture adjoining thereto, by the mill: also it groweth in the lane or highway beyond Charlton, a small village by Greenwich, and in sundry other places.
Gerard's Herbal

The Time
It flowereth for the most part all summer long.

The Names.
It is called *Cruciata*, and *Cruciatis*, of the placing of the leaves in manner of a Cross: in English, Crosswort, or Golden Mugweed.

The Temperature.
Crosswort seemeth to be of a binding and dry quality.

The Virtues.

A. Crosswort hath an excellent property to heal, join, and close wounds together, yea it is very fit for them, whether they be inward or outward, if the said herb be boiled in wine and drunk.

B. The decoction thereof is also ministered with good success to those that are bursten: and so is the herb, being boiled until it be soft, and laid upon the bursten place in manner of a poultice.
CHAP. 463. Of Woodruff.

The Description.

1. Woodruff hath many square stalks full of joints, and at every knot or joint seven or eight long narrow leaves, set round about like a star, or the rowel of spur; the flowers grow at the top of the stems, of a white colour, and of a very sweet smell, as is the rest of the herb, which being made up into garlands or bundles, and hanged up in houses in the heat of summer, doth very well attemper the air, cool and make fresh the place, to the delight and comfort of such as are therein.

2. There is another sort of Woodruff called *Asperula caerulea*, or blue Woodruff: it is an herb of a foot high, soft, hairy, and something branched, with leaves & stalks like those of white Woodruff; the flowers thereof are blue, standing upon stems on the tops of the stalks: the seed is small, round, and placed together by couples: the root is long, and of a red colour.
3. There is another herb called *Saginae spergula*, or Spurrey, which is sown in Brabant, Holland, and Flanders, of purpose to fatten cattle, and to cause them to give much milk, and there called Spurrey, and Frank Spurrey: it is a base and low herb, very tender, having many jointed stalks, whereupon do grow leaves set in round circles like those of Woodruff, but lesser and smoother, in form like the rowel of a spur: at the top of the stalks do grow small white flowers, after which come round seed like those of Turnips: the root is small and thready.

4. There are one or two plants more, which may fitly be here mentioned: the first of them is the *Spergula marina* of Dalechampius, which from a pretty large woody and roughish root sends up jointed stalks some foot long: at each joint come forth two long thick round leaves, and out of their bosoms other lesser leaves: the top of the stalks is divided into sundry branches, bearing flowers of a faint reddish colour, composed of five little leaves, with yellowish threads in the middle; after which follow cups or seed vessels, which open into four parts, and contain a little flat reddish seed: it grows in the salt marshes about Dartford, and other such places; flowers in July and August, and in the mean space ripens the seed. We may call this in English, Sea Spurrey.

5. This other hath a large root, considering the smallness of the plant: from which arise many weak slender branches some three or four inches long, sometimes more, lying commonly flat on the ground, having many knots or joints: at each whereof usually grow a couple of white scaly leaves, and out of their bosoms other small sharp pointed little green leaves: at the tops of the branches grow little red flowers, succeeded by such, yet lesser heads than those of the former: it flowers in July and August, and grows in sandy grounds, as in Tuthill Fields nigh Westminster; the figure set forth in *Hist. Lugd. p. 2179*, by the title of *Chamepeuce plinii*;
Camphorata minor dalechampii seems to be of this plant, but without the flower: Bauhin in his Prodromus describes it by the name of Alsine Spergulae facie. This may be called Chickweed Spurrey, or Small Red Spurrey.

The Place.
White Woodruff groweth under hedges, and in woods almost everywhere: the second groweth in many places of Essex, and divers other parts in sandy grounds. The third in Cornfields.

The Time.
They flower in June and July.

The Names.
Most have taken Woodruff to be Pliny his Alyssos, which as he saith, doth differ from Erythrodanum, or Garden Madder, in leaves only, and lesser stalks: but such a one is not only this, but also that with blue flowers: for Galen doth attribute to Alyssos, a blue flower: notwithstanding Galen's and Pliny's Alyssos are thought to differ by Galen's own words, writing of Alyssos in his second book Of Counterpoisons, in Antonius Cous his composition, in this manner: Alyssos is an herb very like unto Horehound, but rougher and fuller of prickles about the circles: it beareth a flower tending to blue.

Woodruff is named of divers in Latin Asperula odorata, and of most men, Aspergula odorata: of others, Cordialia, and Stellaria: in High Dutch, Oertsfrept; in low Dutch, Leverkraut; that is to say Iecoraria, or Hepatica, Liverwort: in French, Muguet: in English, Woodruff, Woodrow, and Woodrowell.

The Temperature.
Woodruff is of temperature something like unto Our Lady's Bedstraw; but not so strong, being in a mean between heat and dryness.

The Virtues.
A. It is reported to be put into wine, to make a man merry, and to be good for the heart and liver: it prevaleth in wounds, as Crucia, and other vulnerary herbs do.
The Kinds.

There be divers of the herbs called Lady's Bedstraw, or Cheese-Rennet, some greater, others less; some with white flowers, and some with yellow.

The Description.

1. Lady's Bedstraw hath small round even stalks, weak and tender, creeping hither and thither upon the ground: whereon do grow very fine leaves, cut into small jags, finer than those of Dill, set at certain spaces, as those of Woodruff: among which come forth flowers of a yellow colour, in clusters or bunches thick thrust together, of a strong sweet smell but not unpleasant: the root is small and thready.

2. Lady's Bedstraw with white flowers is like unto Cleavers or Goose-Grass, in leaves, stalks, and manner of growing, yet nothing at all rough, but smooth and soft: the flowers be white, the seed round: the roots slender, creeping within the ground: the whole plant rampeth upon bushes, shrubs and all other such things as stand near unto it: otherwise it cannot stand, but must reel and fall to the ground.
3. This small Gallium, or Lady's Little Red Bedstraw, hath been taken for a kind of wild Madder; nevertheless it is a kind of Lady's Bedstraw, or Cheese-Rennet, as appeareth both by his virtues in turning milk to cheese, as also by his form, being in each respect like unto yellow Gallium, and differs in the colour of the flowers, which are of a dark red colour with a yellow pointel in the middle, consisting of four small leaves: the seed hereof was sent me from a citizen of Strasbourg in Germany, and it hath not been seen in these parts before this time.

4. There is likewise another sort of Gallium for distinction's sake called Mollugo, which hath stalks that need not to be propped up, but of itself standeth upright, and is like unto the common white Gallium, but that it hath a smoother leaf. The flowers thereof be also white, and very small. The root is blackish.

The Place.

The first groweth upon sunny banks near the borders of fields, in fruitful soils everywhere.

The second groweth in marsh grounds and other moist places.

The third groweth upon mountains and hilly places, and is not yet found in England

The fourth and last groweth in hedges among bushes in most places.

The Time.

They flower most of the summer months.
The Names.


The others are *species Lappaginis*, or kinds of small Burs, so taken of the ancients: The last, of the softness and smoothness of the leaves, is commonly called *Mollugo*: divers take it for a kind of wild Madder, naming it *Rubia sylvestris*, or wild Madder.

The Temperature.

These herbs, especially that with yellow flowers, are dry and something binding, as Galen saith.

The Virtues.

A. The flowers of Yellow Maid's Hair, as Dioscorides writeth, is used in ointments against burnings, and it stancheth blood: it is put into the cerote or cerecloth of Roses; it is set a sunning in a glass, with Oil Olive, until it be white: it is good to anoint the wearied traveller: the root thereof drunk in wine stirreth up bodily lust; and the flowers smelled unto work the same effect.

B. The herb thereof is used for rennet to make cheese, as Matthiolus reporteth, saying, That the people of Tuscany or Etruria do use to turn their milk, that the cheese which they make of sheep's and goat's milk might be the sweeter and more pleasant in taste, and also more wholesome, especially to break the stone, as it is reported.

C. The people in Cheshire, especially about Nantwich, where the best cheese is made, do use it in their Rennet, esteeming greatly of that cheese above other made without it.

D. We find nothing extant in the ancient writers, of the virtues and faculties of the white kind, but are as herbs never had in use either for physic or surgery.
CHAP. 465. Of Fern.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Fern, differing as well in form as place of growing; whereof there be two sorts according to the old writers, the male and the female; and these be properly called Fern: the others have their proper names, as shall be declared.

The Description.

1. The Male Fern bringeth forth presently from the root broad leaves and rough, somewhat hard, easy to be broken, of a light green colour, and strong smell, more than a cubit long, spread abroad like wings, compounded as it were of a great number st upon a middle rib, every one whereof is like a feather, nicked in the edges, and on the backside are sprinkled as it were with a very fine earthy-coloured dust or spots, which many rashly have taken for seed: the root consisteth of a number of tufts or threads, and is thick and black, and is without stalk and seed, and altogether barren.

Filicis (vulgo) maris varietates & differentiae.
Differences of the male Fern.

I have observed four sorts of Fern, by most writers esteemed to be the Male Fern of Dioscorides: by Anguillara, Gesner, Cæsalpinus, and Clusius, accounted to be the female, and so indeed do I think them to be, though I call them the male, with the multitude. If you look on these Ferns according to their several growths and ages, you may make many more sorts of them than I have done; which I am afraid hath been the
occasion of describing more sorts than indeed there are in nature. These descriptions I made by them when they were in their perfect growths.

1A. *Felix mas ramosa pinulis dentatis.*

The roots are nothing but an abundance of small black hairy strings, growing from the lower parts of the main stalks (for stalks I will call them) where those stalks are joined together. At the beginning of the spring you may perceive the leaves to grow forth of their folding clusters, covered with brownish scales at the superﬁcies of the earth, very closely joined together: a young plant hath but a few leaves; an old one, ten, twelve, or more: each stalk at his lower end near the joining to his fellows, at his first appearing, before he is an inch long having some of those black ﬁbrous roots for his sustenance. The leaves being at their full growth hath each of them a three-fold division, as hath that Fern which is commonly called the female: the main stalk, the side branches growing from him, and the nerves growing on those side branches bearing the leaves: the main stalk of that plant I describe was fully four foot long (but there are usually from one foot to four in length) full of those brownish scales, especially toward the root, ﬁrm, one side flat, the rest round, naked fully one and twenty inches, to the first pair of side branches. The side branches, the longest being the third pair from the root, were nine inches long, and shorter and shorter towards the top, in number about twenty pairs; for the most part towards the root they grow by couples, almost opposite, the near the top the further from opposition: the nerves bearing the leaves, the longest were two inches and a quarter long, and so shorter and shorter toward the tops of the side branches; about twenty in number on each side of the longest side branch. The leaves grow for the most part by couples on the nerve, eight or nine pair on a nerve; each leaf being gashed by the sides, the gashes ending with sharp points, of a deep green on the upper side, on the underside paler, and each leaf having two rows of dusty red scales, of a brown or blackish colour: toward the top of the main stalk those side branches change into nerves, bearing only the leaves. When the leaves are at their full growth, you may see in the midst of them at their roots the said scaly folding cluster; and as the old leaves with their black thready roots wholly perish, they spring up; most years you may find many of the old leaves green all the winter, especially in warm places. This groweth plentifully in the boggy shadowy moors near Durford Abbey in Sussex, and also on the moist shadowy rocks by Mapledurham in Hampshire, near Petersﬁeld; and I have found it often on the dead putrefied bodies and stems of old rotten oaks, in the said moors; near the old plants I have observed very many small young plants growing, which came by the falling of the seed from those dusty scales: for I believe all herbs have seeds in themselves to produce their kinds, *Gen.* I, 11. & 12.

The three other have but a twofold division, the many stalks and the nettles bearing the leaves. The roots of them all are black ﬁbrous threads like the first, their main stalks grow many thick and close together at the root, as the ﬁrst doth: the difference is in the fashion of their leaves, and manner of growing, and for distinction's sake I have thus called them:

1B. *Felix mas non ramosa pinulis latis densis minutim dentatis.*

The leaves are of a yellowish green colour on both sides, set very thick and close together on the nerve, that you cannot see between them, with marvellous small nicks by their sides, and on their round tops: each leaf hath also two rows of dusty seed scales; the figures set forth by Lobel, Tabernamontanus and Gerard, under the
title of *Felix mas*, do well resemble this Fern. This grows plentifully in most places in shadowy woods and copses.

1C. *Felix mas non ramosa pinnulis angustis, rarís, profunde dentatis.*

The leaves are of a deep green, not closely set together on the the nerve, but you may far off see betwixt them; deeply indented by the sides, ending with a point not altogether sharp: each leaf hath also two rows of dusty seed scales. I have not seen any figure well resembling this plant. This growth also in many places in the shade.

1D. *Felix mas non ramosa pinnulis latis auriculatis spinosis.*

The leaves are of a deeper green than either of the two last described, placed on the nerve not very close together, but that you may plainly see between them; each leaf (especially those next the stalk) having on that side farthest off the stalk a large ear or outgrowing ending, with a sharp prick like a hair, as doth also the top of the leaf: some of the sides of the leaves are also nicked; ending with the like prick or hair. Each leaf hath two rows of dusty seed scales. This I take to be *Felix mas aculeata maior* of Bauhin. Neither have I seen any figure resembling this plant. It groweth abundantly on the shadowy moist rocks by Mapledurham near Petersfield in Hampshire. *John Goodyer.* July 4. 1633.

2. The female Fern hath neither flowers nor seed, but one only stalk, chamfered, something edged, having a pith within of divers colours, the which being cut aslope, there appeareth a certain form of a spread eagle: about this stand very many leaves which are winged, and like to the leaves of the male Fern, but lesser: the root is long and black, and creepeth in the ground, being now and then an inch thick, or somewhat thinner. This is also of a strong smell, as is the male.

**The Place.**

Both the Ferns are delighted to grow in barren dry and desert places: and as Horace testifieth

*Neglectis urenda Filix innascitur agris.*

["Fern, fit only for burning, overruns the neglected fields"

*Horace, Satires III, l. 37*

It comes not up in manured and dunged places, for if it be dunged (as Theophrastus, *lib. 8. cap. 8.* reporteth) it withereth away.

The male joyeth in open and champion places, on mountains and stony grounds, as Dioscorides saith. It grows commonly in shadowy places under hedges.

The female is often found about the borders of fields under thorns and in shadowy woods.

**The Time.**

Both these Ferns wither away in winter: in the spring there grow forth new leaves, which continue green all summer long.

**The Names.**


The Temperature.

Both the Ferns are hot, bitter, and dry, and something binding.

The Virtues.

A. The roots of the Male Fern being taken to the weight of half an ounce, driveth forth long flat worms out of the belly, as Dioscorides writeth, being drunk in Mead or honeyed water; and more effectually, if it be given with two scruples or two third parts of a dram of Scammony, or of Black Hellebore: they that will use it, saith he, must first eat Garlick. After the same manner, as Galen addeth, it killeth the child in the mother's womb. The root hereof is reported to be good for them that have ill spleens: and being stamped with swine's grease and applied, it is a remedy against the pricking of the reed: for proof hereof, Dioscorides saith the Fern dieth if the Reed be planted about it; and contrariwise, that the Reed shall if it be compassed with Fern: which is vain to think, that it happeneth by any antipathy or natural hatred, and not by reason this Fern prospereth not in moist places, nor the Reed in dry.

B. The Female Fern is of like operation with the former, as Galen saith. Dioscorides reports, that this bringeth barrenness, especially to women, and that it causeth women to be delivered before their time; he addeth, that the powder hereof finely beaten is laid upon old ulcers, and healeth the galled necks of oxen and other cattle: it is also reported, that the root of Fern cast into an hogshead of wine keepeth it from souring.

C. The root of the Male Fern sodden in wine is good against the hardness and stopping of the milt: and being boiled in water, stayeth the lask in young children, if they be set over the decoction thereof to ease their bodies by a close stool.
CHAP. 466. Of Water-Fern, or Osmund the Waterman.

The Description.

Water Fern hath a great triangled stalk two cubits high, beset upon each side with large leaves spread abroad like wings, and dented or cut like Polypody: these leaves are like the large leaves of the Ash tree; for doubtless when I first saw them afar off it caused me to wonder thereat, thinking that I had seen young Ashes growing upon a bog; but beholding it a little nearr, I might easily distinguish it from the Ash, by the brown rough and round grains that grew on the top of the branches, which yet are not the seed thereof, but are very like unto the seed. The root is great and thick, folded and covered over with many scales and interlacing roots, having in the middle of the great and hard woody part thereof some small whiteness, which hath been called the heart of Osmund the Waterman.

The Place.

It groweth in the midst of a bog at the further end of Hampstead Heath from London, at the bottom of a hill adjoining to a small cottage, and in divers other places, as also upon divers bogs on a heath or common near unto Bruntwood in Essex, especially near unto a place there that some have dugged, to the end to find a nest or mine of gold; but the birds were over fledge, and flown away before their wings could be clipped. So saith our author, and it did grow plentifully in both these places, but of late it is all destroyed in the former.

The Time.

It flourisheth in summer, as the former Ferns: the leaves decay in winter; the root continueth fresh and long lasting; which being brought into the garden prospereth as in his native soil, as myself have proved.
The Names

It is called in Latin *Osmunda*: it is more truly named *Felix palustris*, or *aquatilis*: some term it by the name of *Filiastrum*: most of the alchemists call it *Lunaria maior*: Valerius Cordus nameth it *Felix latifolia*: it is named in High Dutch, *Grosz Farn*: in Low Dutch, *Groot Varen, Wilt Varen*: in English, Water-Fern, Osmund the Waterman: of some, Saint Christopher's Herb, and Osmund.

The Temperature.

The root of this also is hot and dry, but less than those of the former ones.

The Virtues.

A. The root, and especially the heart or middle part thereof, boiled or else stamped, and taken with some kind of liquor, is thought to be good for those that are wounded, dry-beaten, and bruised; that have fallen from some high place: and for the same cause the empirics do put it in decoctions, which the later physicians do call wound-drinks: some take it to be so effectual, and of so great a virtue, as that it can dissolve cluttered blond remaining in any inward part of the body, and that it also can expel or drive it out by the wound.

B. The tender sprigs thereof at their first coming forth are excellent good unto the purposes aforesaid, and are good to be put into balms, oils, and consolidatines, or healing plasters, and into unguents appropriate unto wounds, punctures, and such like.
CHAP. 467. Of Polypody or Wall-Fern.

The Description.

1. The leaves of Polypody might be thought to be like those of male Fern, but that they are far lesser, and not nicked at all in the edges: these do presently spring up from the roots, being cut on both the edges with many deep gashes, even hard to the middle rib; on the upper side they are smooth, on the nether side they are lightly powdered as it were with dusty marks: the root is long, not a finger thick, creeping aslope, on which are seen certain little buttons like to those pits and dents that appear in the tails of cuttle fishes: this hath in it a certain sweetness, with a taste something harsh: this kind of Fern likewise wanteth not only flowers and seed, but stalks also.

2. Polypody of the Oak is much like unto that of the wall, yet the leaves of it are more finely cut, smooth on the upper side, of a pale green colour, together with the stalks and middle ribs; on the nether side rough like those of Fern: this Fern also liveth without a stalk; it groweth without seed: the root hath many strings fastened to it, one folded within another, of a mean bigness, and sweet in taste: it sendeth forth here and there new dodkins or springs, whereby it increaseth.
3. Clusius in his *Exotics, lib. 4. cap. 7*, gives us the history of an Indian Fern or Polypody found amongst the papers of one Dr. Nicholas Colie a Dutch physician, who died in his return from the East Indies. The root of it was six inches long, and almost one thick, of the same shape and colour as the ordinary one is: from this came up three leaves, of which the third was lesser than the other two; the two larger were eleven inches long, and their breadth from the middle rib (which was very large) was on each side almost five inches; the edges were divided almost like an oaken case: from the middle rib came other veins that ran to the ends of the divisions, and between these be smaller veins variously divaricated and netted, which made the leaf show prettily. The colour of it was like that of a dry oaken leaf. Where Dr Colie gathered this it was uncertain, for he had left nothing in writing.

### The Place.

It groweth on the bodies of old rotten trees, and also upon old walls, and the tops of houses: it is likewise found among rubbish near the borders of fields, especially under trees and thorns, and now and then in woods: and in some places it groweth rank and with a broader leaf, in others not so rank, and with a narrower leaf.

That which groweth on the bodies of old Oaks is preferred before the rest; instead of this most do use that which is found under the Oaks, which for all that is not to be termed *Quercinum*, or Polypody of the Oak.

### The Time.

Polypody is green all the year long, and may be gathered at any time; it bringeth forth new leaves in the first spring.
The Names.


The Temperature.

Polypody doth dry, but yet without biting, as Galen writeth.

The Virtues.

A. Dioscorides writeth, that it is of power to purge and to draw forth choler and phlegm. Clusius addeth, that it likewise purgeth melancholy: other suppose it to be without any purging force at all, or else to have very little: of the same mind is also Iohannes Monardus who thinketh it purgeth very gently; which thing is confirmed by experience, the mistress of things. For in very deed Polypody of itself doth nor purge at all, but only serveth a little to make the belly soluble, being boiled in the broth of an old cock; with Beets or Mallows, or other like things that move to the stool by their slipperiness. Iohannes Mesue reckoneth up Polypody among those things that do especially dry and make thin: peradventure he had respect to a certain kind of arthritis, or ache in the joints: in which not one only part of the body, but many together most commonly are touched: for which it is very much commended by the Brabanters and other inhabitants about the River Rhine, and the Maas. In this kind of disease the hands, the feet, and the joints of the knees and elbows do swell. There is joined withal a feebleness in moving, through the extremity of the pain: sometimes the upper parts are less grieved, and the lower more. The humours do also easily run from one place to another, and then settle. Against this disease the Guelders and Clevelanders do use the decoction of Polypody, whereby they hope that the superfluous humours may be wasted and dried up, and that not by and by, but in continuance of time: for they appoint that this decoction should be taken for certain days together.

B. But this kind of gout is sooner taken away either by blood letting, or by purgations, or by both, and afterwards by sweat; neither is it hard to be cured if these general remedies be used in time: for the humours do not remain fixed in those joints, but are rather gathered together than settled about them.

C. Therefore the body must out of hand be purged, and then that which remaineth is to be wasted and consumed away by such things as procure sweat.

D. Furthermore, Dioscorides saith, that the root of Polypody is very good for members out of joint, and for chaps between the fingers.

E. The root of Polypody boiled with a little honey, water, and pepper, and the quantity of an ounce given, emptieth the belly of choleric and pituitous humours; some boil it in water and wine, and give thereof to the quantity of three ounces for some purposes with good success.
CHAP. 468. Of Oak-Fern.

I will in this chapter give you the *Dryopteris* of the *Adversaria*, then that of Dodonæus, and thirdly that of Tragus; for I take them to be different; and this last to be that figured by our author, out of Tabernamontanus.

The Description.

1. This kind of Fern called *Dryopteris*, or *Filix querna*, hath leaves like unto the Female Fern before spoken of, but much lesser, smaller, and more finely cut or jagged, and is not above a foot high, being a very slender and delicate tender herb. The leaves are so finely jagged that in show they resemble feathers, set round about a small rib or sinew; the back side being sprinkled, not with russet or brown marks or specks, as the other Ferns are, but as it were painted with white spots or marks, not standing out of the leaves in scales, as the spots in the male Fern, but they are double in each leaf close unto the middle rib or sinew. The root is long, brown, and somewhat hairy, very like unto Polypody, but much slenderer, of a sharp and caustic taste. Rondeletius affirmed that he found the use of this deadly, being put into medicines.
instead of Polypody by the ignorance of some apothecaries in Dauphiné in France. Mr Goodyer hath sent me an accurate description together with a plant of this Fern which I have thought good here also to set forth.

**Dryopteris pena & lobelii.**

The roots creep in the ground or mire, near the turf or upper part thereof; and fold amongst themselves, as the roots of *Polypodium* do, almost as big as a wheat straw, and about five, six, or seven inches long, coal black without, and white within, of a binding taste inclining to sweetness, with an innumerable company of small black fibres like hairs growing thereunto. The stalks spring from the roots in several places, in number variable, according to the length and increase of the root; I have seen small plants have but one or two, and some bigger plants have fourteen or fifteen: they have but a twofold division, the stalk growing from the root, and the nerve bearing the leaves: the stalk is about five, six, or seven inches long, no bigger than a Bennet or small grass stalk, one side flat, as are the male Ferns, the rest round, smooth, and green. The first pair of nerves grow about three inches from the root, and so do all the rest grow by couples, almost exactly one against another, in number about eight, nine, or ten couples, the longest seldom exceeding an inch in length. The leaves grow on those nerves also by couples, eight or nine couples on a nerve, without any nicks or indentures, of a yellowish green colour. This Fern may be said to be like *Polypodium* in his creeping root, like the male Fern in his stalk, and like the Female Fern in his nerves and leaves. I could find no seed-scales on the backsides of any of the leaves of this Fern. Many years past I found this same in a very wet moor or bog, being the land of Richard Austen, called Whitrow Moor, where peat is now dugged, a mile from Petersfield in Hampshire; and this sixth of July, 1633, I digged up there many plants, and by them made this description. I never found it growing in any other place: the leaves perish at winter, and grow up again very late in the spring. *John Goodyer.* July 6, 1633.

2. Dodonœus thus describes his: *Dryopteris* (saith he) doth well resemble the male Fern, but the leaves are much smaller, and more finely cut, smooth on the foresaid, and of a yellowish green together with the stalks and middle nerves; on the back it is rough as other Ferns, and also liveth without stalk or seed. The root consists of fibres intricately folded together, of an indifferent thickness, here and there putting up new buds. This is the *Adianthum* of the *Adversaria* who affirm the use thereof to be safe, and not pernicious and deletery, as that of *Dryopteris*. It thus differs from the former; the leaves of this are not set directly one opposite to another, the divisions of the leaves are larger and more divided. The root is more thready, and creeps not so much as that of the former.

3. This (which is Clusius his *Filix pumila saxatilis prima*, and which I take to be the *Dryopteris* or *Filix arborea* of Tragus) hath black slender long creeping roots, with few small hard hairy fibres fastened to them, of a very astringent taste: from these rise up sundry stalks a foot high, divided into certain branches of winged leaves, like to those of the female Fern, but much less, tenderer and finer cut, and having many blackish spots on their lower sides. This differs from the two former, in that the leaves are branched, which is a chief difference; and Bauhin did very well observe it, if he had as well followed it, when he divided *Filix* into *ramosa & non ramosa*. 
The Place.
It is oftentimes found in sunny places, in the valleys of mountains and little hills, and in the tops of the trunks of trees in thick woods.

The Time.
The leaves hereof perish in winter; in the spring new come forth.

The Names.
This is called in Latin, *Querna Filix*: Oribasius in his eleventh book *Of Physical Collections* calleth it Bryopteris, of the moss with which it is found: for, as Dioscorides writeth, it growth in the moss of Oaks. The apothecaries in times past miscalled it by the name of *Adiantum*: but they did worse in putting it in compound medicines instead of *Adiantum*. Valerius Cordus calleth it *Pteridion*: in Low Dutch, *Eijken varen*: the Spaniards, *Helecho de Roble*: it is named in English, Oak-Fern, Petty-Fern; and it may most fitly be called Moss-Fern.

The Temperature & Virtues.
A. Oak-Fern hath many tastes, it is sweet, biting, and bitter; it hath in the root a harsh or choking taste, and a mortifying quality, and therefore it taketh away hairs. Dioscorides saith further, that Oak-Fern stamped roots and all is a remedy to root up hairs, if it be applied to the body after sweating, the sweat being wiped away.
CHAP. 469. Of Black Oak-Fern.

The Description.

1. There is also a certain other kind of Fern like to the former Oak-Fern of Dodonaeus his description, but the stalks and ribs of the leaves are blackish, and the leaves of a deeper green colour: this groweth out also immediately from the root, and is likewise diversely, but not so finely indented: the root is made up of many strings not unlike to the Male Fern, but much lesser.

2. The Female Black Fern is like unto the male, saving his leaves are not so sharp at the points, more white and broad than the male, wherein consisteth the difference.

The Place.

They grow likewise upon trees in shadowy woods, and now and then in shadowy sandy banks, and under hedges.

The Time.

They remain green all the year long, otherwise than Polypody & Maidenhair do; yet do they not cease to bring forth new leaves in summer: they are destitute of flowers and seed, as is the former.

The Names.

This is called of divers of the later herbarists, \textit{Dryopteris nigra}, or Black Oak-Fern, of the likeness that it hath with \textit{Dryopteris}, which we have called in English, Oak-Fern, or Moss Fern: of others, \textit{Adiantum nigrum}, or Black Maidenhair, that it may differ from the former, which is falsely called \textit{Adiantum}. There are of the later
herbarists who would have it to be *Lonchitis aspera*, or rough Spleenwort; but what likeness hath it with the leaves of *Scolopendrium*? none at all: therefore it is not *Lonchitis aspera*, much less *Adiantum plinii*, which differeth not from *Adiantum theophrasti* for what he hath of *Adiantum*, the same he taketh out of Theophrastus: the right *Adiantum* we will describe hereafter. Notwithstanding Black Oak-Fern was used of divers unlearned apothecaries of France and Germany for *Adiantum*, or Maiden hair of Lombardy: but these men did err in doing so; yet not so much as they who take Polypody of the Oak for the true Maiden hair.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

The Black Oak-Fern hath no styptic quality at all, but is like in faculty to *Trichomanes*, or English Maiden hair.
CHAP. 470. Of Hart's-Tongue.

Fig. 1620. Kinds of Hart's-Tongue and Moon-Fern (1-4)

The Description.

1. The common kind of Hart's-Tongue, called Phyillitis, that is to say, a plant consisting only of leaves, bearing neither stalk, flower, nor seed, resembling in show a
long tongue, whereof it hath been and is called in shops *Lingua cervina*, that is, Hart's tongue: these leaves are a foot long, smooth and plain on one side, but upon that side next the ground streaked overthwart with certain long rough marks like small worms, hanging on the back side thereof. The root is black, hairy, and twisted, or so growing as though it were wound together.

2. The other kind of Fern, called *Phyllitis multifida* or *laciniata*, that is, jagged Hart's-Tongue, is very like unto the former saving that the leaves thereof are cut or jagged like a man's hand, or the palm and brow antlers of a deer, bearing neither stalk, flower, nor seed.

3. There is another kind of Hart's-Tongue called *Hemionitis*, which hath bred some controversy among writers: for some have took it for a kind of Hart's-Tongue, as it is indeed; others describe it as a proper plant by itself, called *Hemionitis*, of *Emionos*, that is, *Mulús*, a Mule, because Mules do delight to feed thereon: it is barren in seeds, stalks, and flowers, and in shape it agreeth very well with our Hart's-Tongue: the roots are compact of many blackish hairs: the leaves are spotted on the backside like the common Hart's-Tongue, and differ in that, that this *Hemionitis* in the base or lowest parts of the leaves is arched after the manner of a new moon, or a forked arrow, the youngest and smallest leaves being like unto the Great Bindweed, called *Volubilis*.

4. There is a kind of Fern called likewise *Hemionitis sterilis*, which is a very small and base herb not above a finger high, having four or five small leaves of the same substance and colour, spotted on the back part, and in taste like Hart's-Tongue; but the leaves bear the shape of them of *Totabona*, or Good Henry, which many of our apothecaries do abusively take for Mercury: The roots are very many, smooth, black, and thready, bearing neither stalk, flower, nor seed: this plant my very good friend Mr Nicholas Belson found in a gravelly lane in the way leading to Oxhey Park near unto Watford, fifteen miles from London: it grows likewise on the stone walls of Hampton Court, in the garden of Mr Huggens, keeper of the said house or palace.
5. There is a kind of Fern called also Hemionitis, but with this addition peregrina, that is very seldom found, and hath leaves very like to Hart's-Tongue, but that it is palmed or branched in the part next the ground, almost in manner of the second Phyllitis, at the top of the leaves; otherwise they resemble one another in nature and form.

**The Place.**

The common Hart's-Tongue growtheth by the wayside as you travel from London to Exeter in great plenty, in shadowy places, and moist stony valleys and wells, and is much planted in gardens.

The second I found in the garden of Master Cranwich a chirurgeon dwelling at Much Dunmow in Essex, who gave me a plant for my garden. Mr. Goodyer found it wild in the banks of a lane near Swanling, not many miles from Southampton.

It groweth upon Ingleborough hills, and divers other mountains of the North of England.

**The Time.**

It is green all the year long, yet less green in winter: in summer it now and then bringeth forth new leaves.

**The Names.**


**The Temperature.**

It is of a binding and drying faculty.

**The Virtues.**

A. This common Hart's-Tongue is commended against the lask and bloody flux: Dioscorides teacheth, that being drunk in wine it is a remedy against the bitings of serpents.

B. It doth open the hardness and stopping of the spleen and liver, and all other griefs proceeding of oppilations or stoppings whatsoever.
CHAP. 471. Of Spleenwort, or Miltwaste.

The Description.

1. Spleenwort being that kind of Fern called *Asplenum* or *Ceterach*, and the true *Scolopendria*, hath leaves a span long, jagged or cut upon both sides, even hard to the middle rib; every cut or incisure being as it were cut half round (whereby it is
known from the rough Spleenwort) not one cut right against another, but one besides
the other, set in several order, being slippery and green on the upper side, soft and
downy underneath; which when they be withered are folded up together like a scroll,
and hairy without, much like to the rough bear-worm wherewith men bait their hooks
to catch fish: the root is small, black, and rough, much plaited or interlaced, having
neither stalk, flower, nor seeds.

2. Rough Spleenwort is partly like the other Ferns in show, and beareth neither
stalk nor seed, having narrow leaves a foot long, and somewhat longer, slashed on the
edges even to the middle rib, smooth on the upper side, and of a swart green colour;
underneath rough, as is the leaves of Polypody: the root is black; and set with a
number of slender strings.

3. This greater Spleenwort hath leaves like Ceterach, of a span long,
somewhat resembling those of Polypody, but that they are more divided, snipped
about the edges, and sharp pointed: the root is fibrous and stringy. This grows on the
rocks and mountainous places of Italy, and is the Lonchitis aspera maior of
Matthiolus and others.

4. This kind of Spleenwort is not only barren of stalks and seeds, but also of
spots and marks wherewith the others are spotted: the leaves are few in number,
growing pyramid or steeplewise, great and broad below, and sharper toward the top
by degrees: the root is thick, black, and bushy, as it were a crow's nest.

The Place.

Ceterach groweth upon old stone walls and rocks, in dark and shadowy places
throughout the West part of England; especially upon the stone walls by Bristol, as
you go to Saint Vincent's Rock, and likewise about Bath, Wells, and Salisbury, where
I have seen great plenty thereof.

The rough Spleenwort groweth upon barren heaths, dry sandy banks, and
shadowy places in most parts of England, but especially on a heath by London called
Hampstead Heath, where it groweth in great abundance.

The Names.

Spleenwort or Miltwaste is called in Greek and Latin Asplenium, and also
Scolopendria: of Gaza, Mula herba: in shops, Ceterach: in High Dutch, Sternfarn: in
low Dutch, Sternvaren, and Miltrurt: in English, Spleenwort, Miltwaste, Scalefern
and Stonefern: it is called Asplenium, because it is special good against the infirmities
of the spleen or milt, and Scolopendria of the likeness that it hath with the bear-worm,
before remembered.

Rough Miltwaste is called of divers of the later writers Asplenium sylvestre, or
wild Spleenwort: of some, Asplenium magnum, or great Spleenwort: Valerius Cordus
calleth it Strutiopteris: and Dioscorides, Lonchitis aspera, or Rough Spleenwort: in
Latin according to the same author, Longina, and Calabrina: in English, Rough
Spleenwort, or Miltwaste.

The Temperature.

These plants are of thin parts, as Galen witnesseth, yet are they not hot, but in
a mean.
Gerard's Herbal

The Virtues.

A. Dioscorides teacheth, that the leaves boiled in wine and drunk by the space of forty days, do take way infirmities of the spleen; help the strangury, and yellow jaundice, cause the stone in the bladder to moulder and pass away, all which are performed by such things as be of thin and subtle parts: he addeth likewise that they slay the hicket, or yexing, and also hinder conception, either inwardly taken, or hanged about the party, and therefore, saith Pliny, Spleenwort is not to be given to women, because it bringeth barrenness.

B. There be empirics or blind practitioners of this age, who teach, that with this herb not only the hardness and swelling of the spleen, but all infirmities of the liver also may be effectually, and in very short time removed, insomuch that the sodden liver of a beast is restored to his former constitution again, that is, made like unto a raw liver, if it be boiled again with this herb.

C. But this is to be reckoned among the old wives' fables, and that also which Dioscorides telleth of, touching the gathering of Spleenwort in the night, and other most vain things, which are found here and there scattered in old books: from which most of the later writers do not abstain, who many times fill up their pages with lies and frivolous toys, and by so doing do not a little deceive young students.
CHAP. 472. Of Divers Small Ferns.

The Description.

1. This small or dwarf Fern, which is seldom found except in the banks of stony fountains, wells, and rocks bordering upon rivers, is very like unto the common Brakes in leaves, but altogether lesser: the root is composed of a bundle of black thready strings.

2. The female, which is found likewise by running streames, wells, and fountains, upon rocks, and stony places, is like the precedent, but is a great deal smaller, blacker of colour, fewer roots, and shorter.

3. The male dwarf Fern that groweth upon the stony mountains of the North and West parts of England, especially toward the sea, and also in the joints of stone walls among the mortar, hath small leaves deeply cut on both sides, like unto Ceterach or Spleenwort, barren both of seeds and stalks, as also of those spots or marks that are to be seen upon the back part of the other Ferns: the root creepeth along, set with some few hairy strings, resembling those of the Oak Fern, called Dryopteris.
4. The Female Stone Fern hath divers long leaves rising from a thready root, contrary to that of the male, composed of many small leaves finely minced or cut like the teeth of a saw, of a whitish green colour, without any spots or marks at all, seeds or stalks, which groweth under shadowy rocks and craggy mountains in most places. From a small root composed of many black, and intricately folding strings, come up many leaves two or three inches high, stiff, thick, dark green, and shining: in the division, growth, position, shape and taste, it resembles the male Fern, and hath also rusty spots on the back: the middle rib and stalk is of a shining brownish silken colour: it grows in the chinks of the rocks by the seaside in Cornwall.

The Place.

The place is sufficiently touched in the description.

The Time.

They flourish both winter and summer, for when the leaves wither by reason of age, there arise young to supply the place, so that they are not to be seen without green and withered leaves both at once.

The Names.

It sufficeth what hath been said of the names in their several titles: notwithstanding the last described we have called Chamaefilix marina anglica: which groweth upon the rocky cliff near Harwich, as also at Dover, among the Samphire that there groweth.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Their temperature and faculties in working are referred unto the kinds of Black Oak Ferns, called Dryopteris, and Onopteris.
CHAP. 473. Of True Maidenhair.

The Kinds.

Theophrastus and Pliny have set down two Maidenhairs, the black and the white, whereunto may be added another called Ruta muraria, or Wall Rue, equal to the others in faculty, whereof we will intreat.

The Description.

1. Whoso will follow the variable opinions of writers concerning the Fern called Adiantum verum, or Capillus veneris verus, must of necessity be brought into a labyrinth of doubts, considering the divers opinions thereof: but this I know that Venus-hair, or Maidenhair, is a low herb growing an hand high, smooth, of a dark crimson colour, and glittering withal: the leaves be small, cut in sunder and nicked in the edges something like those of Coriander, confusedly or without order placed, the middle rib whereof is of a black shining colour: the root consisteth of many small thready strings.

2. This Assyrian Maidenhair is likewise a base or low herb, having leaves flat, smooth, and plain, set upon a blackish middle rib, like unto that of the other Maidenhair, cut or notched in the edges, nature keeping no certain form, but making one leaf of this fashion, and another far different from it: the root is tough and thready.
3. This plant which we have inferred among the *Adianthes* as a kind thereof, may without error so pass, which is in great request in Flanders and Germany, where the practioners in physic do use the same instead of *Capillus veneris* and with better success than any of the Capillary herbs, although Matthiolus and Dioscorides himself hath made this Wall Rue to be a kind of *Paronychia*, or Nailwort: notwithstanding the Germans will not leave the use thereof, but receive it as the true Adianth, esteeming it equal, if not far better, than either *Ceterach, Capillus veneris verus,* or *Trichomanes,* called also *Polytrichon:* it bringeth forth very many leaves, round and slender, cut into two or three parts, very hard in handling, smooth and green on the outside, of an ill-favoured dead colour underneath, set with little fine spots, which efficiently showeth it to be a kind of Fern: the root is black and full of strings.

**The Place.**

The right Maidenhair groweth upon walls, in stony, shadowy, and moist places, near unto fountains, and where water droppeth: it is a stranger in England: notwithstanding I have heard it reported by some of good credit, that it groweth in divers places of the Westl country of England.

The Assyrian Maidenhair taketh his surname of his native country Assyria, it is a stranger in Europe.

Stone Rue groweth upon old walls near unto waters, wells, and fountains: I found it upon the wall of the churchyard of Dartford in Kent, hard by the river side where people ride through, and also upon the walls of the churchyard of Sittingbourne in the same county, in the middle of the town hard by a great lake of water, and also upon the church walls of Rayleigh in Essex, and divers other places.
The Time.

These plants are green both winter and summer, and yet have neither flowers nor seed.

The Names.

Maidenhair is called in Greek *Adianton*: Theophrastus and Pliny name it *Adiantum nigrum*, or Black Maidenhair: for they set down two Maidenhairs, the black and the white, making this the black, and the Rue of the wall the white: it is called in Latin *Polytrichum, Callitrichum, Cincinalis, Terræ capillus, Super cilium terræ*: of Apuleius, *Capillus Veneris, Capillaris, Crinita*: & of divers, *Coriandrum putei*: the Italians keep the name *Capillus Veneris*: in English, Black Maidenhair, and Venus' hair, and it may be called Our Lady's Hair.

It is called *Adianton* because the leaf, as Theophrastus saith, is never wet, for it casteth off water that falleth thereon, or being drowned or covered in water, it remaineth still as if it were dry, as Pliny likewise writeth; and is termed *Callitrichon* and *Polytrichon*, of the effect it hath in dying hair; and maketh it to grow thick.

Wall Rue is commonly called in Latin, *Ruta muraria, or Ruta muralis*: of some, *Salvia vitae*, but wherefore I know not, neither themselves, if they were living: of the apothecaries of the Low Countries *Capillus veneris*, or Maidenhair, and they have used it a long time for the right Maidenhair; it is that kind of *Adiantum* which Theophrastus termed *Adiantum candidum*, or White Maidenhair, for he maketh two, one black, and the other white, as we have said. Pliny doth likewise set down two kinds, one he calleth *Polytrichon*; the other *Tricomanes*, or English Maidenhair, whereof we will entreat in the chapter following, which he hath falsely set down for a kind of *Adiantum*, for *Tricomanes* doth differ from *Adiantum*.

Some there be that think, Wall-Rue is *Paronychia dioscoridis*, or Dioscorides his Whitlow wort, wherein they have been greatly deceived: it is called in High Dutch, *Maurranien*: in low Dutch, *Stenruyt*: in French, *Rue de Maræille*: in English, Wall-Rue, and white Maidenhair.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The true Maidenhair, as Galen testifieth, doth dry, make thin, waste away, and is in a mean between heat and coldness: Mesues showeth that it consisteth of unlike or disagreeing parts, and that some are watery and earthy, and the same binding, and another superficially hot and thin. And that by this it taketh away obstructions or stoppings, maketh things thin that are thick, looseneth the belly, especially when it is fresh and green: for as this part is thin, so is it quickly resolved, and that by reason of his binding and earthy parts; it stoppeth the belly, and stayeth the lask and other fluxes.

B. Being drunk it breaketh the stone, and expelleth not only the stones in the kidneys, but also those which stick in the passages of the urine.

C. It raiseth up gross and slimy humours out of the chest and lungs, and also those which stick in the conduits of the windpipe, it breaketh and raiseth them out by spitting, if a lohoch or licking medicine be made thereof.

D. Moreover, it consumeth and wasteth away the King's evil, and other hard swellings, as the same author affirmed, and it maketh the hair of the head or beard to grow that is fallen and pilled off.

-406-
E. Dioscorides reckoneth up many virtues and operations of this Maidenhair, which do not only differ, but are also contrary one to another. Among others he saith, that the same stancheth blood: and a little before, that it draweth away the secondines, and bringeth down the desired sickness: which words do confound one another with contrarieties; for whatsoever things do stanch blond, the same do also stay the terms.

F. He addeth also in the end, that it is grown about sheepfolds for the benefit of the sheep, but what that benefit should be, he showeth not.

G. Besides, that it cannot be sown, by reason it is without seed, it is evident, neither can it fitly be removed. Therefore in this place it seemeth that many things are transposed from other places, and falsely added to this chapter: and peradventure some things are brought hither out of discourse of *Cytisus*, or Milk Trefoil, whereof here to write were to small purpose.

H. Wall-Rue is not much unlike to Black Maidenhair in temperature and faculty.

I. Wall-Rue is good for them that have a cough, that are short winded, and that be troubled with stitches and pain in their sides.

K. Being boiled, it causeth concoction of raw humours which stick in the lungs; it taketh away the pain of the kidneys and bladder, it gently provoketh urine, and driveth forth stones.

L. It is commended against ruptures in young children, and some affirm it to be excellent good, if the powder thereof be taken continually for forty days together.
CHAP. 474. Of English, or Common Maidenhair.

The Description.

1. English Maidenhair hath long leaves of a dark green colour, consisting of very many small round leaves set upon a middle rib, of a shining black colour, dashed on the nether side with small rough marks or specks, of an overworn colour: the roots are small and thready.

2. The female English Maidenhair is like unto the precedent, saving that it is lesser, and wanteth those spots or marks that are in the other, wherein consisteth the difference.

The Place.

It grows for the most part near unto springs and brooks, and other moist places, upon old stone walls and rocks: I found it growing in a shadowy sandy lane in Betsham, in the parish of Southfleet in Kent, upon the ground whereas there was no stones or stony ground near unto it, which before that time I did never see; it groweth likewise upon stone walls at her Majesty's palace of Richmond, & in most stone walls of the West and North parts of England. Mr Goodyer saith, that in January, 1624, he saw enough to lade an horse growing on the banks in a lane, as he rode between Rake and Headley in Hampshire near Wollner Forest.

The Time.

It continueth a long time, the coldness of winter doth it no harm, it is barren as the other Ferns are, whereof it is a kind.

The Names.

It is called in Latin, \textit{Filicula}, as though we should say, \textit{parva filix}, or the little fern: also \textit{Capillaris}: in shops, \textit{Capillus veneris}. Apuleius in his 51 chapter maketh it
all one with *Callitrichon*: of same it is called *Polytrichon*: in English, Common Maidenhair.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. These, as Dioscoridess and Galen do write, have all the faculties belonging to *Adiantum*, or Black Maidenhair.

B. The decoction made in wine and drunk, helpeth them that are short winded, it helpeth the cough, ripeneth tough phlegm, and avoideth it by spitting.

C. The lye wherein it hath been sodden, or laid to infuse, is good to wash the head, causing the scurf and scales to fall off, and hair to grow in places that are pilled and bare.
CHAP. 475. Of Thistles.

The Kinds.

The matter of the Thistles is divers, some Thistles serve for nourishment, as the Artichoke without prickles, and the Artichoke with prickles; others for medicine, as the root of Carline which is good for many things; the blessed thistle also, otherwise called Cardum bendictus; Sea Hulver, and divers others: some are poisonsome, as Chamæleon niger; one smooth, plain, and without prickles, as the Thistle called Bear's Breech, or Acanthus sativus, whereof there is another with prickles, which we make the wild, of the which two we intend to write in this chapter.

The Description.

1. Bear's Breech of the garden hath broad leaves, smooth, somewhat black, gashed on both the edges, and set with many cuts and fine nicks: between which riseth up in the midst a big stalk bravely decked with flowers set in order from the middle upward, of colour white, of form long, which are armed as it were with two catkins, one higher, another lower: after them grow forth the husks, in which is found broad seed: the roots be black without, and white within, and full of clammy juice, and are divided into many off-springs, which as they creep far, so do they now and then bud forth and grow afresh: these roots are so full of life, that how little soever of them remain, it oftentimes also bringeth forth the whole plant.

2. Wild Bear's Breech, called Acanthus sylvestris, Pena setteth forth for Chamaeleontia monspeliensum, and reporteth that he found it growing amongst the
Gerard's Herbal

gravelly and moist places near to the walls of Montpellier, and at the gate of Aegidia, between the fountain and the brook near to the wall: this thistle is in stalk, flowers, colour of leaves and seed like the first kind, but shorter and lower, having large leaves, dented or jagged with many cuts and incisions, not only in some few parts of the leaves, as some other Thistles, but very thickly dented or cloven, and having many sharp, large, white and hard prickles about the sides of the divisions and cuts, not very easy to be handled or touched without danger to the hand and fingers.

The Place.

Dioscorides writeth, that garden Brank Ursine groweth in moist and stony places, and also in gardens: it were unadvisedly done to seek it in either of the Germanies anywhere, but in gardens only; in my garden it doth grow very plentifully.

The wild was found in certain places of Italy near to the sea, by that notable learned man Alphonsus Pancius, physician to the Duke of Ferrara, and professor of simples and physic, and is a stranger in England; I have seen it growing in the garden of Mr John Parkinson.

The Time.

Both the Brank Ursines do flower in the summer season, the seed is ripe in autumn: the root remaineth fresh; yet now and then it perisheth in winter in both the Germanies, if the weather be too cold: but in England the former seldom or never dieth.

The Names.

It is called in Greek and Latin Acanthus: yet doth Acanthus signify generally all kind of Thistles, and that is called Acanthus by the figure Antonomasia: the English name is Brank Ursine, and Bear's Breech.

The tame or garden Brank Ursine is named in Latin Acanthus sativus, or hortensis: Pliny also calleth this Acanthus laevis or smooth Brank Ursine, and reporteth it to be a city herb, and to serve for arbors: some name it Branca ursina (others use to call Cow-Parsnip by the name of Branca ursina, but with the addition germanica:) the Italians call it Acantho, and Branca Orsina: the Spaniards, Yerva Giguante: the engravers of old time were wont to carve the leaves of this Brank Ursine in pillars, and other works, and also upon the ears of pots; as among others Virgil testifieth in the third Eclogue of his Bucolics:

\[\text{Et nobis idem Alcimedon duo pocula fecit,}
\text{Et moli circums est ansus amplexis Acantha.}
\]\n["And for us Alcimedon has made two drinking cups, And set wreaths of Acanthus round their handles"]

The other Brank Ursine is named in Latin, Acanthus sylvestris or wild Brank Ursine, and they may be called properly Acantha, or Spina, a prickle; by which name it is found called of most herbarists, Acanthus; yet there is also another Acanthus a thorny shrub: the liquor which issueth forth of it, as Herodotus and Theophrastus affirm, is a gum: for difference wherof peradventure this kind of Acanthus is named Herbacantha: There is likewise found among the bastard names of Acanthus the word Mamolaria, and also Crepula, but it is not expressed to which of them, whether to the wild or tame, it ought to be referred.
John Gerard and Thomas Johnson

**The Temperature.**

The leaves of the garden Brank Ursine consist in a mean as it were between hot and cold, being somewhat moist, with a mollifying and gentle digesting faculty, as are those of the Mallow, and therefore they are profitably boiled in clysters, as well as Mallow leaves. The root, as Galen teacheth, is of a more drying quality.

**The Virtues.**

A. Dioscorides saith, that the roots are a remedy for limbs that are burnt with fire, and that have been out of joint, if they be laid thereunto: that being drunk they provoke urine, and stop the belly: that they help those that be broken, and be troubled with the cramp; and be in a consumption of the lungs.

B. They are good for such as have the phthisic and spit blood withal; for those that have fallen from some high place, that are bruised and dry beaten, and that have overstrained themselves, and they are as good as the roots of the greater Comfrey, whereunto they are very like in substance, tough juice, and quality.

C. Of the same root is made an excellent plaster against the ache and numbness of the hands and feet.

D. It is put into clysters with good success against sundry maladies.
CHAP. 476. Of the Cotton Thistle.

The Description.

1. The common Thistle, whereof the greatest quantity of down is gathered for divers purposes, as well by the poor to stop pillows, cushions, and beds for want of feathers, as also bought of the rich upholsterers to mix with the feathers and down they do sell, which deceit would be looked unto: this Thistle hath great leaves, long and broad, gashed about the edges, and set with sharp and stiff prickles all alongst the edges, covered all over with a soft cotton or down: out from the midst whereof riseth up a long stalk above two cubits, high-cornered, and set with films, and also full of prickles: the heads are likewise cornered with prickles, and bring forth flowers consisting of many whitish threads: the seed which succeedeth them is wrapped up in down; it is long, of a light crimson colour, and lesser than the seed of Bastard saffron: the root groweth deep in the ground, being white, hard, woody, and not without strings.

2. The Illyrian Cotton Thistle hath a long naked root, beset about the top with a fringe of many small threads or jags: from which ariseth a very large and tall stalk, higher than any man, rather like a tree than an annual herb or plant: this stalk is garnished with rolls of thin leaves, from the bottom to the top, set full of most horrible sharp prickles, and so is the stalk and every part of the plant, so that it is impossible for man or beast to touch the same without great hurt or danger: his leaves are very great, far broader and longer than any other thistle whatsoever, covered with an hoary cotton or down like the former: the flowers do grow at the top of the stalks,
which is divided into sundry branches, and are of a purple colour, set or armed round about with the like, or rather sharper thorns than the aforesaid.

**The Place.**

These thistles grow by highways' sides, and in ditches almost everywhere.

**The Time.**

They flower from June until August, the second year after they be sown: and in the meantime the seed waxeth ripe, which being thorough ripe the herb perisheth, as do likewise most of the other thistles, which live no longer than till the seed be fullt come to maturity.

**The Names.**

This thistle is taken for what is called in Greek *Akaizion*, which Disocorides describeth to have leaves set with prickles round about the edges, and to be covered with a thin down like a cobweb, that may be gathered and spun to make garments of, like those of silk: in High Dutch it is called *Weiswege distill*: in Low Dutch *Witte Wech distel*: in French, *Chardon argentin*: in English, Cotton Thistle, White Cotton Thistle, Wild White Thistle, Argentine or the Silver Thistle.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. Discorides saith, that the leaves and roots are a remedy for those that have their bodies drawn backwards; thereby Galen supposeth that these are of temperature hot.
CHAP. 477. Of Our Lady's Thistle.

The Description.

The leaves of Our Lady's Thistle are as big as those of White Cotton Thistle: for the leaves thereof be great, broad, gashed in the edges, armed with a multitude of stiff and sharp prickles, as are those of Oat Thistle, but they are without down, altogether slippery, of a light green and speckled, with white and Milky spots and lines drawn divers ways: the stalk is high, and as big as a man's finger: the flowers grow forth of heads full of prickles, being threads of a purple colour: the seed is wrapped in down like that of Cotton: the root is long, thick, and white.

The Place.

It groweth upon waste and common places by highways, and by dung-hills almost everywhere.

The Time.

It flowereth and seedeth when Cotton Thistle doth.

The Names.

It is called in Latin, Carduus lacteus, and Carduus mariae: in High Dutch, Onser Vrouwen Distel: in French, Chardon de Notre Dame: in English, Our Lady's Thistle: it may properly be called Leucographus, of the white spots and lines that are on the leaves: Pliny in his 27th book, Chap. 11, maketh mention of an herb called Leucographis, but what manner of one it is he hath not expressed; therefore it would be hard to affirm this to be the same that his Leucographia is; and this is thought to be Spina alba, or White Thistle, Milk Thistle, and Carduus ramptarius: of the Arabians, Bedoard, or Bedeguar, as Matthæus Sylvaticus testifieth.
John Gerard and Thomas Johnson

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The tender leaves of *Carduus leucographus*, the prickles taken off, are sometimes used to be eaten with other herbs.

B. Galen writeth, that the roots of *Spina alba* do dry and moderately bind, that therefore it is good for those that be troubled with the lask and the bloody flux, that it stayeth bleedings, wasteth away cold swellings; easeth the pain of the teeth if they be washed with the decoction thereof.

B. The seed thereof is of a thin essence and hot faculty, therefore he saith that it is good for those that be troubled with cramps.

C. Dioscorides affirmeth that the seeds being drunk are a remedy for infants that have their sinews drawn together, and for those that be bitten of serpents: and that it is thought to drive away serpents, if it be but hanged about the neck.
CHAP. 478. Of the Globe Thistle.

Fig. 1635. Kinds of Globe Thistle (1-3, 5)

The Description.

1. Globe Thistle hath a very long stalk, and leaves jagged, great, long, and broad, deeply gashed, strong of smell, somewhat green on the upper side, and on the nether side whiter and downy: the flowers grow forth of a round head like a globe, which standeth on the tops of the stalks; they are white and small, with blue threads in the midst: the seed is long, with hairs of a mean length: the root is thick and branched.
2. There is another Globe Thistle that hath lesser leaves, but more full of prickles, with round heads also: but there groweth out of them besides the flowers, certain long and stiff prickles.

3. There is likewise another kind resembling the first in form and figure, but much lesser, and the flowers thereof tend more to a blue.

4. There is also another Globe Thistle, which is the least, and hath the sharpest prickles of all the rest: the head is small; the flowers whereof are white, like to those of the first.

5. There is a certain other kind hereof, yet the head is not so round, that is to say, fatter and broader above; out of which spring blue flowers; the stalk hereof is slender, and covered with a white thin down: the leaves are long, gashed likewise on both sides, and armed in every corner with sharp prickles.

6. There is another called the Down-Thistle, which riseth up with thick and long stalks. The leaves thereof are jagged, set with prickles, white on the nether side: the heads be round and many in number, and are covered with a soft down, and sharp prickles standing forth on every side, being on the upper part fraughted with purple flowers all of strings: the seed is long, and shineth, as doth the seed of many of the Thistles.

The Place.

They are sown in gardens, and do not grow in these countries that we can find. So saith our author, but I have found the sixth by Pocklington and in other places of the Wolds in Yorkshire. Mr. Goodyer also found it in Hampshire.
The Time.

They flower and flourish when the other Thistles do.

The Names.

Fuchsius did at the first take it to be *Chamaeleon niger*, but afterwards being better advised, he named it *Spina peregrina*, and *Carduus globosus*. Valerius Cordus doth fitly call it *Sphaerocephalus*: the same name doth also agree with the rest, for they have a round head like a ball or globe. Most would have the first to be that which Matthiolus setteth down for *Spina alba*: this Thistle is called in English, Globe Thistle, and Ball Thistle.

The downy or woolly headed Thistle is called in Latin, being destitute of another name, *Eriocephalus*, of the woolly head: in English, Down Thistle or Woolly Headed Thistle. It is thought by divers to be that which Bartholomus Urbeveteranus and Angelus Palea, Franciscan friars, report to be called *Corona fratrum*, or Friar's Crown: but this Thistle doth far differ from that, as is evident by those things which they have written concerning *Corona fratrum*; which is thus: In the borders of the kingdom of Aragon towards the kingdom of Castile we find another kind of Thistle, which groweth plentifully there, by common ways, and in wheat fields, &c. vide Dodoneæus *Pempt. 5. lib. 5. cap. 5."

The Temperature and Virtues.

Concerning the temperature and virtues of these Thistles we can allege nothing at all.
CHAP. 479. Of the Artichoke.

There be three sorts of Artichokes, two tame or of the garden; and one wild, which the Italian esteemeth greatly of, as the best to be eaten raw, which he calleth Cardune.

The Description.

1. The leaves of the great Artichoke, called in Latin Cinara, are broad, great, long, set with deep gashes in the edges, with a deep channel or gutter alongst the middle, bearing no prickles at all, or very few, and they be of a green ash colour: the stalk is above a cubit high, and bringeth forth on the top a fruit like a globe, resembling at the first a cone or Pineapple, that is to say, made up of many scales; which is when the fruit is great or loosed of a greenish red colour within, and in the lower part full of substance and white; but when it opens itself there grows also upon the cone a flower all of threads, of a gallant purple tending to a blue colour. The seed is long, greater and thicker than that of Our Lady's Thistle, lying under soft and downy hairs which are contained within the fruit. The root is thick, and of a mean length.

2. The second great Artichoke differeth from the former in the colour of the fruit, otherwise there is little difference, except the fruit hereof dilateth itself further abroad, and is not so closely compacst together, which maketh the difference.
3. The prickly Artichoke, called in Latin *Carduus*, or *Cinara spinosa*, differeth not from the former, save that all the corners of the leaves hereof, and the stalks of the cone or fruit, are armed with stiff and sharp prickles, whereupon it beareth well the name of *Carduus*, or Thistle.

**The Place.**

The Artichoke is to be planted in a fat and fruitful soil: they do love water and moist ground. They commit great error who cut away the side or superfluous leaves that grow by the sides, thinking thereby to increase the greatness of the fruit, when as in truth they deprive the root from much water by that means, which should nourish it to the seeding of the fruit; for if you mark the trough or hollow channel that is in every leaf; it shall appear very evidently, that the Creator in his secret wisdom did ordain those furrows, even from the extreme point of the leaf to the ground where it is fastened to the root, for no other purpose but to guide and lead that water which falls far off, unto the root; knowing that without such store of water the whole plant would wither, and the fruit pine away and come to nothing.

**The Time.**

They are planted for the most part about the Kalends of November, or somewhat sooner. The plant must be set and dunged with good store of ashes, for that kind of dung is thought best for planting thereof. Every year the slips must be torn or slipped off from the body of the root, and these are to be set in April, which will bear fruit about August following, as Columella, Palladius, and common experience teacheth.

**The Names.**

The Artichoke is called in Latin *Cinara*, of *Cinis*, ashes, wherewith it loveth to be dunged. Galen calleth it in Greek *Kivara*, but with k and v in the first syllable: of some it is called *Cactos*; it is named in Italian, *Carcioffi, Archiocchi*; in Spanish *Alcarrhosa*; in English, Artichoke: in French, *Artichaux*; in Low Dutch, *Artichoken*.
whereupon divers call it in Latin Articocalus, and Articoca: in High Dutch Strobildorn.

The other is named in Latin commonly not only Cinara spinosa, or prickly Artichoke, but also of Palladius, Cardhus: of the Italians, Cardo, and Cardino: of the Spaniards, Cardos: of the Frenchmen, Chardons: Leonhartus Fuchsius and most writers take it to be Scolymus dioscoridis; but Scolymus dioscoridis hath the leaf of Chamaeleon or Spina alba, with a stalk full of leaves, and a prickly head: but neither is Cinara the Artichoke which is without prickles, nor the Artichoke with prickles any such kind of herb; for though the head hath prickles, yet the stalk is not full of leaves, but is many times without leaves, or else hath not past a leaf or two. Cinara doth better agree with that which Theophrastus and Pliny call Kaktos, Cactus, and yet it doth not bring forth stalks from the root creeping alongst the ground: it hath broad leaves set with prickles; the middle ribs of the leaves, the skin pilled off, are good to be eaten, and likewise the fruit, the seed and down taken away; and that which is under is as tender as the brain of the Date tree: which things Theophrastus and Pliny report of Cactus. That which they write of the stalks, sent forth immediately from the root upon the ground, which are good to be eaten, is peradventure the ribs of the leaves: every side taken away (as they be served up at the table) may be like a stalk, except even in Sicilia, where they grew only in Theophrastus' time. It bringeth forth both certain stalks that be on the ground, and another also standing straight up; but afterwards being removed and brought into Italy or England, it bringeth forth no more but one upright: for the soil and clime do much prevail in altering of plants, as not only Theophrastus teacheth, but also even experience itself declareth: and of Cactus, Theophrastus writeth thus; Cactus groweth only in Sicilia: it bringeth forth presently from the root stalks lying along upon the ground, with a broad and prickly leaf: the stalks being pilled are fit to be eaten; being somewhat bitter, which may be preserved in brine: it bringeth forth also another stalk, which is likewise good to be eaten.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The nails, that is, the white and thick parts which are in the bottom of the outward scales or flakes of the fruit of the Artichoke, and also the middle pulp whereon the downy seed stands, are eaten both raw with pepper and salt, and commonly boiled with the broth of fat flesh, with pepper added, and are accounted a dainty dish, being pleasant to the taste, and good to procure bodily lust: so likewise the middle ribs of the leaves being made white and tender by good cherishing and looking to, are brought to the table as a great service together with other junkets: they are eaten with pepper and salt as be the raw Artichokes: yet both of them are of ill juice; for the Artichoke containeth plenty of choleric juice, and hath an hard substance, insomuch as of this is engendered melancholy juice, and of that a thin and choleric blood, as Galen teacheth in his book Of the Faculties of Nourishments. But it is best to eat the Artichoke boiled: the ribs of the leaves are altogether of an hard substance: they yield to the body a raw and melancholy juice, and contain in them great store of wind.

B. It stayeth the involuntary course of the natural seed either in man or woman.

C. Some write, that if the buds of young Artichokes be first steeped in wine, and eaten, they provoke urine, and stir up the lust of the body.
D. I find moreover, that the root is good against the rank smell of the armholes, if when the pith is taken away the same root be boiled in wine and drunk: for it sendeth forth plenty of stinking urine, whereby the rank and rammish savour of the whole body is much amended.
CHAP. 480. Of Golden Thistles.

The Description.

1. The stalks of Golden Thistle rise up forthwith from the root, being many, round, and branched. The leaves are long, of a beautiful green, with deep gashes on the edges, and set with most sharp prickles: the flowers come from the bottom of the leaves, set in a scaly chaffy knop, very like to Succory flowers, but of colour as yellow as gold: in their places come up broad flat and thin seeds, not great, nor wrapped in down: the root is long, a finger thick; sweet, soft, and good to be eaten, wherewith swine are much delighted: there issueth forth of this thistle in what part soever it is cut or broken, a juice as white as milk.

There is some variety of this thistle; for it is found much larger about Montpellier than it is in Spain, with longer branches, but fewer flowers: the leaves also are spotted or streaked with white like as the Milk Thistle: whence Clusius, whom I here follow, hath given two figures thereof, the former by the name of *Scolymus theophrasti hispanicus*; and the other by the title of *Scolymus theophrasti narbonensis*. This with white spots I saw growing this year with Mr Tradescant at South Lambeth.

2. The Golden Thistle of Peru, called in the West Indies, *Fique del inferno*, a friend of mine brought it unto me from an island there called Saint John's Island, among other seeds. What reason the inhabitants there have to call it so, it is unto me unknown, unless it be because of his fruit, which doth much resemble a fig in shape and bigness, but is full of sharp and venomous prickles, that whosoever had one of
them in his throat, doubtless it would send him packing either to heaven or to hell. This plant hath a single woody root as big as a man's thumb, but somewhat long: from which ariseth a brittle stalk full of joints or knees, dividing itself into sundry other small branches, set full of leaves like unto the Milk Thistle, but much smaller, and streaked with many white lines or streaks: and at the top of the stalk come forth fair and goodly yellow flowers, very like unto the Sea Poppy, but more elegant, and of greater beauty, having in the midst thereof a small knop or boll, such as is in the middle of our wild Poppy, but full of sharp thorns, and at the end thereof a stain or spot of a deep purple: after the yellow flowers be fallen, this foresaid knop groweth by degrees greater and greater, until it come to full maturity, which openeth itself at the upper end, showing his seed which is very black and round like the seeds of mustard. The whole plant and each part thereof doth yield very great abundance of milky juice, which is of a golden colour, falling and issuing from any part thereof, if it be cut or bruised: the whole plant perisheth at the approach of winter. The virtues hereof are yet unknown unto me, wherefore I purpose not to set down anything thereof by way of conjecture, but shall, God willing, be ready to declare that which certain knowledge and experience either of mine own or others, shall make manifest unto me.

The Place.

The Golden Thistle is sown in gardens of the Low Countries. Petrus Bellonius writes, That it groweth plentifully in Candy, and also in most places of Italy: Clusius reporteth that he found it in the fields of Spain, and of the kingdom of Castile, and about Montpellier, with fewer branches, and of a higher growth.

The Indian Thistle groweth in Saint John's Island in the West Indies, and prospereth very well in my garden.

The Time.

They flower from June to the end of August: the seed of the Indian Golden Thistle must be sown when it is ripe, but it doth not grow up until May next after.

The Names.

This thistle is called in Latin Carduus chrysanthemus: in Greek of Theophrastus, Scolymos: for those things which he writeth of scolymos in his sixth and seventh books do wholly agree with this thistle Chrysanthemus: which are these; Scolymus, doth flower in the summer solstice, bravely and a long time together; it hath a root that may be eaten both sod and raw, and when it is broken it yieldeth a milky juice: Gaza nameth it Carduus. Of this Pliny also makes mention, lib. 21, ch. 16. Scolymus, saith he, differs from those kinds of Thistles, viz. Acarna and Atractilis, because the root thereof may be eaten boiled. Again, lib. 22, cap. 22, The East countries use it as a meat: and he calleth it by another name Leimonion. Which thing also Theophrastus seemeth to affirm, in his sixth book; for when he reckoneth up herbs whose leaves are set with prickles, he addeth Scolymus, or Limonia.

Notwithstanding, Pliny maketh mention likewise of another Scolymus, which he affirmeth to bring forth a purple flower, and between the middle of the pricks to wax white quickly, and to fall off with the wind; in his twentieth book, cap. 2. Which thistle doubtless doth not agree with Carduus chrysanthemis, that is, with Theophrastus his Scolymus, and with that which we mentioned before: so that there be in Pliny two Scolymi; one with a root that may be eaten, and another with a purple flower, turning into down, and that speedily waxeth white. Scolymus is likewise described by Dioscorides; but this differs from Scolymus theophrasti, and it is one of
those which Pliny reckoneth up, as we will more at large declare hereafter. But let us come again to *Chrysanthemus*: this the inhabitants of Candy, keeping the marks of the old name, do call *Ascolymbros*: the Italians name it *Anconiati Rinci*: the Romans, *Spina borda*: the Spaniards, *Cardon lechar*: and of divers it is also named *Glycyrrhizon*, that is to say, *Dulcis radix*, or sweet Root: it is called in English, Golden Thistle: some would have it to be that which Regetius in *Arte Veterinaria* calls *Eryngium*: but they are deceived; for that *Eryngium* whereof Vegetius writeth is *Eryngium marinum*, or sea Hulver, of which we will entreat.

The Golden Thistle of India may be called *Carduus chrysanthemus*, of his golden colour, adding thereto his native country *indianus*, or *peruanus*, or the Golden Indian Thistle, or the Golden Thistle of Peru: the seed came to my hands by the name *Fique del Inferno*: in Latin, *Ficus infernalis*, the infernal fig, or fig of hell.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. The root and tender leaves of this Scolymus, which are sometimes eaten, are good for the stomach, but they contain very little nourishment, and the same thin and watery, as Galen teacheth.

B. Pliny saith, that the root hereof was commended by Eratosthenes, in the poor man's supper, and that it is reported also to provoke urine especially; to heal tetters and dry scurf, being taken with vinegar; and with Wine to stir up fleshly lust, as Hesiod and Alcæus testify; and to take away the stench of the arm-holes, if an ounce of the root, the pith picked out, be boiled in three parts of wine, till one part be wasted, and a good draught taken fasting after a bath, and likewise after meat, which later words Dioscorides likewise hath concerning his *Scolymus*: out of whom Pliny is thought to have borrowed these things.
CHAP. 481. Of White Carline Thistle of Dioscorides.

The Description.

1. The leaves of Carline are very full of prickles, cut on both edges with a multitude of deep gashes, and set along the corners with stiff and very sharp prickles; the middle ribs whereof are sometimes red: the stalk is a span high or higher, bringing forth for the most part only one head or knop being full of prickles, on the outward circumference or compass like the urchin husk of a chestnut: and when this openeth at the top, there groweth forth a broad flower, made up in the middle like a flat ball, of a great number of threads, which is compassed about with little long leaves, oftentimes somewhat white, very seldom, red: the seed underneath is slender and narrow, the root is long, a finger thick, something black; so chinked as though it were split in sunder, sweet of smell, and in taste somewhat bitter.

2. There is also another hereof without a stalk, with leaves also very full of prickles, like almost to those of the other, lying flat on the ground on every side: among which there groweth forth in the middle a round head or knop, set with prickles without after the same maner, but greater: the flower whereof in the middle is of strings, and paled round about with red leaves, and sometimes with white, in fair and calm weather the flowers both of this and also of the other lay themselves wide open, and when the weather is foul and misty, are drawn close together: the root hereof is long, and sweet of smell, white, sound, not nicked or splitted as the other.
3. This small purple Carline Thistle hath a pretty large root divided oft-times at the top into divers branches, from which rise many green leaves lying spread upon the ground, deeply cut and set with sharp prickles; in the midst of these leaves come up sometimes one, but otherwhiles more scaly heads, which carry a pretty large flower composed of many purple threads, like that of the Knapweed, but larger, and of a brighter colour; these heads grow usually close to the leaves, yet sometimes they stand upon stalks three or four inches high: when the flower is past they turn into down, and are carried away with the wind: the seed is small and greyish. This grows upon Blackheath, upon the chalky hills about Dartford, and in many such places. It flowers in July and August. Tragus calls it *Chamaeleon albus, vel exiguus*; Lobel, *Carduus acaulis, septentrionalium*, and *Chamaeleon albus, cordi*: Clusius, *Carlina minor purpureo flore*, and he saith in the opinion of some, it seems not unlike to the *Chamaeleon* whereof Theophrastus makes mention, *lib. 6. cap. 3. Hist. plant.*

The Place.

They both grow upon high mountains in desert places, and oftentimes by highway sides: but that which bringeth forth a stalk growth everywhere in Germany, and is a stranger in England.

The Time.

They flower and seed in July and August, and many times later.

The Names.

The former is called in Latin; *Carlina*, and *Cardopatium*; and of divers, *Carolina*, of Charlemagne the first Roman Emperor of that name, whose army (as it is reported) was in times past through the benefit of this root delivered and preserved from the plague: it is called in High Dutch Ebertwurtz: in low Dutch, French, and other
languages, as likewise in English, Carline, and Carline Thistle: it is Dioscorides his *Leucacantha*, the strong and bitter roots show the same; the faculties also are answerable, as forthwith we will declare: *Leucacantha* hath also the other names, but they are counterfeit, as among the Romans *Gniacardus*; and among the Tuscans, *Spina alba*, or White Thistle, yet doth it differ from that Thistle which Dioscorides calleth *Spina alba*, of which he also writing apart, doth likewise attribute to both of them their own proper faculties and operation and the same differing.

The later writers do also call the other *Carlina altera*, and *Carlina humilis*, or *minor*, low or little Carline: but they are much deceived who go about to refer them both to the Chamaeleons; for in Italy, Germany, or France, *Chamaeleones*, the Chamaeleons do never grow, as there is one witness for many, Petrus Bellonius, in his first book *Of Singularities*, who sufficiently declareth what difference there is between the Carlines and the Chamaeleons; which thing shall be made manifest by the description of the Chamaeleons.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. The root of Carline, which is chiefly used, is hot in the later end of the second degree, and dry in the third, with a thinness of parts and substance; it procureth sweat, it driveth forth all kind of worms of the belly, it is an enemy to all manner of poisons, it doth not only drive away infections of the plague, but also cureth the same, if it be drunk in time.

B. Being chewed it helpeth the toothache; it openeth the stoppings of the liver and spleen.

C. It provoketh urine, bringeth down the menses, and cureth the dropsy.

D. And it is given to those that have been dry beaten, and fallen from some high place.

E. The like operations Dioscorides hath concerning *Leucacantha*: *Leucacantha* (saith he) hath a root like Cyperus, bitter and strong, which being chewed easeth the pain of the teeth: the decoction thereof with a draught of wine is a remedy against pains of the sides, and is good for those that have the Sciatica or ache in the huckle bones, and for them that be troubled with the cramp.

F. The juice also being drunk is of like virtues.
CHAP. 482. Of Wild Carline Thistle.

The Description.

1. The Great Wild Carline Thistle riseth up with a stalk of a cubit high or higher, divided into certain branches: the leaves are long, and very full of prickles in the edges, like those of Carline: the flowers grow also upon a prickly head, being set with threads in the midst, and paled round about with a little yellowish leaves: the root is slender, and hath a twinging taste.

2. Carolus Clusius describeth a certain other also of this kind, with one only stalk, slender, short, and not above a handful high, with prickly leaves like those of the other, but lesser, both of them covered with a certain hoary down: the heads or knops are for the most part two, they have a pale down in the midst, and leaves standing round about, being somewhat stiff and yellow: the root is slender, and of a reddish yellow.

The Place.

The great Carline is found in untoiled and desert places, and oftentimes upon hills. It groweth upon Blackheath, and in many other places of Kent.

The Lesser Carline Carolus Clusius writeth that he found growing in dry stony and desert places, about Salamanca a city of Spain.

The Time.

They flower and flourish in June and July.
Gerard's Herbal

The Names.

It is commonly called in Latin, and that not unfitly, *Carlina sylvestris*; for it is like to Carline in flowers, and is not very unlike in leaves. And that this is *Acorna*, it is so much the harder to affirm, by how much the briefer Theophrastus hath written hereof; for he saith that this is like Bastard Saffron, of a yellow colour and fat juice: and *Acorna* differs from *Acarna*; for *Acarna*, as Hesychius saith, is the Bay tree; but *Acorna* is a prickly plant.

The Temperature and Virtues.

It is hot, especially in the root, the twinging taste thereof doth declare; but seeing it is of no use, the other faculties be unsearched out.
CHAP. 483. Of Chamaeleon Thistle.

The Kinds.

Here be two Chamaeleons, and both black: the virtues of their roots do differ, and the roots themselves do differ in kind; as Theophrastus declareth.

The Description.

1. The leaves of Black Chamaeleon are lesser and slenderer than those of the prickly Artichoke, and sprinkled with red spots: the stalk is a cubit high, a finger thick, and somewhat red: it beareth a tufted roundel, in which are slender prickly flowers of a blue colour like the Hyacinth. The root is thick, black without, of a close substance, sometimes eaten away, which being cut is of a yellowish colour within, and being chewed it bites the tongue.

2. This Black Chamaeleon hath many leaves, long and narrow, very full of prickles, of a light green, in a manner white: the stalk is chamfered, a foot high, and divided into branches, on the tops whereof stand purple flowers growing forth of prickly heads: the root is black, and sweet in taste. This is described by Clusius in his *Spanish Observations*, by the name of *Chamaeleon salmanticensis*, of the place wherein he found it: for he saith that this growtheth plentifully in the territory of Salamanca a city in Spain: but it is very manifest that this is not Black Chamaeleon neither doth Clusius affirm it.
The Place.

It is very common, saith Bellonius, in Lemnos, where it beareth a flower of so gallant a blue, as that it seemeth to contend with the sky in beauty; and that the flower of Blue-Bottle being of this colour, seems in comparison of it to be but pale. It groweth also in the fields near Abydum, and hard by the rivers of Hellespont, and in Heraclea in Thracia.

*Chamaeleon salmanticensis* groweth plentifully in the territory of Salamanca a city in Spain.

The Time.

They flower and flourish when the other Thistles do.

The Names.

The Black Chamaeleon is called in Latin, *Chamaeleon niger*: of the Romans, *Carduus niger*, and *Vernilago*: of some, *Crocodilion*: in English, the Chamaeleon Thistle, or the Thistle that changeth itself into many shapes and colours.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The root hereof, as Galen saith, containeth in it a deadly quality: it is also by Nicander numbered among the poisonous herbs, in his book *Of Treacles*; by Dioscorides, *lib. 6.* and by Paulus Ægineta: and therefore it is used only outwardly, as for scabs, morphews, titters, and to be brief for all such things as stand in need of cleansing: moreover, it is mixed with such things as do dissolve and mollify, as Galen saith.
The Kinds.

Dioscorides maketh mention only of one Sea Holly: Pliny, *lib. 22. cap. 7*, seems to acknowledge two, one growing in rough places, another by the seaside. The physicians after them, have observed more.

The Description.

1. Sea Holly hath broad leaves almost like to Mallow leaves, but cornered in the edges, and set round about with hard prickles, fat, of a bluish white and of an aromatical or spicy taste: the stalk is thick, above a cubit high, now and then somewhat red below: it breaketh forth on the tops into prickly or round heads or knops, of the bigness of a walnut, held in for the most part with six prickly leaves, compassing the top of the stalk round about: which leaves as well as the heads are of a glistening blue: the flowers forth of the heads are likewise blue, with white threads in the midst: the root is of the bigness of a man's finger, very long, and so long, as that it cannot be all plucked up, unless very seldom; set here and therewith knots, and of taste sweet and pleasant.

2. The leaves of the second Sea Holly are diversely cut into sundry parcels, being all full of prickles amongst the edges: the stalk is divided into many branches, and bringeth forth prickly heads, but lesser than those of the other: from which there also grow forth blue flowers, seldom yellow: there stand likewise under every one of these, six rough and prickly leaves like those of the other, but thinner and smaller: the
root hereof is also long, black without, white within, a finger thick, in taste and smell like that of the other, as be also the leaves, which are likewise of an aromatical or spicy taste, which being new sprung up, and as yet tender, be also good to be eaten.

**The Place.**

*Eryngium maritum* grows by the seaside upon the beach and stony ground: I found it growing plentifully at Whitstable in Kent, at Rye and Winchelsea in Sussex, and in Essex at Landamer Lading, at Harwich, and upon Langtree point, on the other side of the water, from whence I have brought plants for my garden.

*Eryngium campestre* growtheth upon the shores of the Mediterranean sea, and in my garden likewise.

**The Time.**

Both of them do flower after the summer solstice, and in July.

**The Names.**

This Thistle is called in Greek and likewise in Latin *Eryngium*: and of Pliny also *Erynge*: in shops, *Eringus*; in English, Sea Holly, Sea Holm, or Sea Hulver.

The first is called in Latin *Eryngium maritum*: in Low Dutch everywhere, *Cryus distil, Eindeloos, Meerwortele*: in English, Sea Holly.

The second is named of Pliny, *lib. 22. cap. 8, Centum capita*, or hundred-headed Thistle: in High Dutch, *Wansitrew, Branchendistel, Radendistel*: in Spanish, *Cardo corredor*: in Italian, *Eringio*, and *Iringo*: this is surnamed *campestre*, or Champion Sea Holly, that it may differ from the other.

**The Temperature.**

The roots of them both are hot, and that in a mean; and a little dry also, with a thinness of substance, as Galen testifieth.

**The Virtues.**

A. The roots of sea Holly boiled in wine and drunken are good for them that are troubled with the colic, it breaketh the stone, expelleth gravel, and helpeth also the infirmities of the kidneys, provoketh urine, greatly opening the passages, being drunk fifteen days together.

B. The roots themselves have the same property if they be eaten, and are good for those that be liver-sick, and for such as are bitten with any venomous beast: they ease cramps, convulsions, and the falling sickness, and bring down the terms.

C. The roots condited or preserved with sugar, as hereafter followeth, are exceeding good to be given unto old and aged people that are consumed and withered with age, and which want natural moisture: they are also good for other sorts of people that have no delight or appetite to venery; nourishing and restoring the aged, and amending the defects of nature in the younger.

D. Refine sugar fit for the purpose, and take a pound of it, the white of an egg, and a pint of clear water, boil them together and scum it, then let it boil until it be come to good strong syrup, and when it is boiled, as it cooleth, add thereto a saucer full of rose-water, a spoonful of cinnamon water, and a grain of musk, which have been infused together the night before, and now strained; into which syrup being more
than half cold, put in your roots to soak and infuse until the next day; your roots being ordered in manner hereafter following:

E. These your roots being washed and picked, must be boiled in fair water by the space of some hours, until they be soft, then must they be pilled clean, as ye pill parsnips, and the pith must be drawn out at the end of the root; and if there be any whose pith cannot be drawn out at the end, then you must slit them, and so take out the pith: these you must also keep from much handling, that they may be clean, let them remain in the syrup till the next day, and then set them on the fire in a fair broad pan until they be very hot, but let them not boil at all: let them there remain over the fire an hour or more, removing them easily in the pan from one place to another with a wooden slice. This done, have in a readiness great cap or royal papers, whereupon you must strew some sugar, upon which lay your roots after that you have taken them out of the pan. These papers you must put into a stove, or hothouse to harden; but if you have not such place, lay them before a good fire. In this manner if you condite your roots there is not any that can prescribe you a better way. And thus may you condite any other root whatsoever, which will not only be exceeding delicate, but very wholesome, and effectuall against the diseases above named.

F. A certain man affirmeth, saith Aetius, that by the continual use of Sea Holly, he never afterward voided any stone, when as before he was very often tormented with that disease.

G. It is drunk, saith Dioscorides, with Carrot seed against very many infirmities, in the weight of a dram.

H. The juice of the leaves pressed forth with wine is a remedy for those that are troubled with the running of the reins.

I. They report that the herb Sea Holly, if one Goat take it into her mouth, it causeth her first to stand still, and afterwards the whole flock, until such time as the shepherd take it forth of her mouth, as Plutarch writeth.
CHAP. 485. Of Bastard Sea Hollies.

The Description

1. This Eryngium which Dodonæus in his last edition calleth Eryngium planum; and Pena more fitly and truly, Eryngium alpinum caeruleum, hath stalks a cubit and a half high, having spaces between every joint: the lower leaves are greater.

Fig. 1651. Kinds of Sea Holly (1-4)
and broader, and notched about the edges; but those above are lesser, compassing or environing each joint star-fashion, beset with prickles which are soft and tender, not much hurtful to the hands of such as touch them; the knobs or heads are also prickly, and in colour blue. The root is bunchy or knotty, like that of Helenium, that is Elecampane, black without, and white within, and like the Eringes in sweetness and taste.

2. The second Bastard Sea Holly, whose picture is set forth in Dodonæus his last edition very gallantly, being also a kind of Thistle, hath leaves like unto the former Eringges, but broader next the roots than those which grow next the stalks, somewhat long, greenish, soft, and not prickly, but lightly creviced or notched about the edges, greater than Quince leaves. The stalks grow more than a cubit high; on the tops whereof there hang downwards five or six knops or heads, in colour and flowers like the other; having three or four whitish roots of a foot long.

3. The third kind of Bastard Eryngium hath his first leaves (which grow next the ground) great, broad, and soft, growing as it were in a roundel about the root. The stalk is small and slender divided into some branches, which bear many little leaves, turning or standing many ways, which be also slender, prickly, and set about the stalks star-fashion. The knops or heads growing at the tops of the branches are round and prickly, bearing little blue flowers and leaves, which compass them about: the root is slender, and lasteth but one year.

4. The fourth kind of Bastard Sea Holly, which Pena calleth Eryngium montanum recentiorum, and is the fourth according to Dodonæus his account, is like to the Erynges, not in shape but in taste: this beareth a very small and slender stalk, of a mean height, whereupon do grow three or four leaves, & seldom five, made of divers leaves set upon a middle rib, narrow, long, hard, and of a dark green colour; dented on both edges of the leaf like a saw: the stalk is a cubit high, jointed or knotted, and dividing itself into many branches, on the tops whereof are round tufts or uvmbels, wherein are contained the flowers, and after they be faded, the seeds, which are small, somewhat long, well smelling, and sharp in taste: the root is white and long, not a finger thick, in taste sweet, but afterwards somewhat sharp, and in scent and savour not upleasant: when the root is dried, it may be crumbled in pieces, and therefore quickly brayed.
5. This is a low plant presently from the root divided into sundry branches, slender, round & lying on the ground: at each joint grow leaves without any certain order, broad toward their ends, and narrower at their setting to, snipped about their edges: those next the root were some inch broad, and two or more long, of a yellowish green colour: the stalks are parted into sundry branches and at each joint have little leaves, and rough and green heads, with bluish flowers in them: the roots creep, and are somewhat like those of Asparagus. This neither Clusius nor Lobel found wild; but it grew in the garden of John Moution of Tournai, a learned apothecary very skilful in the knowledge of plants: whereupon they both called it *Eryngium pusillum planum moutoni*.

**The Place.**

These kinds of sea Holly are strangers in England: we have the first and second in our London gardens.

**The Time.**

They flower and flourish when the Thistles do.

**The Names.**

These plants be *Eryngia spuria*, or Bastard Sea Hollies, and are lately observed: and therefore they have no old names.

The first may be called in Latin *Eryngium borussicum*, or *non spinosum*: Sea Holly without prickles.

The second is called by Matthiolus, *Eryngium planum* or flat Sea Holly: others had rather name it *Eryngium alpinum*, or Sea Holly of the Alps.

The third is rightly called *Eryngium pumilum*, Little Sea Hulver.
Matthiolus maketh the fourth to be *Crithmum quartum*, or the fourth kind of Samphire: and others, as Dodonæus and Lobel, have made it a kind of Sea Hulver.

**The Temperature and Virues.**

Touching the faculties hereof we have nothing to set down, seeeing they have as yet no use in medicine, nor used to be eaten. But yet that they be hot, the very taste doth declare.
CHAP. 486. Of Star-Thistle.

The Description.

The Star-Thistle, called Carduus stellatus, hath many soft frizzled leaves, deeply cut or gashed, altogether without prickles: among which riseth up a stalk, dividing itself into many other branches, growing two foot high; on the tops whereof are small knops or heads like the other Thistles, armed round about with many sharp prickles, fashioned like a blazing star, which at the beginning are of a purple colour, but afterwards of a pale bleak or whitish colour: the seed is small, flat, and round; the root is long, and brown without.

2. Saint Barnaby's Thistle is another kind of Star-Thistle, notwithstanding it hath prickles nowhere save in the head only, and the prickles of it stand forth in manner of a star: the stalks are two cubits high, parted into divers branches softer than are those of Star-Thistle, which stalks have films or thin skins cleaving unto them all in length, by which they seem to be four-square: the leaves are somewhat long, set with deep gashes on the edges: the flowers are yellow, and consist of threads: the seed is little; the root long and slender.

The Place.

The two first do grow upon barren places near unto cities and towns, almost everywhere.
The Time.

They flower and flourish especially in July and August.

The Names.

The first is called in Latin, Stellaria; as also Carduus stellatus, and likewise Carduus calcitrapa; but they are deceived, who take it to be Eryngium, or Sea Holly, or any kind thereof. Matthiolus saith, that it is called in Italian Calcatrippa: in High Dutch, Wallen distel: in low Dutch, Sterre distel: in French, Chausse trappe: in English, Star-Thistle.

St. Barnaby's Thistle is called in Latin Spina solstitatus, because it flowereth in the summer solstice, as Gesner saith, or rather because after the solstice the prickles thereof be sharpest: of Guillandinus, Eryngium, but not properly, and Stellaria horatii augerii, who with good success gave it against the stone, dropsies, green sickness, and quotidian fevers. It is called in English as above said, Saint Barnaby's Thistle.

The Temperature.

The Star Thistle is of a hot nature.

The Virtues.

A. The seed is commended against the strangury; it is reported to drive forth the stone, if it be drunk with wine.

B. Baptista Sardus affirmeth, that the distilled water of this thistle is a remedy for those that are infected with the French Pox, and that the use of this is good for the liver, that it taketh away the stoppings thereof.

C. That it cleanseth the blood from corrupt and putrefied humours.

D. That it is given with good success against intermitting fevers whether they be quotidian or tertian.

E. As touching the faculties of Saint Barnaby's Thistle, which are as yet not found out, we have nothing to write.
CHAP. 487. Of Teasels.

The Kinds

Our age hath set down two kinds of Teasels: the tame, and the wild. These differ not save only in the husbanding; for all things that are planted and manured do more flourish, and come for the most part fitter for man's use.

The Description.

1. Garden Teasel is also of the number of the Thistles; it bringeth forth a stalk that is straight, very long, jointed, and full of prickles: the leaves grow forth of the joints by couples, not only opposite or set one right against another, but also compassing the stalk about, and fastened together; and so fastened, that they hold dew and rain water in manner of a little basin: these be long, of a light green colour, and like to those of Lettuce, but full of prickles in the edges, and have on the outside all alongst the ridge stiffer prickles: on the tops of the stalks stand heads with sharp prickles like those of the Hedgehog, and crooking backward at the point like hooks: out of which heads grow little flowers. The seed is like Fennel seed, and in taste bitter: the heads wax white when they grow old, and there are found in the midst of them when they are cut, certain little maggots: the root is white, and of a mean length.

2. The second kind of Teasel which is also a kind of Thistle, is very like unto the former, but his leaves are smaller & narrower: his flowers of a purple colour, and the hooks of the Teasel nothing so hard or sharp as the other, nor good for any use in dressing of cloth.
3. There is another kind of Teasel, being a wild kind thereof, and accounted among these Thistles, growing higher than the rest of his kinds; but his knobbed heads are no bigger than a Nutmeg, in all other things else they are like to the other wild kinds. This hath the lower leaves deeply cut in with one gash on each side at the bottom of the leaf, which little ears are omitted in the figure: the leaves also are less than the former, and narrower at the setting on, and hold no water as the two former do: the whole plant is also much less.

The Place.

The first called the tame Teasel is sown in this country in gardens, to serve the use of fullers and clothworkers.

The second kind groweth in moist places by brooks, rivers, and such like places.

The third I found growing in moist places in the highway leading from Braintree to Henningham Castle in Essex, and not in any other place except here & there a plant upon the highway from Much Dunmow to London. Thus our author: I found it growing in great plenty at Edgecombe by Croydon, close by the gate of the house of my much honoured friend Sir John Tunstall.

The Time.

These flower for the most part in June and July.

The Names.

Teasel is called in Greek, and likewise in Latin, *Dipsacus, Labrum veneris*, and *Carduus veneris*: it is termed *Labrum veneris*, and *Laver lavacrum*, of the form of the leaves made up in fashion of a baisin, which is never without water: they

The third is thought to be *Galedragon plinii*: of which he hath written in his 27th book, the tenth Chapter.

**The Temperature.**

The roots of these plants are dry in the second degree and have a certain cleansing faculty.

**The Virtues.**

A. There is small use of Teasel in medicines: the heads (as we have said) are used to dress woolen cloth with.

B. Dioscorides writeth, that the root being boiled in wine, & stamped till it is come to the substance of a salve, healeth chaps and fistulae of the fundament, if it be applied thereunto; and that this medicine must be preserved in a box of copper, and that also it is reported to be good for all kinds of warts.

C. It is needless here to allege those things that are added touching the little worms or maggots found in the heads of the Teasel, and which are to be hanged about the neck, or to mention the like thing that Pliny reporteth of Galedragon: for they are nothing else but most vain and trifling toys, as myself have proved a little before the impression hereof, having a most grievous ague and of long continuance: notwithstanding physic charms, these worms hanged about my neck, spiders put into a walnut shell, and divers such foolish toys that I was constrained to take by fantastic peoples' procurement; notwithstanding I say, my help came from God himself, for these medicines and all other such things did me no good at all.
CHAP. 488. Of Bastard Saffron.

1. *Cnicus*, called also Bastard Saffron, which may very well be reckoned among the Thistles, riseth up with a stalk of a cubit and a half high, straight, smooth, round, hard, and woody, & branched at the top: it is defended with long leaves something broad, sharp, pointed, and with prickles in the edges: from the tops of the stalks stand out little heads or knops of the bigness of an olive or bigger, set with many sharp pointed and prickly scales: out of which come forth flowers like threads, closely compact, of a deep yellow shining colour, drawing near to the colour of Saffron: under them are long seeds, smooth, white, somewhat cornered, bigger than a barley corn, the husk whereof is something hard, the inner pulp or substance is fat, white, sweet in taste: the root slender and unprofitable.

2. There is also another kind of Bastard Saffron, that may very well be numbered amongst the kinds of Thistles, and is very like unto the former, saving that his flocky or thready flowers, are of a blue colour: the root is thicker, and the whole plant is altogether more sharp in prickles: the stalks also are more crested and hairy.

The Place.

It is sown in divers places of Italy, Spain, and France, both in gardens and in fields: Pliny, *lib. 25, cap. 15*, saith, that in the reign of Vespasian this was not known
in Italy; being in Egypt only of good account, and that they used to make oil of it, and not meat.

**The Time.**

The flowers are perfected in July and August: the root after the seed is ripe, the same year it is sown withereth away.

**The Names.**

It is called in Greek *Cnicus*: in Latin also *Cnicus* or *Cnecus*: in shops, *Cartamus*, or *Carthamus*: of divers, *Crocus hortensis*, and *Crocus saracenicus*: in Italian, *Zaffarano Saracinesco*, and *Zaffarano Salvatico*: in Spanish, *Alasor*, and *Semente de papagaios*: in High Dutch, *Wilden Zaffran*: in French, *Safran Sauvage*: in English, Bastard Saffron: of some, Mock Saffron, and Saffron D'orte, as though you should say Saffron *de horte*, or of the garden. Theophrastus and Pliny call it *Cnecus urbana*, and *sativa*, or tame and garden Bastard Saffron, that it may differ from *Atractilis*, which they make to be a kind of *Cnecus sylvestris*, or wild Bastard Saffron, but rather a species of the Holy Thistle.

**The Temperature.**

We use saith Galen, the seed only for purgations: it is hot, and that in the first degree, as Mesues writeth.

**The Virtues.**

A. The juice of the seed of Bastard Saffron bruised and strained into honeyed water or the broth of a chicken, and drunk, provoketh to the stool and purgeth by siege slimy phlegm, and sharp humours: Moreover it is good against the colic, and difficulty of taking breath, the cough, and stopping of the breast, and is singular against the dropsy.

B. The seed used as aforesaid, and strained into milk, causeth it to curdle and yield much curds, and maketh it of great force to loose and open the belly.

C. The flowers drunk with honeyed water open the liver, and are good against the jaundice: and the flowers are good to colour meat instead of Saffron.

D. The seed is very hurtful to the stomach, causing desire to vomit, and is of hard slow digestion, remaining long in the stomach and entrails.

E. Put to the same seed things comfortable to the stomach, as Anise seed, Galingale, or Mastic, Ginger, *sal gemmæ*, and it shall not hurt the stomach at all, and the operation thereof shall be the more quick and speedy.

F. Of the inward pulp or substance hereof is made a most famous and excellent composition to purge water with, commonly called *Diachartamon*, a most singular and effectual purgation for those that have the dropsy.

G. The perfect description hereof is extant in Guido the Surgeon, in his first *Doctrine*, and the sixth *Tractate*.

H. We have not read, or had in use that Bastard Saffron with the blue flower, and therefore can say nothing of his virtues.
CHAP. 489. Of Wild Bastard Saffron.

The Description.

1. *Atractylis*, otherwise called wild Bastard Saffron, bringeth forth a straight and firm stalk, very fragile or brittle, divided at the top into certain branches: it hath long jagged leaves set with prickles: the heads on the tops of the branches are very full of sharp prickles: out of which grow flowers all of threads, like those of Bastard Saffron, but they are of a light yellow colour, and sometimes purple: the seed is somewhat great, brown, and bitter, otherwise like that of Bastard Saffron: the root is of a mean bigness.

2. The stalks of *Carduus benedictus*, or Blessed Thistle, are round, rough, and pliable, and being parted into divers branches, do lie flat on the ground: the leaves are jagged round about, and full of harmless prickles in the edges: the heads on the tops of the stalks are set with prickles, and environed with sharp prickling leaves, out of which standeth a yellow flower: the seed is long, and set with hairs at the top like a beard: the root is white, and parted into strings: the whole herb, leaves and stalks, and also the heads, are covered with a soft and thin down.

The Place.

*Atractylis* growth in Candy, and in divers provinces and islands of Greece, and also in Languedoc: and is an herb growing in our English gardens.
Gerard's Herbal

*Carduus benedictus* is found everywhere in Lemnos, an island of the Midland Sea, in champion grounds, as Petrus Bellonius testifieth: it is diligently cherished in gardens in these Northern parts.

**The Time.**

*Atractylis* is very late before it flowereth and seedeth.

*Carduus benedictus* flowereth in July and August, at which time it is especially to be gathered for physic matters.

**The Names.**

*Atractylis* is called in Greek *Atractylis agria*: of the Latins likewise, *Atractylis*, and *Cnicus sylvestris*; and because women in the old time were wont to use the stiff stalk thereof *pro fuso aut colo*, for a spindle or a distaff, it is named *Fusus agrestis*, and *Colus rustica*; which thing Petrus Bellonius reporteth the women in Greece do also even at this day; who call *Atractylis* by a corrupt name *Ardactyla*: divers of the later herbarists name it *Carthamus sylvestris*: that is to say in Low Dutch *Wilden Carthamus*: and in English, *Wild Bastard Saffron*, or *Spindle Thistle*.

Blessed Thistle is called in Latin everywhere *Carduus benedictus*:, and in shops by a compound word, *Cardo-benedictus*: it is most plain, that it is *species Atractylidis* or a kind of wild Bastard Saffron: it is called *Atractylis hirsutor*, hairy wild Bastard Saffron: Valerius Cordus nameth it *Cnicus supinus*: it is called in High Dutch, *Beseegnete distel*, *Kardo Benedict*: the later name whereof is known to the Low Country men: in Spanish it is called *Cardo Sancto*: in French, *Chardon benoist*, or *beneist*: in the Isle Lemnos, *Garderacantha*: in English, *Blessed Thistle*, but more commonly by the Latin name *Carduus benedictus*.

**The Temperature.**

Wild Bastard Saffron doth dry and moderately digest, as Galen witnesseth.

As *Carduus benedictus* is bitter, so is it also hot and dry in the second degree, and withal cleansing and opening.

**The Virtues.**

A. The tops, seed, and leaves of *Atractylis*, saith Dioscorides, being beaten and drunk with pepper and wine, are a remedy for those that are stung of the scorpion.

B. Blessed Thistle taken in meat or drink, is good for the swimming and giddiness of the head, it strengtheneth memory, and is a singular remedy against deafness.

C. The same boiled in wine and drunk hot, healeth the griping pains of the belly, killeth and expelleth worms, causeth sweat, provoketh urine, and driveth out gravel; cleanseth the stomach, and is very good against the fever quartan.

D. The juice of the said *Carduus* is singular good against all poison, as Hierome Bocke witnesseth, in what sort soever the medicine be taken; and helpeth the inflammation of the liver, as reporteth Ioachinus Camerarius of Nuremberg.

E. The powder of the leaves ministered in the quantity of half a dram, is very good against the pestilence, if it be received within 24 hours after the taking of the sickness, and the party sweat upon the same: the like virtue hath the wine, wherein the herb hath been sodden.
F. The green herb pounded and laid to, is good against all hot swellings, as Erysipelas, plague-sores, and botches, especially those that proceed of the pestilence, and is also good to be laid upon the bitings of mad dogs, serpents, spiders, or any venomous beast whatsoever; and so is it likewise if it be inwardly taken.

G. The distilled water thereof is of less virtue.

H. It is reported that it likewise cureth stubborn and rebellious ulcers, if the decoction be taken for certain days together; and likewise Arnoldus de Villanova reporteth, that if it be stamped with barrow's grease to the form of an unguent, adding thereto a little wheat flour, it doth the same, being applied twice a day.

I. The herb also is good being stamped and applied, and so is the juice thereof.

K. The extraction of the leaves drawn according to art, is excellent good against the French disease, and quartan agues, as reporteth the foresaid Camerarius.

L. The same author reporteth, that the distilled water taken with the water of Lovage, and Dodder, helpeth the saucefleme face, if it be drunk for certain days together.
CHAP. 490. Of Thistle upon Thistle, and divers other Wild Thistles.

Fig. 1662. Kinds of Thistle (1-4)
The Description.

1. Among all the Thorns and Thistles, this is most full of prickle; the stalks thereof are very long, and seem to be cornered by reason of certain thin skins growing to them, being sent down forth of the leaves: the leaves are set round about with many deep gashes, being very full of prickle as well as the stalks: the heads are very thick set in every place with stiff pricks, and consist of a multitude of scales; out of which grow purple flowers, as they do out of other Thistles, seldom white: the root is almost straight, but it groweth not deep.

2. To this also may be referred that which Lobel writeth to be named of the Italians Leo, and Carduus ferox, for it is so called of the wonderful sharp and stiff prickles, wherewith the whole plant aboundeth. The stalk thereof is short, scarce a handful high: the flower growth forth of a prickly head, and is of a pale yellow colour, like that of Wild Bastard Saffron, and it is also environed and set round about on every side with long hard thorns and prickles.

3. The third groweth seldom above a cubit or two foot high: it bringeth forth many round stalks, parted into divers branches; the leaves are like those of white Cotton Thistle, but lesser, and blacker, and not coverd with down or cotton: upon the tops of the stalks grow little heads like hedgehogs; out of which spring gallant purple flowers, that at length are turned into down, leaving seeds behind them like those of the other Thistles; the root consisteth of many small strings.

4. The fourth riseth up with an higher stalk, now and then a yard long, round, and not so full of branches nor leaves, which are sharp and full of pricks, but lesser and narrower: the heads be also lesser, longer, and not so full of stiff pricks: the flowers are of a white colour, and vanish into down: the root is black, and of a foot long.
5. This wild Thistle which groweth in the fields about Cambridge, hath an upright stalk, whereon do grow broad prickly leaves: the flowers grow on the tops of the branches, consisting of a flocky down, of a white colour tending to purple, of a most pleasant sweet smell, striving with the savour of musk: the root is small, and perisheth at the approach of winter. (I had no figure directly fitting this; wherefore I put that of Dodonæus his Onopordon, which may well serve for it, if the leaves were narrower, and more divided.)

6. The Spear Thistle hath an upright stalk, garnished with a skinny membrane full of most sharp prickles: whereon do grow very long leaves, divided into divers parts, with sharp prickles; the point of the leaves are as the point of a spear, whereof it took his name: the flowers grow on the tops of the branches, set in a scaly prickly head, like unto the heads of Knapweed in form, consisting of many threads of a purple colour: the root consisteth of many tough strings.

7. Theophrastus his fifth Thistle called Acarna, which was brought from Illyria to Venice, by the learned Valerandus Donrez, described by Theophrastus, hath horrible sharp yellow prickles, set upon his green indented leaves, which are covered on the back side with an hoary down (as all the rest of the plant) having a stalk of a cubit and a half high, and at the top certain scaly knops containing yellow thrummy flowers, armed or fenced with horrible sharp prickles: the root is long and thready.

8. The other kind of fifth Thistle, being also another Acarna of Valerandus' description, hath long and large leaves, set full of sharp prickles, as though it were set full of pins: all the whole plant is covered with a certain hoariness, like the former:
there ariseth up a stalk nine inches long, yea in some fertile grounds a cubit high, bearing the flower of *Carduus benedictus*, standing thick together, but lesser.

Fig. 1667. Bush-headed Thistle (9)

9. This Thistle in the opinion of Bauhin, whereto I much incline, is the same with the former. The root is small, the leaves long, welting the stalks at their setting on, and armed on the edges with sharp prickles: the stalks lie trailing on the ground like those of the Star Thistle, so set with prickles, that one knoweth not where to take hold thereof: it hath many closely compact umbels, consisting of pale yellowish little flowers like those of Groundsel; the seed is like that of *Carthamus*, small and chaffy. Pena and Lobel call this *Picnomos crete salonensis*, of a place in Provence where they first found it, called the Crau, being not far from the city Salon. Tabernamontanus set it forth for *Chamaeleon niger*, and our author formerly gave the figure hereof by the same title.

**The Place.**

The two first grow on divers banks not far from Mount Apennine, and sometimes in Italy, but yet seldom.

The Way Thistles grow everywhere by highways' sides and common paths in great plenty.

The places of the rest have been sufficiently spoken of in their descriptions.

**The Time.**

These kinds of Thistles do flower from the beginning of June until the end of September.
The Names.

These Thistles comprehended in this present chapter are by one general name called in Latin *Cardui sylvestres*, or wild Thistles; and that which is the second in order is named *Scolymus*: but not that *Scolymus* which Theophrastus declareth to yield a milky juice (of which we have written before) but one of those which Pliny in his twentieth book, *cap.* 23. describeth: of some they are taken for kinds of *Chamaeleon*: their several titles do set forth their several Latin names, and also the English.

There was formerly much confusion in this chapter, both in the figures and history, which I will here endeavour to amend, and give as much light as I can, to the obscurity of our Author and some others; to which end I have made choice of the names as the fittest place.

1. This description was taken out of Dodonæus, and the title also of *Onopordon* which was formerly put over the figure, and they belong to the Thistle our author before described by the name of *Acanthum purpureum Illyricum*, *cap.* 476. I have therefore changed the title, yet let the description stand, for it reasonable well agrees with the figure which is of the *Carduus spinosissimus vulgaris* of Lobel, and *Polyacantha theophrasti* of Tabernamontanus. Of this Thistle I observe three kinds: the first is a Thistle some two cubits and a half high, with many slender stalks and branches exceeding prickly, having commonly five prickly welts running alongst the stalks: the leaves on the upper sides as also the stalks are of a reasonable fresh green colour, but the underside of the leaf is somewhat whitish: the heads consist of sundry hairy green threads which look like prickles, but they are weak, and not prickly: the flower is of the bigness, and of the like colour and shape as the common Knapweed, yet somewhat brighter: it grows on ditch sides, and flowers in July. This I take to be the *Aculaosa gasea* of the *Adversaria* pag. 374, but not that which Lobel figures for it in his *Icones*. This is that which Tabernamontanus figures for *Polyacantha*, and our author gave his figure in this place. The second of these I take to be that which Lobel hath figured for *Polyacantha*, and Dodonæus for *Carduus sylvatica* (which figure we here give you) and in the *Hist. Lugd.* Pag. 1473, it is both figured and described by the name of *Polyanthus theophrasti*. In the figure there is little difference: in the things themselves this; the stalks of this are as high as those of the last, but slenderer, with fewer and straighter branches, and commonly edged with four large welts, which have fewer, yet longer prickles than those of the former: the leaves and stalks of this are of a greyish or whitish colour: the heads are longish, but much smaller than those of the former, and they seldom open or spread abroad their flowers, but only show the tops of divers reddish threads of a faint colour. This grows as frequently as the former, and commonly in the same places. The third, which I think may fitly be referred unto these, grows on wet heaths and such like places, having a stalk sometimes four or five cubits high, growing straight up, with few branches, and those short ones: the flowers are of an indifferent bigness, and commonly purple, yet sometimes white. I think this may be the *Onopyxos alter lugdunensis*; or the *Carduus palustris* described in Bouhin his *Prodromus*, pag. 156.

2. The second, which is a stranger with us, is the *Phœnix, Leo & Carduus ferox* of Lobel and Dodonæus. Bauhin hath referred it to *Acarna*, calling it *Acarna minor caule non folioso*.

3. The third description was also out of Dodonæus, being of his *Carduus sylvestris primus*, or the *Onopyxos dononæi* of the *Hist. Lugd.*
4. This description also was out of Dodonæus, being of his Carduus sylvestris alter, agreeing in all things but the colour of the flowers, which should be purple. Lobel in his Observations describeth the same Thistle by the name of Carduus vulgarissimus viarum: but both he and Dodonæus give the figure of Carlina sylvestris for it: but neither the flowers nor the heads of that agree with that description. I judge this to be the Thistle that Fabius Columna hath set forth for the Ceanothos of Theophrastus; and Tabernamontanus for Carduus arvensis.

5. The Musk Thistle I have seen growing about Deptford, and (as far as my memory serves me) it is very like to the third here described: it grows better than a cubit high, with reasonable large leaves and also heads which are a little soft or downy, large, with purple flowers: the heads before the flowers open smell strong of musk. I have found no mention of this but only in Gesner, de Collectione in Parte, where he hath these words; Carduus arvensis major purpureo flore (qui flore nondum nato moschum olebat) floret Iulio.["The great thistle of the tillage fields (whose npopened flowers smell of musk) flowers in July"].

There is sufficient of the rest in their titles and descriptions.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. These wild Thistles (according to Galen) are hot and dry in the second degree, and that through the property of their essence they drive forth stinking urine, if the roots be boiled in wine and drunk; and that they take away the rank smell of the body and arm-holes.

B. Dioscorides saith, that the root of the common Thistle applied plasterwise correcteth the filthy smell of the arm holes and whole body.

C. And that it works the same effect if it be boiled in wine and drunk, and that it expelleth plenty of stinking urine.

D. The same author affirmeth also, that the herb being as yet green and tender is used to be eaten among other herbs after the manner of Asparagus.

E. This being stamped before the flower appeareth, saith Pliny, and the juice pressed forth, causeth hair to grow where it is pilled off, if the place be bathed with the juice.

F. The root of any of the wild Thistles being boiled in water and drunk, is reported to make them dry that drink it.

G. It strengtheneth the stomach; and it is reported (if we believe it) that the same is also good for the matrix, that boys may be engendered: for so Chereas of Athens hath written, and Glaucias, who is thought to write most diligently of Thistles.

H. This Thistle being chewed is good against stinking breath. Thus far Pliny, in his twentieth book, cap. 23.
CHAP. 491. Of the Melon or Hedgehog Thistle.

Who can but marvel at the rare and singular workmanship which the Lord God almighty hath showed in this Thistle, called by the name Echino melocactos, or Melocarduus echinatus? This knobby or bunchy mass or lump is strangely compact and context together, containing in it sundry shapes and forms, participating of a Pepon or Melon, and a Thistle, both being incorporate in one body; which is made after the form of a cock of hay, broad and flat below, but sharp toward the top, as big as a man's body from the belly upward: on the outside hereof are fourteen hard ribs, descending from the crown to the lowest part, like the bunchy or out swelling rib of a Melon standing out, and channeled between: at the top or crown of the plant issueth forth a fine silken cotton, wherewith it is full fraught; within which cotton or flocks lie hid certain small sheaths or cods, sharp at the point, and of a deep sanguine colour, answering the cods of Capsicum or Indian Pepper, not in show only, but in colour, but the cods are somewhat smaller. The furrowed or channeled ribs on the outside are garnished or rather armed with many prickly stars, standing in a compass like sharp crooked horns or hooks, each star consisting of ten or twelve pricks, wherewith the outward bark or pilling is guarded, so that without hurt to the fingers it cannot be touched: this rind is hard, thick, and like unto Aloes, of the colour of the Cucumber: the flesh or inner pulp is white, fat, waterish, of taste sour, unsavoury, and cooling, much like unto the meat of a raw Melon or Pumpkin. This plant growth without leaf or stalk, as our Northern Thistle doth, called Carduus acaulis, and is bigger than the largest Pumpkin: the roots are small, spreading far abroad in the ground, and consisting of black and tough twigs, which cannot endure the injury of our cold climate.
The Place.

This admirable Thistle groweth upon the cliffs and gravelly grounds near unto the seaside, in the islands of the West Indies, called St. Margaret's and St. John's Isle, near unto Puerto Rico, or Porto Rico, and other places in those countries, by the relation of divers travellers that have journeyed into those parts, who have brought me the plant itself with his seed; the which would not grow in my garden by reason of the coldness of the climate.

The Time.

It groweth, flowereth, and flourisheth all the year long, as do many other plants of those countries.

The Names.

It is called *Carduus echinatus*, *Melocarthus echinatus*, and *Echino melocactus*: in English, the Hedgehog Thistle, or prickly Melon Thistle. Such as are curious may see more hereof in Clusius his *Exotics, lib. 4, cap. 24*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

There is not anything extant set forth of the ancient or of the later writers, neither by any that have travelled from the Indies themselves: therefore we leave it to a further consideration.
CHAP. 492. Of the Gummy Thistle, called Euphorbium.

The Description.

1. Euphorbium (whereout that liquor or gum called in shops Euphorbium is extracted) hath very great thick gross and spreading roots, dispersed far abroad in the ground: from which arise long and round leaves, almost like the fruit of a great Cucumber, a foot and a half long, ribbed, walled, and furrowed like unto the Melon: these branched ribs are set or armed for the most part with certain prickles standing by couples, the point or sharp end of one guarding one way, and the point of another looking directly a clean contrary way: these pricks are often found in the gum itself, which is brought unto us from Libya and other parts: the leaves hereof being planted in the ground will take root well, and bring forth great increase, which thing I have proved true in my garden: it hath perished again at the first approach of winter. The sap or liquor that is extracted out of this plant is of the colour and substance of the cream of milk; it burneth the mouth extremely, and the dust or powder doth very much annoy the head and the parts thereabout, causing great and vehement sneezing, and stuffing of all the pores.

2. This rare plant called Anteuphorbium hath a very thick gross and far spreading root, very like unto Euphorbium; from which riseth up many round green and fleshy stalks, whereupon do grow thick leaves like Purslane, but longer, thicker, and fatter: the whole plant is full of cold and clammy moisture, which represseth the
scorching force of Euphorbium; and it wholly seems at the first view to be a branch of green Coral.

3. There is not among the strange and admirable plants of the world any one that gives more cause of marvel, or more moveth the mind to honor and laud the Creator, than this plant, which is called of the Indians in their mother tongue Urugua, which is as much to say, a torch, taper, or wax candle; whereupon it hath been called in Latin by those that understood the Indian tongue, Cereus, or a Torch. This admirable plant riseth up to the height of a spear of twenty foot long, although the figure express not the same; the reason is, the plant when the figure was drawn came to our view broken: it hath divers bunches and valleys, even as is to be seen in the sides of the Cucumber, that is, furrowed, guttered, or chamfered amongst the same, and as it were laid by a direct line, with a welt from one end unto the other: upon which welt or line do stand small star-like thistles, sharp as needles, and of the colour of those of the Melon Thistle, that is to say, of a brown colour: the trunk or body is of the bigness of a man's arm, or a cable rope; from the middle whereof thrust forth divers knobby elbows of the same substance, and armed with the like prickles that the body of the trunk is set withal: the whole plant is thick, fat, and full of a fleshy substance, having much juice like that of Aloes, when it is hardened, and of a bitter taste: the flowers grow at the top or extreme point of the plant: after which follow fruit in shape like a fig, full of a red juice, which being touched staineth the hands of the colour of red lead: the taste is not unpleasant.

4. There hath been brought from the Indies a prickly reed of the bigness of a good big staff, of the length of six or eight foot, chamfered and furrowed, having upon
two sides growing unto it an uneven membrane or skinny substance, as it were a jag
or welt set upon the wing of a garment, and upon the very point of every cut or jag
armed with most sharp prickles: the whole trunk is filled full of a spongy
substance, such as is in the hollowness of the brier or bramble; amongst the which is
to be seen as it were the peelings of Onions, wherein are often found living things,
that at the first seem to be dead. The plant is strange, and brought dry from the Indies,
therefore we cannot write so absolutely hereof as we desire; referring what more
might be said to a further consideration or second edition.

The Place.

These plants grow upon Mount Atlas, in Libya, in most of the Islands of the
Mediterranean sea, in all the coast of Barbary, especially in St. Crux near unto the sea
side, in a barren place there called by the English men Half Hanneken; which place is
appointed for Merchants to confer of their business, even as the Exchange in London
is: from which place my friend Mr William Martin, a right expert surgeon, did
procure me the plants of them for my garden, by his servant that be sent thither as
surgeon of a ship. Since which time I have received plants of divers others that have
travelled into other of those parts and coasts: notwithstanding they have not endured
the cold of our extreme winter.

The Time.

They put forth their leaves in the spring time, and wither away at the approach
of winter.

The Names.

It is called both in Greek and Latin *Euphorbium*: Pliny in one place putteth the
herb in the feminine gender, naming it *Euphorbia*: the juice is called also *Euphorbion,* and so it is likewise in shops: we are fallen in English to use the Latin word, and to
call both the herb and juice by the name of *Euphorbium*, for other name we have
none: it may be called in English, the Gum Thistle.

The Temperature.

*Euphorbium* (that is to say, the congealed juice which we use) is of a very hot,
and, as Galen testifieth, caustic or burning faculty, and of thin parts: it is also hot and
dry in the fourth degree.

The Virtues.

A. An emplaster made with the gum Euphorbium, and twelve times so much
oil, and a little wax, is very singular against all aches of the joints, lameness, palsies,
cramps, and shrinking of sinews, as Galen, *lib. 4. de Medicamentis Secundum Genera,*
declareth at large, which to recite at this present would but trouble you overmuch.

B. Euphorbium mingled with oil of Bay and bear's grease cureth the scurf and
scalds of the head, and baldness, causing the hair to grow again, and other bare places,
being anointed therewith.

C. The same mingled with oil, and applied to the temples of such are very
sleepy, and troubled with the lethargy, doth awaken and quicken their spirits again.

D. If it be applied to the nuque or nape of the neck, it bringeth their speech
again that have lost it by reason of the Apoplexy.
E. Euphorbium mingled with vinegar and applied taketh away all foul and ill-favoured spots, in what part of the body soever they be.

F. Being mixed with oil of Wallflowers, as Mesues saith, and with any other oil or ointments, it quickly heateth such parts as are over-cold.

G. It is likewise a remedy against old pains in the huckle bones, called the Sciatica.

H. Aetius, Paulus, Actuarius, and Mesue do report, That if it be inwardly taken it purgeth by siege water and phlegm; but withal it setteth on fire, scorcheth and fretteth, not only the throat and mouth, but also the stomach, liver, and the rest of the entrails, and inflames the whole body.

I. For that cause it must not be beaten small, and it is to be tempered with such things as allay the heat and sharpness thereof, and that make glib and slippery; of which things there must be such a quantity, as that it may be sufficient to cover all over the superficial or outward part thereof.

K. But it is a hard thing so to cover and fold it up, or to mix it, as that it will not burn or scorch. For though it be tempered with never so much oil, if it be outwardly applied it raiseth blisters, especially in them that have soft and tender flesh, and therefore it is better not to take it inwardly.

L. It is troublesome to beat it, unless the nostrils of him that beats it be carefully stopped and defended; for if it happen that the hot sharpness thereof do enter into the nose, it presently causeth itching, and moveth sneezing, and after that, by reason of the extremity of the heat, it draweth out abundance of phlegm and filth, and last of all blood, not without great quantity of tears.

M. But against the hot sharpness of Euphorbion, it is reported that the inhabitants are remedied by a certain herb, which of the effect and contrary faculties is named Anteuphorbium. This plant likewise is full of juice, which is nothing at all hot and sharp but cool and slimy, allaying the heat and sharpness of Euphorbium. We have not yet learned that the old writers have set down anything touching this herb; notwithstanding it seemeth to be a kind of Orpine, which is the antidote or counterpoison against the poison and venom of Euphorbium.

The Description.

1. The first and largest of these hath roots consisting of great longish bulbs like those of the Asphodel: from whence arise many large stalks three or four cubits high, erected and downy: the leaves are very long and large, juicy, greenish, and cut about the edges, and set with soft prickles. At the tops of the stalks and branches grow heads round and large, out whereof come flowers consisting of abundance of threads, of a purple colour, which fly away in down. This grows wild in the mountainous meadows and in some wet places of Austria. I have seen it growing in the garden of Mr John Parkinson, and with Mr Tuggy. It flowers in July. Clusius hath called it *Cirsium maximum montanum incano folio, bulbosi radice*. But he gave no figure thereof, nor any else, unless the *Acanthium peregrinum* in Tabernamontanus were intended for this plant, as I verily think it was. I have given you a figure which I drew some years ago by the plant itself.

2. The root of this is long, yet sending forth of the sides creeping fibres, but not bulbous: the leaves are like those of the last mentioned, but less, and armed with sharp prickles of a greenish colour, with the middle rib white: the heads sometimes stand upright, and otherwhiles hang down; they are very prickly, and send forth flowers consisting of many elegant purple threads. The stalks are thick, crested and welted with the setting on of the leaves. This grows wild upon the seacoasts of Zeeland, Flanders, and Holland: it flowers in June and July: it is the *Cirsium tertium* of Dodonæus; and *Cirsium maius* of Lobel.

Fig. 1673. Great Soft-Bulbed Thistle (1) Fig. 1674. Great Soft Thistle (2)
3. This whose root is fibrous and living, sends forth lesser, narrower, and softer leaves than those of the former, not jagged or cut about their edges, nor hoary, yet set about with prickles: the stalks are crested: the heads are smaller, and grow three or four together, carrying such purple flowers as the former. This is that which Matthiolus, Gesner, and others have set forth for *Cirsium*: Dodonæus, for *Cirsium* 2, and Clusius hath it for his *Cirsium quartum, or montanum secundum*.

4. The leaves of this are somewhat like those of the last described, but larger, and wilting the stalks further at their setting on: they are also set with prickles about the edges: the stalks are some two cubits high, divided into sundry long slender branches: on whose tops grow little rough prickly heads, which after the flowers come to perfection do hang downwards, and at the length turn into down, amongst which lies hid a smooth shining seed. This groweth wild in divers woody paces of Hungary and Austria. It is the *Cirsium* of Dodonæus: the *Cirsium* 2 or *Montanum 1* of Clusius; and *Cirsium alterum* of Lobel. It flowers in June: the root is about the thickness of one's little finger, fibrous also, and living.
5. This sends up long narrow leaves, hairy, and set about the edges with slender prickles: out of the middle of these leaves grows up a stalk sometimes a foot, otherwhiles a cubit high, slender, stiff, and downy: upon which grow leaves somewhat
broad at their setting on, and there also a little nicked or cut in: this stalk sometimes hath no branches, otherwhiles two or three long slender ones, at the tops whereof grow out of scaly heads such flowers as the common Knapweed, which at length turn into down; among which lies hid a small shining seed like the other plants of this kind. The root is made of divers thick fibres, which run in the ground, and here and there put up new heads. This plant wants no setting forth; for Clusius gives us the figure and history thereof, first by the name of *Cirsium pannonicum pratense*; then he gives another history thereof, with a worser figure, (which he received of Dr Thomas Penny of London) by the name of *Cirsium anglicum*. Lobel also described it, and set it forth with a figure expressing the flower already faded, by the name of *Cirsium anglicum*. Bauhin in his *Pinax*, deceived by these several expressions, hath made three several plants of this one; a fault frequent in many writers of plants. Clusius found it growing in the mountainous meadows amongst the side of the Danube in Austria: Penny, in the meadows at the foot of Ingleborough hill in Yorkshire: Lobel, in the meadows at a place called Acton in Gloucestershire. I found this only once, and that was in a meadow on this side Highgate, having been abroad with the Company of Apothecaries, and returning that way home, in the company of Mr James Walsall, William Broad, and some others. I have given you both the figures of Clusius; his own in the first place, and that of Dr. Penny in the second, but the former is the better: I have also given you that of Lobel.

6. These also Clusius (whom I herein follow) addeth to the kinds of Thistles. This jagged leaved one, which he calleth *Carduus mollior primus*, hath many leaves at the root, both spread upon the ground, and also upright; and they are covered with a white and soft downiness, yet green on the upper side: they are also much divided or cut in even to the middle rib, like to the softer or tenderer leaves of the Star Thistle: they have no prickles at all upon them: out of the midst of these leaves grow up one or two stalks, round, crested, purplish, hoary, and some cubit or better high. The leaves that grow upon the lower part of the stalk are divided, those above not so: the tops of the stalks sometimes, yet very seldom, are parted into branches, which carry scaly heads containing elegant flowers made of many purple strings. The flower decaying, there succeeds a cornered seed: the root sometimes equals the thickness of one's finger, brownish, long, and somewhat fibrous. It flowers in May, and grows upon the hilly places of Hungary.
7. The stalk of this is some foot or better high, thick, crested, and somewhat hairy: the leaves about the root are somewhat large, and in shape like those of *Bonus Henricus*, (abusively called in English, Mercury) somewhat sinuated about the edges, and set with harmless prickles, green above, and very hoary underneath, like the leaves of the white Poplar: those that grow upon the stalk are lesser and narrower: out of whose bosoms towards the tops of the stalk grow out little branches which carry three, four, or more little scaly heads like those of the Blue-Bottle, or Knapweed, whereout grow thready bluish purple flowers: the seed is wrapped in down, and not unlike that of Blue-Bottle: the root is black, hard, and living, sending forth shoots on the sides. It grows upon the highest Austrian Alps, and flowers in July. Clusius calls this *Carduus mollior lapathi folio*.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

These plants seem by their taste to be of a moderately heating and drying faculty, but none of them are used in medicine, nor have their virtues set down by any author.
CHAP. 494. Of Three-Leaved Grass, or Meadow Trefoil.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of three-leaved Grass, some greater, others lesser; some bear flowers of one colour, some of another: some of the water and others of the land: some of a sweet smell, others stinking: and first of the common Meadow Trefoils, called in Irish Shamrocks.

The Description.

1. Meadow Trefoil bringeth forth stalks a cubit long, round, and something hairy, the greater part of which creepeth upon the ground; whereon do grow leaves consisting of three joined together, one standing a little from another; of which those that are next the ground and roots are rounder, and they that grow on the upper part longer, having for the most part in the midst a white spot like a half moon. The flowers grow on the tops of the stalks in a tuft or small fox-tail ear, of a purple colour, and sweet of taste. The seed growtheth in little husks, round and blackish: the root is long, woody, and growtheth deep.

2. There is another of the field Trefoils, differing from the precedent especially in the colour of the flowers; for as those are of a bright purple, contrariwise these are very white, which maketh the difference. The leaves, flowers, and all the whole plant is less than the former.
3, 4. There is also a Trefoil of this kind which is sown in fields of the Low Countries, in Italy and divers other places beyond the seas, that cometh up ranker and higher than that which groweth in meadows, and is an excellent food for cattle, both to fatten them, and cause them to give great store of milk. Of this there is one more with white flowers, which hath stalks four foot high, and narrow hairy leaves, with a root of the thickness of one's little finger. This is Clusius his *Trifolium maius primum*. The other hath stalks some cubit high, with larger joints and leaves: the flower or head of flowers is also larger, of an elegant red colour. This Clusius calls *Trifolium maior tertium*.
5, 6. Likewise we have in our fields a smaller Trefoil that bringeth forth yellow flowers, a greater and a lesser, and divers others also, differing from these in divers notable points, the which to distinguish apart would greatly enlarge our volume, and yet to small purpose: therefore we leave them to be distinguished by the curious, who may at the first view easily perceive the difference, and also that they be of one stock or kindred.

The greater of these yellow Trefoils hath pretty large yellow heads, which afterward become of a brownish colour, and somewhat resemble a Hop: whence Thalius called it *Lupulus sylvaticus*, or *Trifolium luteum alterum lupulinum*: Dodonæus calls it *Trifolium agrarium*. The leaves are small, and lightly nicked about the edges. The Lesser hath smaller and far lesser yellow heads, which are succeeded by many little crooked clustering seeds: the leaves of this are small, and also snipped about the edges: both this & the other have two little leaves close by the fastening of the footstalks of the leaves to the main stalks; wherefore I refer them to the Medicks, and usually call this latter, *Medica sem. racemoso*. It is the *Trifolium luteum minimum* of Pena and Lobel; and *Trifolium arvense* of Tabernamontanus.

The Place.

Common Meadow Trefoil groweth in meadows, fertile pastures, and waterish grounds. The others love the like soil.

The Time.

They flower from May to the end of summer.

The Names.

Meadow Trefoil is called in Latin *Trifolium pratensis*: in High Dutch, *Wisenklee*: in Low Dutch, *Claueren*: in French, *Treffle* and *Trainiere*, and *Visumarus,*

Fig. 1682. Hop Trefoil (5)  Fig. 1683. Little Yellow Trefoil (6)
as Marcellus an old writer testifieth: in English, Common Trefoil, Three-leaved Grass: of some, Suckles, and Honeysuckles, Cocksheads: and in Irish, Shamrocks.

The Temperature.

The leaves and flowers of Meadow Trefoils are cold and dry.

The Virtues.

A. The decoction of Three-Leaved Grass made with honey, and used in a clyster, is good against the frettings and pains of the guts, and driveth forth tough and slimy humours that cleave unto the guts.

B. The leaves boiled with a little barrow's grease, and used as a poultice, take away hot swellings and inflammations.

C. Oxen and other cattle do feed of the herb, and also calves and young lambs. The flowers are acceptable to bees.

D. Pliny writeth, and setteth it down for certain, that the leaves hereof do tremble, and stand right up against the coming of a storm or tempest.

E. The meadow Trefoil (especially that with the black half-moon upon the leaf) stamped with a little honey, takes away the pin and web in the eyes, ceaseth the pain and inflammation thereof, if it be strained and dropped therein.
CHAP. 495. Of Stinking Trefoil, or Treacle Clover.

Fig. 1684. Treacle Clover

The Description.

Treacle Clover groweth upright like a shrubby plant, with stalks of a cubit and a half high, whereupon do grow next the ground broad leaves, 3 joined together, those upon the stalks are longer and narrower. The stalks are covered over with a rough evil-coloured hairiness: the leaves are of a dark black green colour, and of a loathsome smell, like the pitch called *Bitumen Iudaicum*, whereof it took his name: the flowers grow at the top of the stalks, of a dark purplish colour tending unto blueness, in shape like those of Scabious: the seed is broad, rough, long, and sharp pointed: the root is small and tender, and cannot endure the coldness of our winter, but perisheth at the first approach thereof.

The Place.

It groweth naturally, saith Hippocrates Hippiatros, not Cous, in rough places, as Ruellius translateth it: in Germany, France and England it never cometh up of itself, but must be sown in gardens, as myself have proved divers times, and was constrained to sow it yearly, or else it would not come up, neither of his own sowing or otherwise.

The Time.

It flowereth not in my garden until the end of August.

The Names.

Avicenna calleth it *Tarsilon*, and not *Handacocha*: Avicenna doth comprehend Dioscorides his *Loti*, that is to say, *Lotus urbana sylvestris*, and *egyptia*, which Dioscorides confoundeth one with another in one chapter: in English it is called Clover Gentle, Pitch Trefoil, Stinking Trefoil, & Treacle Clover.

**The Temperature.**

This Trefoil, called *asphaltæum*, as Galen saith, is hot and dry, as *bitumen* is, and that in the third degree.

**The Virtues.**

A. Being drunk, it taketh away the pain of the sides, which cometh by obstructions or stoppings, provoketh urine, and bringeth down the desired sickness.

B. Hippocrates writeth, that it doth not only bring them down, but likewise the birth, not only inwardly taken, but also outwardly applied. If a woman, saith he, be not well cleansed after her child-bearing, give her this Trefoil to drink in white wine.

C. Dioscorides saith, that the seeds and leaves being drunk in water, are a remedy for the pleurisy, difficulty of making water, the falling sickness, the dropsy when it first beginneth, and for those that are troubled with the mother: the quantity to be taken at once is three drams of the seeds, and four of the leaves.

D. The leaves drunk in oxymel, or a syrup of vinegar made with honey, is good for those that are bitten with serpents.

E. Some affirm that the decoction of the whole plant, root and leaves, taketh away pain from those whom serpents have bitten, if they be washed therewith; but if any other man having an ulcer be washed with that water wherewith he was bathed that was bitten of the serpent, they say that he shall be troubled in the same manner that the stunged party was.

F. Some also give with wine three leaves, or a small quantity of the seeds in tertian agues, and in quartan four, as a sure remedy against the fits.

G. The root also is put into antidotes or counterpoisons, saith Dioscorides: but other ancient physicians do not only mix the root with them, but also the seed, as we may see in Galen, by a great many compositions in his 2nd book *Of Antidotes*; that is to say, in the Treacles of Ælius Gallus, Zeno Laudoceus, Claudius Apollonius, Eudemus, Heraclides, Dorotheæus, and Heras.

H. The herb stamped and applied upon any envenomed wound, or made with poisoned weapon, it draweth the poison from the depth most apparently. But if it be applied upon a wound where there is no venomous matter to work upon, it doth no less infect that part, than if it had been bitten with some serpent or venomous beast: which wonderful effect it doth not perform in respect of any vicious quality that it hath in itself, but because it doth not find that venomous matter to work upon, which it naturally draweth (as the loadstone doth iron) whereupon it is constrained through his attractive quality, to draw and gather together humours from far unto the place, whereby the pain is greatly increased.
CHAP. 496. Of Divers Other Trefoils.

The Description.

1. Three-leaved Grass of America hath divers crooked round stalks, leaning this way and that way, and divided into divers branches: whereon do grow leaves like those of the Meadow Trefoil, of a black green colour, and of the smell of Pitch Trefoil, or Treacle Clover: the flowers grow at the top of the branches, made up in a long spiked chaffy ear, of a white colour: after which cometh the seed, somewhat flat, almost like to those of Tares: the roots are long strings of a woody substance.

2. This three leaved grass (which Dodonæus in his last Edition calleth Trifolium cochleatum primum: and Lobel, Fœnum Burgundiacum) hath divers round upright stalks, of a woody rough substance, yet not able of itself to stand without a prop or stay: which stalks are divided into divers small branches, whereupon do grow leaves joined three together like the other Trefoils, but of a dark swart green colour; the flowers grow at the top of the stalks in shape like those of the Codded Trefoil, but of a dark purple colour: the seed followeth, contained in small wrinkled husks turned round, after the manner of a water snail; the root is thick, composed of divers tough thready strings, and lasteth long in my garden with great increase.
3. This Three-Leaved Grass of Salamanca, a city as I take it of Portugal, differeth not much from our field Trefoil: it hath many branches weak and tender, trailing upon the ground, of two cubits and a half high: whereupon do grow leaves set together by three upon a stem; from the bosom whereof thrust forth tender footstalks, whereon do stand most fine flowers of a bright red tending unto purple: after which come the seed wrapped in small skins, of a red colour.

4. The Heart Trefoil hath very many flexible branches, set upon a slender stalk of the length of two or three foot, trailing hither and thither: whereupon do grow leaves joined together by three on little slender footstalks, every little leaf of the fashion of a heart, whereof it took his name: among which come forth scaly or chaffy yellow flowers: the root is thick and thready. I take this plant to be of that Medicks
John Gerard and Thomas Johnson

which Camerarius calls *Arabica*, which grows wild in many places with us, having the
leaves a little dented in at the ends, so that they resemble the vulgar figure of a heart;
and each leaf is marked with a blackish, or red spot: the flowers be small and yellow:
the seeds are contained in rough buttons, wound up like the other Snail Trefoils,
whereof it is a kind.

5. This kind of three leaved grass is a low herb, creeping upon the ground: the
leaves are like those of the common Trefoil, but lesser, and of a greyish green colour:
the flowers are fair and yellow, fashioned like those of broom, but lesser: after come
three or four cods, wherein is contained round seed: the root is long and reddish. This
is the *Trifolium corniculatum*, or *Melilotus coronata* of Lobel: *Lotus pentaphyllos* of
Gesner.

Another Coddled Trefoil is like unto the last described in every respect, saving
that this plant is altogether larger, having stalks a cubit and a half high: the leaves are
also four times as large, two roundish leaves growing by the stalk, and three longish
ones growing upon a short footstalk coming forth between the two roundish leaves:
both the stalk and leaves have a little soft downiness or hairiness on them: the flowers
grow clustering together on the tops of the stalks, in shape, bigness, and colour like
that of the last described, but commonly more in number: they are also succeeded by
such cods as those of the former.

---

6. The figure which Dodonæus hath set forth out of an old manuscript in the
Emperor's library, being there figured for *Coronopus*, seems to be of the last
described, or some plant very like thereto, though the five leaves at each joint be not
put in such order as they should be, yet all the parts are well expressed, according to
the drawing of those times, for you shall find few ancient expressions come so near as this doth.

7. There is a kind of Clover growing about Narbonne in France, that hath many twiggy tough branches coming from a woody root, whereon are set leaves three together, after the manner of the other Trefoils, somewhat long, hairy, and of a hoary or overworn green colour. The flowers are yellow, and grow at the tops of the branches like those of Broom.

Fig. 1692. Yellow Horned Trefoil (8)

8. This sends up many branches from one root, some cubit or more long, commonly lying along upon the ground, round, flexible, and divided into sundry branches: the leaves stand together by threes, and are like those of the true Medick, or Burgundy Trefoil, but much less: the flowers grow clustering together on the tops of the branches, like in shape to those of the former; of a yellow colour, and not without smell: they are succeeded by such, yet narrower crooked cuds, as the Burgundy Trefoil hath (but the painter hath not well expressed them:) in these cuds are contained seeds like those also of that Trefoil, and such also is the root, which lives long and much increases. It grows in Hungary, Austria, and Moravia: it flowers in June and July: Clusius calls it Medica flore flavo: Tabernamontanus, Lens maior repens: and Tragus, Meliloti maioris species tertia: Bauhin saith that about Nîmes in Narbonne it is found with flowers either yellow, white, green, blue, purple, black, or mixed of blue and green; and he calleth it Trifolium sylvestre luteum silleque cornuta or Medica frutescens.

The Place.

The several titles of most of these plants set forth their natural place of growing: the rest grow in most fertile fields of England.
John Gerard and Thomas Johnson

The Time.
They flower and flourish most of the summer months.

The Names.
There is not much to be said as touching their names, more than hath been set
down.

The Temperature and Virtues.
The temperature and faculties of these Trefoils are referred unto the common
meadow Trefoils.
CHAP. 497. Of Hare's-Foot Trefoils.

1. The great Hare's-Foot being a kind of Trefoil, hath a hard and woody root, full of black thready strings: from whence arise divers tough and feeble branches, whereupon do grow leaves, set together by threes, making the whole plant to resemble those of the Meadow Trefoil: the flowers grow at the top of the stalks, composed of a bunch of grey hairs: among the which soft matter cometh forth small flowers of a most bright purple colour, somewhat resembling the flowers of the common Meadow Trefoil, but far greater. Lobel calls this Lagopus maximus folio & facie trifolii pratensis: Dodonæus, Lagopus maior trifolii.

2. This elegant plant (which Tragus hath set forth for Cytisus, Lobel by the name of Lagopus altera folio prinmato, and Clusius for his Trifolii maior 3 altera species) hath stalks some foot and better high, whereon grow leaves set together by threes, long, hoary and lightly snipped about the edges, with elegant nerves or veins, running from the middle rib to the sides of the leaves, which are most conspicuous in hot countries, and chiefly then when the leaf begins to decay. At the tops of the branches, in long and large heads grow the flowers, of an elegant sanguine colour. This flowers in May and June, and grows wild upon some mountains of Hungary and Austria; I have seen them, both this and the former, growing in the gardens of some of our florists.
3. This other great kind of Hare's-Foot sends forth one slender, yet stiff stalk, whereon grow leaves whose footstalks are large at the setting on, encompassing the stalks: the leaves themselves grow by threes, long, narrow, and sharp pointed, of a greyish colour like those of the common Hare's-Foot; the spike at the top is soft and downy, with little reddish flowers amongst the whitish hairiness. This grows wild in Spain: Clusius calls it *Lagopus angustifolius hispanicus maior*.

There is another sort of this described by Lobel and Pena in the *Adversaria* whose leaves are longer and narrower than this, the whole plant also is ofttimes lesser: they call it *Lagopus altera angustifolio*.

4. The Small Hare's-Foot hath a round rough and hairy stalk, dividing itself into divers other branches; whereupon do grow small leaves, three joined together, like those of the small yellow Trefoil: the flowers grow at the very point of the stalks, consisting of a rough knap or bush of hairs or down like that of *Alopecuros*, or Foxtail, of whitish colour tending to a light blush, with little white flowers amongst the downiness: the root is small and hard.

**The Place.**

The first groweth in the fields of France and Spain, and is a stranger in England; yet it growth in my garden.

The Small Hare's-Foot groweth among corn; especially among Barley, and likewise in barren pastures almost everywhere.

**The Time.**

They flower and flourish in June, July, and August.
Gerard's Herbal

The Names.

The great Hare's-Foot Trefoil is called of Tragus, Cytisus: of Cordus, Trifolium magnum: of Lobel, Lagopum maximum, and Lagopodium: in English, the Great Hare's-foot.

The last, being the smallest of these kinds of Trefoils, is called Lagopus, and Pes leporis: in Dutch, Hasen pootkens: in High Dutch, Hasen fus: in French, Pied de lievre: in English Hare's-Foot.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The temperature and faculties are referred unto the other Trefoils, whereof these are kinds: notwithstanding Dioscorides saith, that the Small Hare's-Foot doth bind and dry. It stoppeth, saith he, the lask, if it be drunk with red wine. But it must be given to such as are feverish with water.
CHAP. 498. Of Marsh Trefoil, or Buck's Beans.

Fig. 1698. Marsh Trefoil

The Description.

1. The great Marsh Trefoil hath thick fat stalks, weak and tender, full of a spongous pith, very smooth, and of a cubit long: whereon do grow leaves like to those of the garden Bean, set upon the stalks three joined together like the other Trefoils, smooth, shining, and of a deep green colour: among which toward the top of the stalks standeth a bush of feather-like flowers of a white colour, dashed over slightly with a wash of light carnation: after which the seed followeth, contained in small buttons, or knobby husks, of a brown-yellowish colour like unto Millet, and of a bitter taste: the roots creep divers ways in the middle marsh ground, being full of joints, white within, and full of pores, and spongy, bringing forth divers by-shoots, stalks, and leaves, by which means it is easily increased, and largely multiplied.

2. The second differeth not from the precedent saving it is altogether lesser, wherein consisteth the difference, if there be any: for doubtless I think it is the self-same in each respect, and is made greater and lesser, according to his place of growing, climate, and country.

The Place.

These grow in marsh and fenny places, and upon boggy grounds almost everywhere.

The Time.

They flower and flourish from June to the end of August.
The Names.

Marsh Trefoil is called in High Dutch, Biberklee, that is to say, Trifolium castoris, or Trifolium fibrinum; in Low Dutch, of the likeness that the leaves have with the Garden Beans, Borzboomen, that is to say, Faselus hircinus or Boona hircina: the later herbarists call it Trifolium palustre, and paludosum: of some, Isopyrum: in English, Marsh Clover, Marsh Trefoil, and Buck's-Beans.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The seed of Isopyrum, saith Dioscorides, if it be taken with mead or honeyed water, is good against the cough and pain in the chest.

B. It is also a remedy for those that have weak livers and spit blood, for as Galen saith it cleanseth and cutteth tough humours, having also adjoined with it an astringent or binding quality.
CHAP. 499. Of Sweet Trefoil, or Garden Clover.

Sweet Trefoil hath an upright stalk, hollow, and of the height of two cubits, dividing itself into divers branches: whereon do grow leaves by three and three like to the other trefoils, slightly and superficially nicked in the edges: from the bosom whereof come the flowers, every one standing on his own single footstalk, consisting of little chaffy husks, of a light or pale bluish colour: after which come up little heads or knops, in which lieth the seed, of a whitish yellow colour, and lesser than that of Fenugreek: the root hath divers strings: the whole plant is not only of a whitish green colour, but also of a sweet smell, and of a strong aromatical or spicy scent, and more sweet when it is dried: which smell in the gathered and dried plant doth likewise continue long: and in moist and rainy weather, it smelleth more than in hot and dry weather: and also when it is yet fresh and green it loseth and recovereth again his smell seven times a day; whereon the old wives in Germany do call it Sieben gezeiten kraut, that is, the herb that changeth seven times a day.

The Place.

It is sown in gardens not only beyond the seas, but in divers gardens in England.

The Time.

It is sown in May, it flowereth in June and July, and perfecteth his seed in the end of August the same year it is sown.
Gerard's Herbal

The Names.

It is commonly called in Latin *Trifolium odoratum*: in High Dutch as we have said *Sieven gezeiten*: in low Dutch, *Sevenghetjcruij*: that is to say, an herb of seven times: it is called in Spanish, *Trebol real*: in French, *Treffle oderiferant*: in English, Sweet Trefoil, and Garden Clover: it seemeth to be *Lotus urbana*, or *sativa*, of which Dioscorides writeth in his fourth book: nevertheless divers authors set down Melilot, for *Lotus urbana*, and *Trifolium odoratum*, but not properly. The gardeners and herb women in Cheapside commonly call it, and know it by the name of Balsam, or Garden Balsam.

The Temperature.

Galen saith, that Sweet Trefoil doth in a mean concoct and dry, and is in a mean and temperate faculty between hot and cold: the which faculties undoubtedly are plainly perceived in this Sweet Trefoil.

The Virtues.

A. The juice pressed forth, saith Dioscorides, with honey added thereto, cleanseth the ulcers of the eyes, called in Latin *Argema*, and taketh away spots in the same, called *albugines*; and removeth such things as do hinder the sight.

B. The oil wherein the flowers are infused or steeped, doth perfectly cure green wounds in very short space; it appeaseth the pain of the gout, and all other aches, and is highly commended against ruptures, and bursting in young children.

C. The juice given in white wine cureth those that have fallen from some high place, avoideth congealed and clotted blood, and also helpeth those that do piss blood, by means of some great bruise, as was proved lately upon a boy in Fenchurch street, whom a cart went over, whereupon he did not only piss blood, but also it most wonderfully gushed forth, both at his nose and mouth.

D. The dried herb laid among garments keepeth them from moths and other vermin.
CHAP. 500. Of Fenugreek.

The Description.

1. Fenugreek hath a long slender trailing stalk, green, hollow within, and divided into divers small branches: whereon do grow leaves like those of the Meadow Trefoil, but rounder and lesser, green on the upper side, on the lower side tending to an ash colour among which come small white flowers, after them likewise long slender narrow cods, in which do lie small uneven seeds, of a yellowish colour: which being dried, have a strong smell, yet not unpleasant: the root is small, and perisheth when it hath perfected his seed.

2. There is a wild kind hereof serving to little use, that hath small round branches, full of knees or joints: from each joint proceedeth a small tender footstalk, whereon do grow three leaves and no more, somewhat snipped about the edges, like unto those of Burgundy Hay: from the bosoms whereof come forth small yellow flowers, which turn into little cods: the root is thick, tough, and pliant.

The Place.

Fenugreek is sown in fields beyond the seas: in England we sow a small quantity thereof in our gardens.

The Time.

It hath two seasons of sowing, according to Columella, of which one is in September, at what time it is sown that it may serve for fodder against winter; the
Gerard's Herbal

other is in the end of January, or the beginning of February, notwithstanding we may not sow it until April in England.

The Names.
It is called in Greek 
Telis, or as it is found in Pliny his copies Carphos: in Latin; 
Fænum græcum: Columella saith that it is called 
Siliqua: in Pliny we read 
Silicia: in Varro, Silicula: in High Dutch, 
Borkshorne: in Italian, 
Fiengreco: in Spanish, 
Alfornas: in French, 
Fenegrec: and in English, Fenugreek.

The Temperature and Virtues.
A. It is thought according to Galen in his book Of The Faculties of 
Nourishinents, that it is one of those simples which do manifestly heat, and that men do use it for food, as they do Lupins; for it is taken with pickle to keep the body soluble, and for this purpose it is more agreeable than Lupins, seeing it hath nothing in his own proper substance, that may hinder the working.

B. The juice of boiled Fenugreek taken with honey is good to purge by the stool all manner of corrupt humours that remain in the guts, making soluble through his sliminess, and mitigating pain through his warmness.

C. And because it hath in it a cleansing or scouring faculty, it raiseth humours out of the chest: but there must be added unto it no great quantity of honey lest the biting quality should abound.

D. In old diseases of the chest without a fever, fat dates are to be boiled with it, but when you have mixed the same juice pressed out with a great quantity of honey, and have again boiled it on a soft fire to a mean thickness; then must you use it long before meat.

E. In his book Of The Faculties of Simple Medicines he saith, that Fenugreek is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first: therefore it doth kindle and make worse hot inflammations, but such as are less hot and more hard are thereby cured by being wasted and consumed away.

F. The meal of Fenugreek, as Dioscorides saith, is of force to mollify and waste away: being boiled with mead and applied it taketh away inflammations, as well inward as outward.

G. The same being tempered or kneaded with nitre and vinegar, doth soften and waste away the hardness of the milt.

H. It is good for women that have either impostume, ulcer, or stopping of the matrix, to bathe and sit in the decoction thereof.

I. The juice of the decoction pressed forth doth cleanse the hair, taketh away dandruff, scoureth running sores of the head, called of the Grecians Achorai: being mingled with goose grease, and put up in manner of a pessary, or mother supposititory, it doth open and mollify all the parts, about the mother.

K. Green Fenugreek bruised and pounded with vinegar, is a remedy for weak and feeble parts, and that are without skin, ulcerated and raw.

L. The decoction thereof is good against ulcers in the low gut, and foul stinking excrements of those that have the bloody flux.
M. The oil which is pressed out thereof scoureth hairs and scars in the privy parts.

N. The decoction of Fenugreek seed, made in wine, and drunk with a little vinegar, expelleth all evil humours in the stomach and guts.

O. The seed boiled in wine with dates and honey, unto the form of a syrup, doth mundify and clean the breast, and easeth the pains thereof.

P. The meal of Fenugreek boiled in mead or honeyed water, consumeth and dissolveth all cold hard impostumes and swellings, and being mixed with the roots of Marsh Mallow and Linseed effecteth the same.

Q. It is very good for women that have any grief or swelling in the matrix, or other lower parts, if they bathe those parts with the decoction thereof made in wine, or sit over it and sweat.

R. It is good to wash the head with the decoction of the seed, for it taketh away the scurf, scales, nits, and all other such-like imperfections.
CHAP. 501. Of Horned Clover, and Black Clover.

1. The horned Clover, or coddled Trefoil, groweth up with many weak and slender stalks lying upon the ground: about which are set white leaves, somewhat long, lesser, and narrower than any of the other Trefoils; the flowers grow at the tops, of the fashion of those of Peas, of a shining yellow colour: after which come certain straight cuds, bigger than those of Fenugreek, but blunter at their ends, in which are contained little round seed; the root is hard and woody, and sendeth forth young springs every year.

2. This kind of Three-Leaved Grass, or rather Four-Leaved Trefoil, hath leaves like unto the common Trefoil, saving that they be lesser, and of a brown purplish colour, known by the name of Purple-Wort, or Purple-Grass; whose flowers are in shape like the Meadow Trefoil, but of a dusty overworn colour tending to whiteness; the which doth oftentimes degenerate, sometime into three leaves, sometimes in five, and also into seven, and yet the plant of his nature hath but four leaves & no more. Thus saith our author, but I do not think this to be the purple-leaved Trefoil with the white flower, which is commonly called Purple-Grass, for I could never observe it to have more leaves than three upon a stalk.
3. The root of this is small and white, from which arise many weak hairy branches some cubit long: whereon grow soft hairy leaves three on one footstalk, with two little leaves at the root thereof, & out of the bosoms of these upon like footstalks grow three lesser leaves; as also flowers of the bigness and shape of those of a Vetch, but of a brave deep crimson velvet colour: after these are past come pods set with four thin welts or skins which make them them four-square; whence Camerarius called it *Lotus pulcherrima tetragonolobus*: the seed is of an ash colour, somewhat less than a pea. It flowers most of the summer months, and is for the prettiness of the flower preserved in many gardens by yearly sowing the seed, for it is an annual plant. Clusius hath it by the name of *Lotus siliquosus rubello flore*: and he saith the seeds were divers times sent out of Italy by the name of *Sandalida*. It is also commonly called in Latin *Pisum quadratum*.

**The Place.**

The first groweth wild in barren ditch banks, pastures, and dry mountains.

The second groweth likewise in pastures and fields, but not so common as the other; and is planted in gardens.

**The Time.**

They flower in July and August.

**The Names.**

The second is called *Lotus trifolia*: in English, Horned Clover, or Codded Trefoil.

The other is called *Lotus quadrifolia*, or four-leaved Grass, or Purple-Wort; of Pena and Lobel, *Quadrifolia phæum fuscum hortorum*.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. Their faculties in working are referred unto the Meadow Trefoils: notwithstanding it is reported, that the leaves of Purple-wort stamped, and the juice given to drink, cureth young children of the disease called in English the Purples.
CHAP. 502. Of Medick Fodder, or Snail Clover.

The Description.

1. This kind of Trefoil, called Medica, hath many small and slender ramping branches crawling and creeping along upon the ground, set full of broad leaves slightly indented about the edges: the flowers are very small, and of a pale yellow colour, which turn into round wrinkled knobs, like the water snail, or the fish called periwinkle: wherein is contained flat seed fashioned like a little kidney, in colour yellow, in taste like a vetch or pea; the root is small, and dieth when the seed is ripe: it grows in my garden, and is good to feed cattle fat.

There are many varieties of these plants, and they chiefly consist in the fruit; for some are smooth and flat, as this first described: other some are rough and prickly, some with lesser, and other some with bigger prickles; as also with them standing divers ways, some are only rough, and of those some are as big as a small nut, other some no bigger than a pea. I give you here the descriptions of three rough ones, (as I received them from M. Goodyer) whereof the last is of the sea, which, as you may see, our author did but superficially describe.

2. Mediceæ maioris Bætica, species prima, spinulis intortis.

This hath four-square reddish streaked hairy trailing branches, like the small English Medica, greater and longer, four or five foot long: the leaves are also smooth, growing three together, neither sharp pointed, nor yet so broad at the top as the said English Medica, but blunt topped, with a small black spot in the midst, not crooked:
the flowers are also yellow, three, four, or five on a footstalk: after cometh a round
writhed fruit fully as big as a hazelnut, with small prickles not standing fore-right, but
lying flat on the fruit, finely wrapped, plaited, folded, or interlaced together, wherein
lieth wrapped the seed in fashion of a kidney, very like a Kidney Bean, but four times
smaller, and flatter, of a shining black colour without, like polished jet; containing a
white kernel within: the root is like the former, and perisheth also at winter.

Medica maioris Bœticæ spinosa species altera.

The branches also creep on the ground, and are streaked smooth four square,
reddish here and there, three or four foot long: the leaves are smooth, finely notched
about the edges, sharp pointed, without black spots, very like Medica pericarpio
plano: the flowers are small and yellow like the other: the fruit is round, writhed or
twined in also, fully as big as a hazelnut, somewhat cottony or woolly, with short
sharp prickles: wherein lieth also wrapped a shining black kidney-like seed, so like
the last described, that they are not to be discerned apart: the root is also alike, and
perisheth at winter.

Fig. 1707. Sea Medick (3)

3. This kind also of Trefoil, (called Medica marina: in English, Sea Trefoil,
growing naturally by the seaside about Westchester, and upon the Mediterranean sea
coast, and about Venice) hath leaves very like unto the common meadow Trefoil, but
thicker, and covered over with flocky hoariness like Gnaphalium, after the manner of
most of the sea herbs: the flowers are yellow: the seeds wrinkled like the former, but
in quantity they be lesser.

Medica marinæ spinosæ species.

The branches of this are the least and shortest of all the rest, little exceeding a
foot or two in length, and are four square, green, somewhat hairy, and trailing on the
ground: the leaves are like to those of Medica pericarpio plano, not fully so sharp
pointed, without black spots, soft, hairy, three on a footstalk: the flowers grow amongst
the branches, on very small footstalks, forth of the bosoms of the leaves, (not
altogether on or near the tops of the branches) and are very small and yellow, but one
on a footstalk: after cometh small round writhed fruit, no bigger than a pea; with very
short sharp prickles, wherein is contained yellowish seed of the fashion of a kidney
like the former, and is the hardest to be plucked forth of any of the rest; the root is
also whitish, like the roots of the other, and also perisheth at winter. Aug. 2. 1621.
John Goodyer.
Gerard's Herbal

The Place.

The first is sown in the fields of Germany, Italy, and other countries, to feed their cattle, as we in England do Buckwheat: we have a small quantity thereof in our gardens, for pleasures' sake.

The third groweth near unto the sea side in divers places.

The Time.

*Medica* must be sown in April; it flowereth in June and July: the fruit is ripe in the end of August.

The Names


The other is called Sea Clover, and Medick Fodder of the Sea.

The Temperature and virtues.

A. Medick Fodder is of temperature cold, for which cause it is applied green to such inflammations and infirmities as have need of cooling.
CHAP. 503. Of Wood Sorrel, or Starwort.

The Description.

1. *Oxys Pliniana*, or *Trifolium acetosum*, being a kind of Three-Leaved Grass, is a low and base herb without stalk; the leaves immediately rising from the root upon short stems; at their first coming forth folded together, but afterward they do spread abroad, and are of a fair light green colour, in number three, like the rest of the Trefoils, but that each leaf hath a deep cleft or rift in the middle: amongst these leaves come up small and weak tender stems, such as the leaves do grow upon, which bear small star-like flowers of a white colour, with some brightness of carnation dashed over the same: the flower consisteth of five small leaves; after which come little round knops or husks full of yellowish seed: the root is very thready, and of a reddish colour: the whole herb is in taste like Sorrel, but much sharper and quicker, and maketh better green sauce than any other herb or Sorrel whatsoever.

My oft mentioned friend Mr. George Bowles sent some plants of this with very fair red flowers, which he gathered in April last, in a wood of Sir Thomas Walsingham's at Chislehurst in Kent, called Stockwell Wood, and in a little round wood thereto adjoining.
Gerard's Herbal

2. The second kind of Oxys or wood Sorrel is very like the former, saving that the flowers are of a yellow colour, and yield for their seed vessels small and long horned cods; in other respects alike.

The Place.

These plants grow in woods and under bushes, in sandy and shadowy places in every country. So saith our author, but I have not as yet found any of the yellow growing with us.

The Time.

They flower from the beginning of April unto the end of May and midst of June.

The Names

Wood Sorrel or Cuckoo Sorrel is called in Latin Trifolium acetosum: the apothecaries and herbarists call it Alleluia, and Panis cucili, or Cuckoos' meat, because either the Cuckoo feedeth thereon, or by reason when it springeth forth and flowereth, the cuckoo singeth most, at which time also Alleluia was wont to be sung in churches. Hieronymus Fracastoris nameth it Lujula, Alexander Benedictus saith that it is called Alimonia: in High Dutch, Saurelklee: in Low Coekkoerrijt: in French, Pain de Cocu: in English, Wood Sorrel, Wood Sour, Sour Trefoil, Stubwort, Alleluia, and Sorrel du Bois.

It is thought to be that which Pliny, lib. 27. cap. 12 calleth Oxys; writing thus: Oxys is three leaved, it is good for a feeble stomach, and is also eaten of those that are bursten. But Galen in his fourth book Of Simples saith, that Oxys is the same which Oxalis or Sorrel is; and Oxys is found in Pliny to be also Iunci species, or a kind of Rush.

The Nature.

These herbs are cold and dry like Sorrel.

The Virtues.

A. Sorrel du Bois or Wood Sorrel stamped and used for green sauce, is good for them that have sick and feeble stomachs, for it strengtheneth the stomach, procureth appetite, and of all Sorrel sauces is the best, not only in virtue, but also in the pleasantness of his taste.

B. It is a remedy against putrefied and stinking ulcers of the mouth, it quencheth thirst, and cooleth mightily an hot pestilential fever, especially being made in a syrup with sugar.
CHAP. 504. Of Noble Liverwort, or Golden Trefoil.

The Description.

1. Noble Liverwort hath many leaves spread upon the ground, three cornered, resembling the Three-Leaved Grass, of a perfect grass green colour on the upper side, but greyish underneath: among which rise up divers small tender footstalks of three inches long; on the ends whereof stands one small single blue flower, consisting of six little leaves, having in the middle a few white chives: the seed is enclosed in little round knops, of a whitish colour; which being ripe do start forth of themselves: the root is slender, composed of an infinite number of black strings.

2. The second is like unto the precedent in leaves, roots, and seeds: the flowers hereof are of a shining red colour, wherein consisteth the difference.
3. This strange Three-Leaved Liverwort differeth not from the former, saving that this brings forth double blue flowers tending to purple, and the others not so.

4. There is another in my garden with white flowers, which in stalks and every other respect is like the others.

**The Place.**

These pretty flowers are found most places of Germany in shadowy woods among shrubs and also by highways’ sides: in Italy likewise, and that not only with the blue flowers, but the same with double flowers also, by the report of Alphonsus Pancius Dr of Physic in the University of Ferrara, a man excellently well seen in the knowledge of simples. They do all grow likewise in my garden, except that with double flowers, which as yet is a stranger in England. Thus our author: it is now plentiful in many gardens.

**The Time.**

They flower in March and April, and perfect their seed in May.

**The Names.**


**The Temperature.**

These herbs are cold and dry, with an astringent or binding quality.
The Virtues.

A. It is reported to be good against the weakness of the liver which proceedeth of an hot cause: for it cooloth and strengtheneth it not a little.

B. Baptista Sardus commendeth it, and writeth that the chief virtue is in the root; if a spoonful of the powder thereof be given certain days together with wine, or with some kind of broth, it profiteth much against the disease called Enterocele.
CHAP. 505. Of Melilot, or Plaster Clover.

The Description.

1. The first kind of Melilot hath great plenty of small tough and twiggy branches, and stalks full of joints or knees, in height two cubits, set full of leaves three together, like unto Burgundy Hay. The flowers grow at the top of the stalk, of a pale yellow colour, standing thickly set and compact together, in order or rows, very like the flowers of Securidaca altera: which being faded, there follow certain crooked cogs bending or turning upward with a sharp point, in fashion not much unlike a parrot's bill, wherein is contained seed like Fenugreek, but flatter and slenderer: the whole plant is of a reasonable good smell, much like unto honey, and very full of juice: the root is very tough and pliant.

2. The second kind of Melilot hath small and tender upright stalks, a cubit high, and somewhat more, of a reddish colour, set full of round leaves three together, not snipped about the edges like the other Trefoils; and they are of a very deep green colour, thick, fat, and full of juice. The flowers grow alongst the tops of the stalks, of a yellow colour, which turn into rough round seeds as big as a tare, and of a pale colour. The whole plant hath also the savour of honey, and perisheth when it hath borne his seed.
3. The third kind of Melilot hath round stalks and jagged leaves set round about, not much unlike the leaves of Fenugreek, always three growing together like the Trefoils, and oftentimes covered over with an hoariness, as though meal had been strewed upon them. The flowers be yellow and small, growing thick together in a tuft, which turn into little cobs, wherein the seed is contained: the root is small, tough, and pliant.

4. The fourth kind of Melilot grows to the height of three cubits, set full of leaves like the common Melilot, and of the same savour: the flowers grow amongst the top of the stalks, of a white colour, which turn into small soft husks, wherein is contained little blackish seed: the root is also tough and pliant.

5. The Common Melilot hath weak cornered green stalks some two foot and better high, whereon grow longish leaves snipped and oftentimes eaten about the edges, of a fresh green colour: out of the bosoms of the leaves come little stalks some handful long, set thick on their tops with little yellow flowers hanging down and turning up again, each flower being composed of two little yellow leaves, whereof the uppermost comes up again, and the undermost seems to be parted into three. The flowers past, there succeed little cobs wherein is the seed.

The Place.

These plants grow in my garden: the common English Melilot Pena setteth forth for Melilotis germanica: but for certainty no part of the world doth enjoy so great part thereof as England, and especially Essex; for I have seen between Sudbury in Suffolk, and Clare in Essex, and from Clare to Henham, and from thence to Ovington, Bulmer, and Pebmarsh, very many acres of arable pasture overgrown with
the same; insomuch that it doth not only spoil their land, but the corn also, as Cockle or Darnel, and as a weed that generally spreadeth over that corner of the Shire.

The Time.

These herbs do flower in July and August.

The Names.

Plaster Clover is called by the general name, *Melilotus*, of some, *Trifolium odoratum*, yet there is another sweet Trefoil, as hath been declared. Some call it *Trefolium equinum*, and *caballinum*, or Horse-Trefoil, by reason it is good fodder for horses, who do greedily feed thereon: likewise *Trifolium ursinum*, or Bear's Trefoil: of Fuchsius, *Saxifraga lutea*, and *Sertula campana*: of Cato, *Serta campana*, which most do name *Corona regia*: in High Dutch, *Groote Steenclaveren*: of the Romans and Etrurians, *Tribolo*, as Matthiolus writeth: in English, Melilot, and Plaster Clover: in Yorkshire, Hart's Clover.

The Temperature.

Melilot, saith Galen, hath more plenty of hot substance than cold (that is to say, hot and dry in the first degree) it hath also a certain binding quality, besides a wasting and ripening faculty. Dissocorides showeth, that Melilot is of a binding and mollifying quality, but the mollifying quality is not proper unto it, but inasmuch as it wasteth away, and digesteth humours gathered in hot swellings, or otherwise: for so far doth it mollify or supple that thing which is hard, which is not properly called mollifying, but digesting and wasting away by vapors.

The Virtues.

A. Melilot boiled in sweet wine until it be soft, if you add thereto the yolk of a roasted egg, the meal of Fenugreek and Linseed, the roots of Marsh Mallows and hog's grease stamped together, and used as a poultice or cataplasm, plasterwise, doth assuage and soften all manner of swellings, especially about the matrix, fundament and genitories, being applied unto those places hot.

B. With the juice hereof, oil, wax, rosin and turpentine, is made a most sovereign healing and drawing emplaster, called Melilot plaster, retaining both the colour and savour of the herb, being artificially made by a skilful surgeon.

C. The herb boiled in wine and drunk provoketh urine, breaketh the stone, and assuageth the pain of the kidneys, bladder and belly, and ripeneth phlegm, and causeth it to be easily cast forth.

D. The juice thereof dropped into the eyes cleareth the sight, consumeth, dissolveth, and clean taketh away the web, pearl, and spot in the eyes.

E. Melilot alone with water healeth *recentes melicerides*, a kind of wens or rather apostumes containing matter like honey; and also the running ulcers of the head, if it be laid to with chalk, wine and galls.

F. It likewise mitigateth the pain of the ears, if the juice be dropped therein mixed with a little wine, and taketh away the pain of the head, which the Greeks call *kephalalgia*, especially if the head be bathed therewith, and a little vinegar and oil of Roses mixed amongst it.
CHAP. 506. Of certain other Trefoils.

Those Trefoils being omitted by our Author, I have thought good to put into a chapter a by thernselves, though they have little affinity with one another, the two last excepted.

The Description.

1. The first of those in roots, stalks, and manner of growing is like the Medick or Snail Trefoils formerly described: the leaves are hairy; the flowers yellow and small: after which follow crooked flat cods, of an indifferent breadth, wherein is contained seeds made after the fashion of little kidneys; this the Italians, according to Lobel, call Lunaria radiata; in the Historia Lugdunensis it is called Medica sylvestris altera lunata.

2. The root of this is long and thick, covered with a yellowish rind, and having a white sweet pith in the inside, covered with a hairiness on the top, and sending forth sundry fibres: from this rise up many weak long footstalks, whereon grow leaves set together by threes, long, narrow, smooth, lightly nicked on the edges: amongst these rises up commonly one stalk (yet sometimes two) smooth and naked, three or four inches long; on the top thereof grow spike fashion, 8 or ten pretty large light purple flowers, each of them being set in a cup divided into 5 parts. This grows upon divers parts of the Alps: and Pena in his Mons Baldus set it forth by the name of Trifolium angustifolium alpinum. Bauhin saith, the root hereof tastes like Liquorice, wherefore it may be called Glycyrrhiza Astragaloides or Astragalus dulcis: and he received it out of Spain by the name of Glycyrrhiza. He calls it in his Prodromus, Trifolium alpinum flore magno radice dulci.
3. This thorny Trefoil hath a long thready root, from which arise many short branched stalks some two handfuls high, cornered, and spread upon the ground; the joints, which are many, are commonly red, and armed with four sharp prickles, and out of each of them, upon short footstalks grow two trefoil leaves, green, longish, and ending in a little prickle: out of these joints also grow little footstalks, which carry single flowers made of five little leaves, of the shape and colour of the little Blue Bell-flower, with ten chives in the middle tipped with yellow: after these follow five-cornered sharp pointed heads, containing a single flat red seed in each corner. Clusius set forth this by the name of *Trifolium spinosum creticum*: he questions whether it may not be the true *Tribulis terrestris* of Dioscorides.
4. The roots, stalks, and leaves of this pretty Trefoil do not much differ from the common White Trefoil, but there is some difference in the flowers and seed; for the flowers of this are small, grow thick together, and are of a whitish blush colour: after which follow heads made of little bladders or thin skins, such a manner as they resemble a Strawberry or Raspis, and they are of a greyish colour, here and there marked with red: the stalks seldom grow above three inches high. It grows in most salt marshes, as in Dartford salt marsh, in those below Purfleet, and such like: it flowers in July and August. Clusius hath set it forth by the name of *Trifolium fragiferum frisicum*; some had rather call it *Trifolium vesicarium*, Bladder Trefoil.

5. There are two other Trefoils with which I think good to acquaint you, and those by the similitude of the cups, which contain the flowers, and become the seed vessels, may be fitly called *stellata*; and thus Bauhin calls the first *Trifolium stellatum*; whereto for distinctions sake I add *hirsutum*, calling it *Trifolium stellatum hirsutum*, Rough Hairy-headed Trefoil: it hath a small long white root, from which arise stalks four foot high, round, slender, hairy, and reddish, having few leaves or branches: the leaves stand three on a stalk, as in other Trefoils, smooth on the upper side, and hairy below: the flowers are small and red, like in shape to those of the common Red Trefoil, but lesser, and they stand each of them in a cup reddish and rough below, and on the upper part cut into five long sharp leaves standing open as they commonly figure a star: the flowers fallen, these cups dilate themselves, and have in the middle a longish transverse whitish spot. I saw this flowering in May in the garden of Mr Tradescant, who did first bring plants hereof from Formentera a small island in the Mediterranean sea.

6. This other (which for anything that I know is not figured nor described by any) hath stalks sometimes a foot, otherwhiles little above an inch high, hairy, and divided but into few branches: the leaves, which stand by threes, are fastened to long footstalks, and they themselves are somewhat longish, having two little sharp pointed leaves growing at the setting on of the footstalks to the stalks: they are green of colour, and not snipped about the edges. The heads that grow on the tops of the stalks are round, short, and green, with small purple or else whitish flowers like those of the common Trefoil, but lesser, standing in cups divided into five parts, which when the flowers are fallen become somewhat bigger, harsher, and more prickly, but open not themselves so much as those of the former: the seed is like that of Millet, but somewhat rounder. This flowers in June, and the seed is ripe in July. I first observed it in Dartford salt marsh, the tenth of June, 1633. I have named this *Trifolium stellatum glabrum*, Smooth Starry-Headed Trefoil.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

These, especially the three last, seem to be of the same temper and virtue as the common Meadow Trefoils, but none of them are at this day used in physic, or known, unless to some few.
CHAP. 597. Of Pulse.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of pulse, as Beans, Peas, Tares, Chickpeas, and such like, comprehended under this title Pulse: and first of the great Bean, or garden Bean.

The Description.

1. The Great Bean riseth up with a four-square stalk, smooth, hollow, without joints, long and upright, which when it is thick sown hath no need of propping, but when it is sown alone by itself soon falleth down to the ground: it bringeth forth long leaves one standing from another, consisting of many growing upon one rib or stem, every one whereof is somewhat fat, set with veins, slippery, more long than round. The flowers are eared, in form long, in colour either white with black spots, or of a blackish purple: after them come up long cods, thick, full of substance, slenderer below, frizzed on the inside with a certain white wool as it were, or soft flocks; which before they be ripe are green, and afterwards being dry they are black and somewhat hard, as be also the cods of broom, yet they be longer than those, and greater: in which are contained three, four; or five beans, seldom more, long, broad, flat, like almost to a man's nail, great, and oftentimes to the weight of half a dram; for the most part white, now and then of a red purplish colour; which in their upper part have a long black navel as it were, which is covered with a nail, the colour whereof is a light green: the skin of the fruit or bean is closely compacted, the inner part being dry is hard and sound, and easily cleft in sunder; and it hath on the one side an evident
beginning of sprouting, as have also the little Peas, Great Peas, Chickpeas, and many other Pulses. The roots hereof are long, and fastened with many strings.

2. The second kind of Bean (which Pena setteth forth under the title of \textit{Faba sylvestris græcorum}, and Dodonæus, \textit{Bona sylvestris}, which may be called in English Greek Bean) hath square hollow stalks like the Garden Beans, but smaller. The leaves be also like the common Bean, saving that the ends of the rib whereon those leaves do grow have at the very end small tendrils or claspers, such as the Pea leaves have. The flowers are in fashion like the former, but of a dark red colour: which being faded, there succeed long cods which are black when they be ripe, within which is enclosed black seed as big as a Pea, of an unpleasant taste and savour.

3. The common Bean in stalks, leaves, flowers, and cods is like the former great garden Bean, but lesser in them all; yet the leaves are more, and grow thicker, and out of the bosoms of the leaves upon little footstalks grow the flowers, commonly six in number, upon one stalk, which are succeeded by so many cods, lesser and rounder than those of the former: the beans themselves are also less; and not so flat, but rounder, and somewhat longish: their colour are either whitish, yellowish, or else black. This is sown in most places of this kingdom, in corn fields, and known both to man and beast. This is the \textit{Bona} or \textit{Faselus minor} of Dodonæus; and the \textit{Faba minor} of Pena and Lobel.

The Place.

The first Bean is sown in fields and gardens everywhere about London.

This black Bean is sown in a few men's gardens who be delighted in variety and study of herbs, whereof I have great plenty in my garden.

The Time.

They flower in April and May, and that by parcels, and they be long in flowering: the fruit is ripe in July and August.

The Names.

The Garden Bean is called in Latin \textit{Faba}: in English, the Garden Bean: the Field Bean is of the same kind and name, although the fertility of the soil hath amended and altered the fruit into a greater form. So saith our author, but the difference between the Garden and Field Bean is a specific difference, and not an accidental one caused by the soil, as every one that knoweth them may well perceive.

The Black Bean, whose figure we have set forth in the second place, is called \textit{Faba sylvestris}: of some thought to be the true physic Bean of the ancients; whereupon they have named it \textit{Faba veterum}, and also \textit{Faba græcorum}, or the Greek Bean. Some would have the Garden Bean to be the true \textit{Phaseolus}, or Kidney Bean; of which number Dodonæus is chief, who hath so wrangled and ruffled among his relatives, that all his antecedents must be cast out of doors: for his long and tedious tale of a tub we have thought meet to commit to oblivion. (But see below*) It is called in Greek \textit{Puanos}, whereupon the Athenians' feast days dedicated to Apollo were named \textit{Puanepsia}, in which Beans and Pulses were sodden: in Latin it is also called \textit{Faba fresa} or \textit{fracta}, broken or bruised Bean.

*Note: Dodonæus knew well what he did, as any that are either judicious or learned may look into the first chapter of the second book of his fourth \textit{Pemptas}. But our author's words are too injurious especially being without cause, & against him,
from whom he borrowed all that was good in this his book, except the figures of Tabernamontanus. It may be Dr. Priest did not fit his translation in this place to our author's capacity; for Dodonæus did not affirm it to be the *Phaseolus*, but *Phaselus*, distinguishing between them.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. The Bean before it be ripe is cold and moist: being dry it hath power to bind and restrain, according to some authors: further of the temperature and virtues out of Galen.

B. The Bean (as Galen saith in his book *Of The Faculties of Nourishments*) is windy meat, although it be never so much sodden and dressed any way.

C. Beans have not a close and heavy substance, but a spongy and light, and this substance hath a scouring and cleansing faculty; for it is plainly seen, that the meal of Beans cleanseth away the filth of the skin; by reason of which quality it passeth not slowly through the belly.

D. And seeing the meal of Beans is windy, the Beans themselves if they be boiled whole and eaten are yet much more windy.

E. If they be parched they lose their windiness but they are harder of digestion, and do slowly descend, and yield unto the body thick or gross nourishing juice; but if they be eaten green before they be ripe and dried, the same thing happeneth to them which is incident to all fruits that are eaten before they be fully ripe; that is to say, they give unto the body a moist kind of nourishment, and therefore a nourishment more full of excrements, not only in the inward parts, but also in the outward, and whole body through: therefore those kinds of Beans do less nourish, but they do more speedily pass through the belly, as the said author in his book *Of The Faculties of Simple Medicines* saith, that the Bean is moderately cold and dry.

F. The pulp or meat thereof doth somewhat cleanse, the skin doth a little bind.

G. Therefore divers physicians have given the whole Bean boiled with vinegar and salt to those that were troubled with the bloody flux, with lasks and vomitings.

H. It raiseth phlegm out of the chest and lungs: being outwardly applied it drieth without hurt the watery humours of the gout. We have oftentimes used the same being boiled in water and so mixed with swine's grease.

I. We have laid the meal thereof with Oxymel, or syrup of vinegar, both upon bruised and wounded sinews, and upon the wounded parts of such as have been bitten or stung, to take away the fiery heat.

K. It also maketh a good plaster and poultice for men's stones and women's paps: for those parts when they are inflamed, have need of moderate cooling, especially when the paps are inflamed through the cluttered and congealed milk contained in them.

L. Also milk is dried up with that poultice.

M. The meal thereof (as Dioscorides further addeth) being tempered with the meal of Fenugreek and honey, doth take away black and blue spots, which come by dry beatings, and wasteth away kernels under the ears.

N. With Rose leaves, Frankincense, and the white of an egg, it keepeth back the watering of the eyes, the pin and the web, and hard swellings.
O. Being tempered with wine it healeth suffusions, and stripes of the eyes.

P. The Bean being chewed without the skin, is applied to the forehead against rheums and falling down of humours.

Q. Being boiled in wine it taketh away the inflammation of the stones.

R. The skins of Beans applied to the place where the hairs were first plucked up, wil not suffer them to grow big, but rather consumeth their nourishment.

S. Being applied with Barley meal parched and old oil, they waste away the King's evil.

T. The decoction of them serveth to dye woollen cloth withal.

V. This Bean being divided into two parts (the skin taken off) by which it was naturally joined together, and applied, stancheth the blood which doth too much issue forth after the biting of the horse-leech, if the one half be laid upon the place.

X. The Black Bean is not used with us at all, seeing, as we have said, it is rare, and sown only in a few men's gardens, who be delighted in variety and study of herbs.
CHAP. 508. Of Kidney Bean.

The Kinds.

The stock or kindred of the Kidney Bean are wonderfully many; the difference especially consisteth in the colour of the fruit: there be other differences, whereof to write particularly would greatly stuff our volume with superfluous matter, considering

Fig. 1723. Kinds of Kidney Bean (1-4)
that the simplest is able to distinguish apart the white Kidney Bean from the black, the red from the purple, and likewise those of mixed colours from those that are only of one colour: as also great ones from little ones. Wherefore it may please you to be content with the description of some few, and the figures of the rest, with their several titles in Latin and English, referring their descriptions unto a further consideration, which otherwise would be an endless labour, or at least needless.

**The Description.**

1. The first kind of *Phaseolus* or garden Smilax hath long and small branches growing very high, taking hold with his clasping tendrils upon poles and sticks, and whatsoever standeth near unto him, as doth the hop or vine, which are so weak and tender, that without such props or supporters they are not able to sustain themselves, but will run ramping on the ground fruitless. Upon the branches do grow broad leaves almost like Ivy, growing together by three, as in the common Trefoil or Three-Leaved Grass: among which come the flowers, that do vary and differ in their colours, according to the soil where they grow, sometimes white, sometimes red, and oftentimes of a pale colour: afterwards there come out long cobs, whereof some are crooked, and some are straight, and in those the fruit is contained, smaller than the common Bean, somewhat flat, and fashioned like a kidney, which are of divers colours, like unto the flowers whereto for the most part these are like.

2. There is also another *Dolichus* or Kidney Bean, lesser, shorter, and with smaller cobs, whose flowers and fruit are like in form to the former Kidney Beans, but much lesser, and of a black colour.

3. There is likewise another strange Kidney Bean, which doth also wind itself about poles and props near adjoining, that hath likewise three leaves hanging upon one stem, as have the other Kidney Beans, but every one is much narrower and also blacker: the cobs be shorter, plainer, and flatter, and contain fewer seeds.

4. This Kidney Bean differeth not from the others, but only in the colour of the fruit, which are of a pale yellow colour, wherein consistseth the difference.

Besides the varieties of these Kidney Beans mentioned by our author, there are divers other reckoned up by Clusius, which have been brought out of the East and West Indies, and from some parts of Africa; I will only give you the figures of two or three of them out of Clusius, with the colours of their flowers and fruit.
5. The stalk of this is low and stiff, the flowers of a whitish yellow on the outside, and of a violet colour within: the fruit is snow white, with a black spot in the eye: This is *Phaseolus peregrinus* 4 Of Clusius.

6. This hath leaves like the Marsh Trefoil, flowers growing many together, in shape and magnitude like those of common Pea: the cods were narrow, and contained three or four seeds, which were small, no bigger than the seeds of *Laburnum*: the painter expressed two of them in the leaf next under the uppermost tuft of flowers: this is Clusius his *Phaseolus peregrinus* 5.
7. This grows high, winding about poles or other supporters: the leaves are narrower than the former: the fruit lesser and flatter, of a reddish colour. This is the *Phaseolus peregrinus* 6 of Clusius.
Fig. 1727. Kinds of Kidney Bean (8,9)

8. This winds about poles and grows to a great height, with soft hairy leaves and large pods, wherein are contained seeds of divers colours; sometimes they are red, otherwhiles of a whitish ash colour, sometimes wholly black, and otherwhiles spotted.
9. The Egyptian Bean is somewhat like the other Kidney Beans in his growing: his fruit is of the bigness of a small Hazelnut, black on one side, and of a golden yellow or orange colour on the other.

Fig. 1728. Kinds of Kidney Bean – Fruit only

Besides these you find here figured, and divers others described by Clusius, I think it not amiss to mention two more. The first of these, which was procured by Mr Tradescant, and grows in our gardens, is a large plant, not differing in manner of growth from the former Indian Kidney Beans, but his flowers are large, many, and of an elegant scarlet colour: whence it is vulgarly termed by our Florists, the Scarlet Bean. The other I have seen grow to a little height, but it would not endure; but the pods of it which were brought to us were some three inches long, and covered with a hairy down of a reddish colour, which put upon the hands or skin in any part of the body would sting like a Nettle, and this was called the Stinging Bean: I think it came from some part of the East Indies.

The Place

Kidney Beans do easily and soon spring up, and grow into a very great length, being sown near to long poles fastened hard by them, or hard by arbors or banqueting places, otherwise they lie flat on the ground, slowly come up, hardly bring forth fruit, and become faulty and smitted, as Theophrastus writeth.
Gerard's Herbal

The Time.

It is sown in the spring, especially in the midst of April, but not before: the fruit is ripe about the end of summer.

The Names.

Hippocrates, Diocles, Theophrastus, and most of the other old Writers do call it Siliche; divers of the bigness of the seed do name it Lekon and Lekion: in Latin, Siliqua: Dioscorides calleth it Smilax, because it climbeth up as Smilax doth, and taketh hold of props, stakes, and shrubs standing near unto it: others name it Phasiolon, a diminutive from Phaselos: for Phaselos and Phaseolos are not one and the self-same pulse called by divers names, as some suppose, but sundry fruits one differing from the others; as Galen in his first book Of The Faculties of Nourishments doth sufficiently declare, where he entreateth of them both. For first he disputeth of Phaseli and Ochri, Beans, and Peas; then afterward, others coming between, he writeth of Dolichus, which also is named Phaseolus: and though he may be thought to doubt what manner of pulse that is which Theophrastas calleth Dolichus, notwithstanding he gathereth and concludeth that it is a fruit of a garden plant in Italy, and in Caria, growing in the fields, which is in form longer than the Chicklings, and was commonly called in his time Faseolus. Of his opinion is Paulus Ægineta, writing of Phaselus, which he nameth Dolichus, in the 9th chap of his first book. Moreover, Faselus was in times past a common pulse in Italy and Rome, and Dolichus a strange pulse; for Columella and Palladius, writers of husbandry, have made mention of the sowing of Phaselus: and Virgil calleth it Vilis in the first of his Georgics: but concerning the sowing of Dolichus or Kidney Bean, none of the Latins have written, by reason that the same was rare in Italy, and sown only in gardens, as Galen hath affirmed, naming it oftentimes a garden plant, and showing that the same, as we have said, is sown in Caria; and likewise Dioscorides nameth it Smilax chortea, that is to say Smilax hortensis, or garden Smilax, because it growtheth in gardens: who also writing of this in another several chapter, showeth plainly, that Smilax hortensis, or Dolichus is another plant differing from Faselis, which he nameth Phaseolus.

For which causes it is not to be doubted, but that Phaselus with three syllables, differeth from Faseolus with four syllables, no otherwise than Cicer, Cicercula, and Cicera differ, which notwithstanding be near one to another in names: and it is not to be doubted but that they are deceived, who think it to be one and the self-same Pulse called by sundry names.

This plant is named in English, Kidney Bean, Sperage Beans: of some, Faselles, or Long Peas, French Beans, Garden Smilax, and Roman Beans: in French, Feves de Romme: in Dutch, Turksoonen.

The Temperature.

Kidney Beans, as Dioscorides teacheth, do more loose the belly than Peas; they are less windy, and nourish well, and no less than Peas, as Diocles saith: they be also without engendering windiness at all: the Arabian physicians say that they are hot and moist of nature.
The Virtues.

A. The fruit and cuds of Kidney Beans boiled together before they be ripe, and buttered, and so eaten with their cuds, are exceedingly delicate meat, and do not engender wind as the other Pulses do.

B. They do also gently loose the belly, provoke urine, and engender good blood reasonably well; but if you eat them when they be ripe, they are neither toothsome nor wholesome. Therefore they are to be taken whilst they are yet green and tender, which are first boiled until they be tender; then is the rib or sinew that doth run along the cod to be taken away; then must they be put into a stone pipkin, or some other vessel with butter, and set to the fire again to stew, or boil gently: which meat is very wholesome, nourishing, and of a pleasant taste.
CHAP. 509. Of the Flat Bean called Lupine.

The Description.

1. The tame or garden Lupine hath round hard stems, which of themselves do stand upright without any succour, help or stay: the leaves consist of five, six, or seven joined together, like those of the Chaste Tree, green on the upper side, and on
the nether side white and downy; and in the evening about the setting of the sun they
hang flagging downwards as though they were withered: among these there cometh
up a tuft of flowers of a pale or light blush colour, which turn into great rough coks,
wherein is the fruit, which is flat and round like a cake, of a white colour, and bitter in
taste: and where they cleave unto the cod, in that part they have a certain dent like a
little navel. This Lupine hath but one root, which is slender and woody, having
hanging on it a few small threads like hairs.

2. The yellow Lupine is like to the garden one in stalk and leaves, yet both of
these lesser and shorter. It hath beautiful flowers of an exceeding fair gold yellow
colour, sweet of smell, made up into an ear, of the colour of the yellow violet, and
somewhat of the smell: the coks are small, hard, somewhat hairy: the seeds be little,
flat, round, in taste extreme bitter, of sundry colours, ill-savourcd, far lesser than the
tame one.

3. The blue Lupines are longer than the yellow, and divided into more wings
and branches: the leaves be lesser and thinner: the flowers small, and lesser than the
yellow, of a blue colour: the seeds be also of divers colours, bitter, and lesser than any
of them all.

4. There is also another blue Lupine, whose leaves, stalks, flowers, and coks
are like, but larger than those of the first described: the flowers are of colour blue,
with some whiteness here and there intermixed.

The Place and Time.

They require (saith Theophrastus) a sandy and bad soil: they hardly come up
in tilled places, being of their own nature wild: they grow in my garden, and in other
men's gardens about London. They are planted in April, and bring forth their fruit at
two or three sundry times, as though it did flower often, and bring forth many crops:
the first in May, the second in July, the last in September, but it seldom cometh to
ripeness.

The Names.

This pulse is named in Latin, Lupinus, and Lupinus sativus: in High Dutch,
Feigbonon: in Italian, Lupino domestico: in Spanish, Entramocos: in the Brabanders
language, Vijch Boonen, and Lupinen: in French, Lupins: in English, Garden Lupine,
Tame Lupine, and of some after the German name Fig-Bean.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The seed of the garden Lupine is much and often used, as Galen saith in his
books Of the Faculties of Nourishments: for the same being boiled and afterwards
steeped in fair water, until such time as it doth altogether lose his natural bitterness,
and lastly being seasoned with a reasonable quantity of salt, it is eaten with pickle.
The Lupine is of an hard and earthy substance, wherefore it is necessarily of hard
digestion, and containeth in it a thick juice; of which being not perfectly concocted in
the veins, is engendered a blood or juice which is properly called crude, or raw: but
when it hath lost all his bitterness by preparing or dressing of it (as aforesaid) it is like
to such things as are without relish, which is perceived by the taste; and being so
prepared, it is, as Galen writeth in his books Of the Faculties of Simple Medicines, one
of the emplastics or clammers.

B. But whilst the natural bitterness doth as yet remain, it hath power to cleanse
and to consume or waste away; it killeth worms in the belly, being both applied in
manner of an ointment and given with honey to lick on, and also drunk with water and vinegar.

C. Moreover, the decoction thereof inwardly taken, voideth the worms; and likewise if it be sundry times outwardly used as a bath, it is a remedy against the morphew, sore heads, the smallpox, wild scabs, gangrenes, venomous ulcers, partly by cleansing, and partly by consuming and drying without biting; being taken with Rue and Pepper, that it may be the pleasanter, it scoureth the liver and milt.

D. It bringeth down the menses, and expelleth the dead child if it be laid to with myrrh and honey.

E. Moreover, the meal of Lupines doth waste or consume away without any biting quality, for it doth not only take away black and blue spots that come of dry beatings, but also it cureth chaeradas, and phymata: but then it is to be boiled either in vinegar or oxymel, or else in water and vinegar, and that according to the temperature of the grieved parties, and the diversities of the diseases, Quod ex usu est eligendo [as experience has shown to be appropriate]: and it also taketh away blue marks, and what thing soever else we have said the decoction could do, all the same doth the meal likewise perform.

F. These Lupines, as Dioscorides doth furthermore write, being boiled in rainwater till they yield a certain cream, are good to cleanse and beautify the face.

G. They cure the scabs in sheep with the root of black Chamaeleon Thistle, if they be washed with the warm decoction.

H. The root boiled with water and drunk, provoketh urine.

I. The Lupines being made sweet and pleasant, mixed with vinegar and drunk, take away the loathsomeness of the stomach, and cause a good appetite to meat.

K. Lupines boiled in that strong lye which barbers do use, and some Wormwood, Centaury, and bay salt added thereto, stay the running and spreading of a gangrena, and those parts that are deprived of their nourishment and begin to mortify, and stayeth the ambulative nature of running and spreading ulcers, being applied thereto very hot, with stufes of cloth or tow.
CHAP. 510. Of Peas.

The Kinds.

1. There be divers sorts of Peas, differing very notably in many respects, some of the garden, and others of the field, and yet both counted tame: some with tough skins or membranes in the cod, and others have none at all, whose cods are to be eaten with the peas when they be young as those of the young Kidney Bean: others carrying their fruit in the tops of the branches, are esteemed and taken for Scottish Peas, which is not very common. There be divers sorts growing wild, as shall be declared.

The Description.

1. The great Pea hath long stalks, hollow, brittle, of a whitish green colour, branched, and spread upon the ground, unless they be held up with props set near unto them: the leaf thereof is wide and long, made up of many little leaves which be smooth, white, growing upon one little stalk or stem, and set one right against another: it hath also in the upper part long clasping tendrils, wherewith it foldeth itself upon props and stays standing next unto it: the flower is white and hath about the middle of it a purple spot: the cods be long, round Cilindriforma [cylindrical]: in which are contained seeds greater than Ochri, or little Peas, which, being dry are cornered, and that unequal, of colour sometimes white and sometimes grey: the roots are small.

2. The field Pea is so very well known to all, that it were a needless labour to spend time about the description.
3. Tufted Peas are like unto those of the field, or of the garden in each respect, the difference consisteth only in that, that this plant carrieth his flowers and fruit in the tops of the branches in a round tuft or umbel, contrary to all other of his kind, which bring forth their fruit in the midst, and amongst the stalks: the root is thick and fibrous.

Fig. 1732. Kinds of Pea (3-6)
4. Peas without skins in the cods differ not from the precedent, saving that the
cods hereof want that tough skinny membrane in the same, which the hogs cannot eat
by reason of the toughness; whereas the other may be eaten cods and all the rest, even
as Kidney beans are: which being so dressed are exceeding delicate meat.

5. The wild Pea differeth not from the common field Pea in stalk and leaves,
saving that this wild kind is somewhat lesser: the flowers are of a yellow colour, and
the fruit is much lesser.

6. The Pea whose root never dies differeth not from the wild Pea, only his
continuing without sowing, being once sown or planted, setteth forth the difference.

The Place.

Peas are set and sown in gardens, as also in the fields in all places of England.
The Tufted Peas are in reasonable plenty in the West part of Kent, about Sennock or
Sevenoaks; in other places not so common.

The wild Peas do grow in pastures and arable fields in divers places, especially
about the field belonging unto Bishops Hatfield in Hertfordshire.

The Time.

They be sown in the spring time, like as be also other pulses, which are ripe in
Summer; they prosper best in warm weather, and easily take harm by cold, especially
when they flower.

The Names.

The great Pea is called in Latin *Pisum romanum*, or *Pisum maius*: in English,
Roman Peas, or the greater Peas, also garden Peas: of some, Branch Peas, French
Peas, and Rouncivals. Theophrastus and other old writers do call it in Greek *Pisos*, in
Latin also *Pisum*: in Low Dutch, *Roomsche erwitten*: in French, *Pois*. The little Pea is
called of the apothecaries everywhere *Pisum*, and *Pisum minus*: it is called in English,
Little Pea, or the Common Pea.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The Pea, as Hippocrates saith, is less windy than Beans, but it passeth
sooner through the belly. Galen writeth, that Peas are in their whole substance like
unto Beans, and be eaten after the same manner that Beans are, notwithstanding they
differ from them in these two things, both because they are not so windy as be the
beans, and also for that they have nor a cleansing faculty, and therefore they do more
slowly descend through the belly. They have no effectual quality manifest, and are in
a mean between those things which are of good and bad juice, that nourish much and
little, that be windy and without wind, as Galen in his book *Of the Faculties of
Nourishments* hath written of these and of beans.
CHAP. 511. Of the Tame or Garden Chickpea.

The Description.

Garden Chickpea bringeth forth round stalks, branched and somewhat hairy, leaning on the one side: the leaves are made of many little ones growing upon one stem or rib, and set one right against another: of which every one is small, broad, and nicked on the edges, lesser than the leaves of wild Germander: the flowers be small, of colour either white, or of a reddish purple: after which come up little short cods, puffed up as it were with wind like little bladders, in which do lie two or at the most three seeds cornered, small towards the end, with one sharp corner, not much unlike to a ram's head, of colour either white, or of a reddish black purple; in which is plainly seen the place where they begin first to sprout. The root is slender, white and long: for as Theophrastus saith, the Chickpea taketh deepest root of all the pulses.

The Place.

It is sown in Italy, Spain and France, everywhere in the fields. It is sown in our London gardens, but not common.

The Time.

It is sown in April, being first steeped in water a day before: the fruit is ripe in August.

The Names.

It is called in Latin, Chicher arietinum or Ram's Chickpeas & of the blackish purple colour, Cicer nigrum, vel rubrum, black or red Chickpea: and the other is named Candidum vel album Cicer: or white Chickpea: in English, Common
Chickpea, or Chickpeas, red Chickpea, of some, Sheep's Ciche Peas, or Sheep's Ciche Peason.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. The Chickpea, as Galen writeth in his book *Of the Faculties of Nourishments*, is no less windy than the true Bean, but it yieldeth a stronger nourisment than that doth: it provoketh lust, and it is thought to engender seed.

B. Some give the same to stallion horses. Moreover, Chickpeas do scour more than do the true Beans: insomuch as certain of them do manifestly diminish or waste away the stones in the kidneys: those be the black and little Chickpeas called, *Arietina* or Ram's Chickpeas, but it is better to drink the broth of them sodden in water.

C. Both the Ram's Chickpeas, as Dioscorides saith, the white and the black, provoke urine, if the decoction thereof be made with Rosemary and given unto those that have either the dropsy or yellow jaundice; but they are hurtful unto the bladder and kidneys that have ulcers in them.
CHAP. 512. Of Wild Chickpeas.

The Kinds.

The wild Chickpea is like to the tame (saith Dioscorides) but it differeth in seed: the later writers have set down two kinds hereof, as shall be declared.

The Description.

1. The first wild Chickpea bringeth forth a great number of stalks branched, lying flat on the ground: about which be the leaves, consisting of many upon one rib as do those of the garden Chickpea, but not nicked in the edges, more like to the leaves of Axcich: the flowers come forth fastened on small stems; which grow close to the stalks, of a pale yellow colour, and like unto ears: in their places come up little cods, in form and bigness of the fruit of garden Chickpeas, black and something hairy, in which lieth the seed, that is small, hard, flat, and glittering, in taste like that of Kidney Bean: the root growth deep, fastened with many strings.

2. There is another kind of wild Chickpea that hath also a great number of stalks lying upon the ground, about which stand soft leaves, something hairy and white, consisting of three broad leaves standing upon a middle rib, the least of which stand nearest to them, and the greatest at the very top: the flowers come forth at the bottom of the leaves many together, of colour yellow; after which grow small long husks, soft and hairy, in every one whereof is a little cod, in which lie two seeds like little Chichlings.
The Place.

These plants are sown in the parts beyond the seas for to feed their cattle with in winter, as we do tares, vetches, and such other base pulse.

The Time.

The time answereth the Vetch or Tare.

The Names.

The wild Chickpea hath no other name in Latin but *Cicer sylvestre*: the later writers have not found any name at all.

The Temperature and Virtues.

Their temperature and virtues are referred to the garden Chickpea, as Theophrastus affirms; and Galen saith that the wild Chickpea is in all things like unto that of the garden, but in physic's use more effectual, by reason it is more hotter and drier, and also more biting and bitter.
CHAP. 513. Of Lentils.

The Description.

1. The first Lentil grows up with slender stalks, and leaves which be somewhat hard, growing aslope from both sides of the rib or middle stalk, narrow and many in number like those of Tares, but narrower and lesser: the flowers be small, tending somewhat towards a purple: the pods are little and broad: the seeds in these are in number three or four; little, round, plain, and flat: the roots are small and thready.

2. The second kind of Lentil hath small tender and pliant branches a cubit high, whereon do grow leaves divided or consisting of sundry other small leaves, like the wild Vetch, ending at the middle rib with some clasping tendrils, wherewith it taketh hold of such things as are near unto it: among these come forth little brownish flowers mixed with white, which turn into small flat pods, containing little brown flat seed, and sometimes white.

The Place.

These Pulses do grow in my garden; and it is reported unto me by those of good credit, that about Watford in Middlesex and other places of England the husbandmen do sow them for their cattle, even as others do Tares.

The Time.

They both flower and wax ripe in July and August.
The Names.


The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Lentils, as Galen saith, are in a mean between hot and cold, yet are they dry in the second degree: their skin is astringent or binding, and the meat or substance within is of a thick and earthy juice, having a quality that is a little austere or something harsh, much more the skin thereof; but the juice of them is quite contrary to the binding quality; wherefore if a man shall boil them in fair water, and afterwards season the water with salt and pickle, \textit{aut cum ipsis oleo condiens} ["or as pleases his taste"], and then take it, the same drink doth loose the belly.

B. The first decoction of Lentils doth loose the belly; but if they be boiled again, and the first decoction cast away, then do they bind, and are good against the bloody flux or dangerous lasks.

C. They do their operation more effectually in stopping or binding, if all or any of these following be boiled therewith, that is to say, red Beets, Myrtles, peels of Pomegranates, dried Roses, Medlars, Service berries, unripe Pears, Quinces, Plantain leaves, Galls, or the berries of Sumach.

D. The meal of Lentils mixed with honey doth mundify and cleanse corrupt ulcers and rotten sores, filling them with flesh again; and is most singular to be put into the common digestives used among our London surgeons for green wounds.

E. The Lentil having the skin or coat taken off, as it loseth that strong binding quality, and those accidents that depend on the same, so doth it more nourish than if it had the skin on.

F. It engendereth thick and naughty juice, and slowly passeth through the belly, yet doth it not stay the loosness as that doth which hath his coat on; and therefore they that eat too much thereof do necessarily become lepers, and are much subject to cankers, for thick and dry nourishments are apt to breed melancholy.

G. Therefore the Lentil is good food for them that through waterish humours be apt to fall into the dropsy, and it is a most dangerous food for dry and withered bodies; for which cause it bringeth dimness of sight, though the sight be perfect, through his excessive dryness, whereby the spirits of the sight be wasted; but it is good for them that are of a quite contrary constitution.

H. It is not good for those that want their terms; for it breedeth thick blood, and such as slowly passeth through the veins.

I. But it is singular good to stay the menses, as Galen in his book \textit{Of the Faculties of Nourishments} affirmeth.

K. It causeth troublesome dreames (as Dioceorides doth moreover write;) it hurteith the head, sinews, and lungs.

L. It is good to swallow down thirty grains of Lentils shelled or taken from their husks, against the overcasting of the stomach.

M. Being boiled with parched barley meal and laid to, it assuageth the pain and ache of the gout.
N. With honey it filleth up hollow sores, it breaketh ashares, cleanseth ulcers: being boiled in wine it wasteth away wens and hard swellings of the throat.

O. With a Quince, and Melilot, and oil of Roses it helpeth the inflammation of the eyes and fundament; but in greater inflammations of the fundament, and great deep ulcers, it is boiled with the rind of a pomegranate, dry Rose leaves, and honey.

P. And after the same manner against eating sores that are mortified, if sea water be added; it is also a remedy against pushes, the shingles, and the hot inflammation called St. Anthony's fire, and for kibes, in such manner as we have written being boiled in sea water and applied, it helps women's breasts in which the milk is cluttered, and cannot suffer too great abundance of milk.
CHAP. 514. Of Cich or True Orobus.

This Pulse, which of most herbarists is taken for the true Orobus, and called of
some, Bitter Vetch, is one of the Pulses whose tender branches trail upon the ground,
as Theophrastus saith, and whose long tender branches spread far abroad, whereon do
grow leaves like those of the field Vetch: among which grow white flowers; after
which come long pods, that appear bunched on the outside against the place where the
seeds do lie, which are small, round, russet of colour, and of a bitter taste: the root is
small and single.

The place.

It prospereth best in a lean soil, according to Columella: it groweth in woods
and copses in sundry places of Spain and Italy, but here only in gardens.

The Time.

This is sown early and late, but if it be sown in the spring it easily cometh up,
as pleasant; and unpleasant if it be sown in the fall of the leaf.

The Names.

This is called in Greek Orobus: the shops of Germany have kept the name
Orobus: the Spaniards, Yervo, and Yervos.; in English it is
called Bitter Vetch, or Bitter Fitch, and Orobus, after the Latin name. Of some, Ers,
after the French name.
The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Galen in his first book *Of the Faculties of Nourishments* saith, That men do altogether abstain from the Bitter Vetch, for it hath a very unpleasant taste, and naughty juice, but kine in Asia and in most other countries do eat thereof, being made sweet by steeping in water; notwithstanding men being compelled through necessity of great famine, as Hippocrates also hath written, do oftentimes feed thereof; and we also dressing them after the manner of Lupines, use the Bitter Vetches with honey, as a medicine that purgeth thick and gross humours out of the chest and lungs.

B. Moreover, among the bitter Vetches the white are not so medicinable, but those which are near to a yellow, or to the colour of Ochre; and those that have been twice boiled, or sundry times soaked in water, lose their bitter and unpleasant taste, and withal their cleansing and cutting quality, so that there is only left in them an earthy substance, which serves for nourishment, that drieth without any manifest bitterness.

C. And in his book *Of the Faculties of Simple Medicines* he saith, That Bitter Vetch is dry in the later end of the second degree, and hot in the first: moreover, by how much it is bitter, by so much it cleanseth, cutteth, and removeth stoppings: but if it be overmuch used it bringeth forth blood by urine.

D. Dioscorides writeth, that Bitter Vetch causeth headache and heavy dullness, that it troubles the belly, and driveth forth blood by urine, notwithstanding being boiled it serveth to fatten kine.

E. There is made of the seed a meal fit to be used in medicine, after this manner: the full and white grains are chosen out, and being mixed together they are steeped in water, and suffered to lie till they be plump, and afterwards are parched till the skin be broken; then are they ground, and searced or shaken through a meal sieve, and the meal reserved.

F. This looseth the belly, provoketh urine, maketh one well coloured: being overmuch eaten or drunk it draweth blood by the stool, with gripings, and also by urine.

G. With honey it cleanseth ulcers, taketh away freckles, sunburns, black spots in the skin, and maketh the whole body fair and clean.

H. It stayeth running ulcers or hard swellings, and gangrenes or mortified sores; it softneneth the hardness of women's breasts, it taketh away and breaketh eating ulcers, carbuncles, and sores of the head: being tempered with wine and applied it healeth the bitings of dogs, and also of venomous beasts.

I. With vinegar it is good against the strangury, and mitigateth pain that cometh thereof.

K. It is good for them that are not nourished after their meat, being parched and taken with honey in the quantity of a nut.

L. The decoction of the same helpeth the itch in the whole body, and taketh away kibes, if they be washed or bathed therewith.

M. *Cicer* boiled in fountain water with some *Orobus* doth assuage the swelling of the yard and privy parts of man or woman if they be washed or bathed in the decoction thereof; and the substance hereof may also be applied plasterwise.
John Gerard and Thomas Johnson

N. It is also used for bathing and washing of ulcers and running sores, and is applied unto the scurf of the head with great profit.
CHAP. 515. Of the Vetch.

The Description.

1. The Vetch hath slender and four-squared stalks almost three foot long: the leaves be long, with clasping tendrils at the end made up of many little leaves growing upon one rib or middle stem; every one whereof is greater, broader, and thicker than
that of the Lentil: the flowers are like to the flowers of the Garden Bean, but of a black purple colour: the cobs be broad, small, and in every one are contained five or six grains, not round, but flat like those of the Lentil, of colour black, and of an unpleasant taste.

2. There is another of this kind which hath a creeping and living root, from which it sendeth forth crested stalks some cubit and half high: the leaves are winged, commonly a dozen growing upon one rib, which ends in a winding tendril: each peculiar leaf is broader toward the bottom, and sharper towards the top, which ends not flat, but somewhat round. Out of the bosoms of the leaves towards the tops of the stalks, on short footstalks, grow two, three or more pretty large pea-fashioned blueish purple flowers, which are succeeded by such cobs as the former, but somewhat less; which when they grow ripe become black, and fly open of themselves, and so scatter their seed. This grows in many places wild among bushes, both here and in Germany, as appears by that name Bauhin thence gives it, calling it *Vicia maxima dumerorum*. Tragus makes it his *Vicia sylvestris altera*; and judges it to be the *Aphace* of Dioscorides; and he saith the Latins call it *Osmundi*: the High Dutch, *St. Cristoffels krat*, and *Schwartz Linsen*. Tabernamontanus calls it *Cracca maior*.

3. This also hath a lasting root, which sendeth up round crested branches, a foot and sometimes a cubit high, whereon grow such leaves as those of the former, but more white and downy: the flowers, which grow on short footstalks, out of the bosoms of the leaves, towards the top of the stalks, are of a whitish colour, with veins of a dusky colour, divaricated over the upper leaf: the cobs are like those of the common Vetch. Clusius found this in some wild places of Hungary; it flowered in May: he calls it *Vicia sylvestris albo flore*.

4. Strangle Tare, called in some countries Tine, and of others Wild Vetch, is a ramping herb like unto the common Tare, ramping and climbing among corn where it chanceth, that it plucketh it down to the ground, and over-groweth the same in such sort, that it spoileth and killeth not only wheat, but all other grain whatsoever: the herb is better known than desired, therefore these few lines shall suffice for the description. This groweth pretty long, with many slender weak branches: the leaves are much smaller than the former, and end in clasping tendrils: the flowers are of a purple colour, and commonly grow but one at a joint, and they are succeeded by flat sharp pointed cobs which contain some nine or ten seeds apiece.
Fig. 1741. Small Wild Tare (5)

5. This also grows a good height, with slenderer stalks than the former, which is divided into sundry branches: the leaves grow four or six upon footstalks, ending also in clasping tendrils: the flowers grow upon pretty long but very slender footstalks, sometimes two or three, otherwhiles more, very small, and of a whitish colour inclining to blueness: which are succeeded by little short flat pods, containing commonly four or five little seeds of a blackish colour: this is the *Arachus*, *sive Cracca Minima* of Lobel; but I question whether it be that which Bauhin in his *Pinax* hath made the same with it, calling it *Vicia segetum cum siliquis plurimis hirsutis*: for that which I have described, and which exactly agrees with this figure of Lobel and that description in the *Adversaria*, hath pods very smooth without any hairiness at all. This flowers most part of summer, and grows in in most places both in corn fields and meadows.

**The Place.**

The Tare is sown in any ground or soil whatsoever.

**The Time.**

It flowereth in May, and perfecteth his seed toward September.

**The Names.**

It is called in Latin *Vicia vinciendo*, of binding or wrapping, as Varroy noteth, because, saith he, it hath likewise clasping tendrils such as the vine hath, by which it crawls upward upon the stalks of the weeds which are next unto it: of some, *Cracca*, and *Arachus*, and also *Aphaca*: it is called in High Dutch *Witken*: in Low Dutch, *Vitsen*: in French, *Verce*: in most shops it is falsely termed *Oroboe*, and *Eruum*; for *Eruum* doth much differ from *Vicia*: it is called in English, Vetch, or Fetch. The
countrymen lay up this Vetch with the seeds and whole plant, that it may be a fodder for their cattle.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. Notwithstanding I have known, saith Galen, some, who in time of famine have fed hereof, especially in the spring, it being but green; yet is it hard of digestion, and bindeth the belly.

Therefore seeing it is of this kind of nature, it is manifest that the nourishment which comes thereof hath in it no good juice at all, but engendereth a thick blood, and apt to become melancholy.
CHAP. 516. Of Chichlings, Peas, and Tare Everlasting.

The Description.

1. There is a Pulse growing in our high and thick woods, having a very thick tough and woody root; from which rise up divers long weak and feeble branches, consisting of a tough middle rib, edged on both sides with a thin skinny membrane, smooth, and of a grass green colour; whereon do grow at certain distances small flat stems, upon which stand two broad leaves joining together at the bottom: from betwixt those leaves come forth tough clasping tendrils which take hold of such things as grow next unto them: from the bosom of the stem, whereon the leaves do grow, shooteth forth a naked smooth footstalk, on which do grow most beautiful flowers like those of the Pea, the middle part whereof is of a light red, tending to a red Purple in grain; the outward leaves are somewhat lighter, inclining to a blush colour: which being past, there succeed long round cods, wherein is contained seed of the bigness of a Tare, but rounder, blackish without, and yellowish within, and of a bitter tate.

2. Of which kind there is likewise another like unto the precedent in each respect, saving that the leaves hereof are narrower and longer, and therefore called of most which set forth the description, Lathyrus angustifolia: the flowers of this are white, and such also is the colour of the fruit: the root is small, and not lasting like that of the former.
3. The stalks, leaves, and flowers of this are like those of the precedent, but the flowers are of a reddish purple colour: the cobs are lesser than those of the former, and in them are contained lesser, harder, and rounder seeds, of a dark or blackish colour. This grows not wild with us, but is sometimes sown in gardens, where it flowers in June and July.

4. This Egyptian differs not in shape from the rest of his kind; but the flowers are of an elegant blue on the inside, but of an ash colour inclining to purple on the outside: the cobs grow upon long footstalks, and are a little winged or welted, and contain but two or three little cornered seeds spotted with black spots. This flowers in June and July; and the seed thereof was sent to Clusius from Constantinople, having been brought thither out of Egypt.
5. The stalks of this are some two or three foot long, winged, weak, and lying on the ground unless they have somewhat to support them. Upon these at certain distances grow winged leaves with two little ears at their setting on to the stalk: these leaves consist of six long and narrow green leaves like those of the other plants of this kind; and these six leaves commonly stand upright, by couples one against another; otherwhiles alternately: the footstalk whereon these stand ends in clasping tendrils: the flowers are in shape like the former, but the outer leaf is of a fair red or crimson colour, and the inner leaf white: after the flowers come the cods, containing some four or five pretty large flat seeds, which swell out of the cods where they lie; which in the spaces between each seed are depressed, like that of Orobus. This is only a garden plant with us and flowers in June and July, the seed is ripe in August.

6. The Yellow Wild Tare or Vetch hath divers very small ramping stalks, tough, and leaning this way and that way, not able to stand of itself without the help of props or things that stand by it: the leaves are very thin and sharp pointed: the flowers grow alongst the leaves in fashion of the Pea flowers, of a bright yellow colour: the roots are very small, long, tough, and in number infinite, insomuch that it is impossible to root it forth, being once gotten into the ground, unless the earth be digged up with the roots and both cast into the river, or burned. Doubtless it is the most pernicious and hurtful weed of all others, unto all manner of green wholesome herbs or any wood whatsoever.

The Place.

The first grows in shadowy woods, and among bushes: there groweth great store thereof in Swainscombe wood, a mile and a half from Greenhithe in Kent, as you go to a village thereby called Betsham, and in divers other places.
The sixth groweth in most grassy pastures, borders of fields, and among grain almost everywhere.

The Time.

The time answereth the other Pulses.

The Names.

The first is called *Lathyrus*, to make a difference between it and *Lathyrus*, or Spurge: of Matthiolus, *Clymenum*: of Cordus, *Eruum sativum*: of Tragus, *Pisum Græcorum*: in English; Everlasting Peas, Great Wild Tare, and Chichling.

The second is the *Eruum album sativum* of Fuchsius; *Lathyrus* or *Cicercula* of Dodoneus; *Lathyrus angustiore gramineo folio* of Lobel.

The third is the *Aracus sive Cicera* of Dodoneus: the *Lathyrus flore purpureo* of Camerarius.

The fourth by Clusius is called *Cicercula ægyptiaca*: by Camerarius, *Aracus hispanicus, sive Lathyrus ægyptiacus*.

The fifth is not mentioned by any (that I remember) but Mr. Parkinson, in his garden of flowers, and that by the name I give you it.

The sixth is the *Lathyrus sylvestris flore luteis* of Thalius; *Legumen terræ glandibus simile* of Dodoneus: *Vicia* of Tabernamontanus: and it may be, the *Aracus flore luteo* of the *Adversaria*. I use for some resemblance it hath to *Aphaca* to call it *Aphacoides*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

The temperature and virtues are referred to the manured Tare or Vetch; notwithstanding they are not used for meat or medicine.
CHAP. 517. Of Sesame.

Fig. 1748. Sesame

The Description.

*Sesamum* hath a thick and fat upright stalk a cubit and a half high, garnished with leaves much like the Peach or Almond, but rougher, and cut in with somewhat deep gashes on their sides: flowers, somewhat shaped like those of Foxgloves, which turn into round long crested cobs, containing white flat oleous seed. Theophrastus affirmeth that there is a kind thereof which is white, bearing only one root. No kind of beast will eat this plant while it is green, because of his bitterness; but being withered and dried, the seed thereof becometh sweet, and the cattle will feed on the whole plant.

The Place.

It groweth both in Egypt and in India: *Sesama*, saith Pliny, came from the Indies; they make an oil of it. It is a stranger in England.

The Time.

It is one of the summer grains, and is sown before the rising of the seven stars, as Pliny writeth; yet Columella saith, that *Sesamum* must be sown after the autumn against the Ides of October: they require for the most part a rotten soil, which the husbandmen of Campania do call a black mould.

The Names.

The Grecians call this grain *Sesamon*; the Latins also *Sesamum*, and *Sisamum*, and often in the feminine gender *Sesama*: we are constrained for want of an English name to use the Latin: it is unknown to the apothecaries, especially the plant itself; but
the seed and oil thereof is to be found among them in other countries: we may call it Turkey Millet.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. According to some it is hot and dry in the first degree: the seed thereof, as Galen saith, is fat, and therefore being laid up it cometh to be oily very quickly; wherefore it speedily filleth and stuffeth up those that feed thereof; and overthroweth the stomach, and is slow of digestion, and yieldeth to the body a fat nourishment: therefore it is manifest that it cannot strengthen the stomach, or any part thereof, as also no other kind of fat thing: and the juice that cometh thereof is thick, and therefore it cannot speedily pass through the veins. Men do not greedily feed of it alone, but make cakes thereofwith honey, which they call *sesamidos*: it is also mixed with bread, and is of an hot temperature, for which cause it procureth thirst: and in his book *Of The Faculties of Simple Medicines* he saith, that *Sesamum* is not a little clammy and fat, and therefore it is an emplastic, and a softener, and is moderately hot: the oil which cometh thereof is of like temperature, and so is the decoction of the herb also.

B. Dioscorides writeth, That *Sesamum* is an enemy to the stomach, it causeth a stinking breath, if it remain sticking between the teeth after it is chewed.

C. It wasteth away grossness of the sinews; it is a remedy against bruises of the ears, inflammations, burnings and scaldings, pains of the joints, and biting of the poisonous horned serpent called *Cerastes*. Being mixed with oil of Roses it takes away the headache which cometh of heat.

D. Of the same force is the herb boiled in wine, but it is especially good for the heat and pain of the eyes.

E. Of the herb is made an oil used of the Egyptians, which as Pliny saith is good for the ears.

F. It is a remedy against the sounding and ringing of the ears.
CHAP. 518. Of Hatchet Vetch.

The Description.

1. The first kind of Hatchet Vetch hath many small branches trailing here and there upon the ground: upon which grow small leaves spread abroad like the leaves of the wild Vetch; among which come forth clusters of small yellow flowers, which fade away, and turn into little flat thin and brown pods, wherein is contained small reddish seed of a bitter taste.

2. The second kind of Hatchet Vetch hath many round tough and flexible branches, trailing upon the ground: whereupon do grow leaves like the former, but more like the leaves of Liquorice, and having the taste of the Liquorice root; which hath given occasion to some to deem it a kind of Liquorice: among these leaves come forth pale yellow flowers, after which there succeed small crooked pods, turning their points inwardly, one answering another like little horns, containing small flat seeds four-cornered, and fashioned like a little wedge: the root is tough, of a woody substance, and doth continue fruitfull a very long time.
3. There is another kind of *Securidaca* or Hatchet Vetch, which hath branches, leaves, and roots like the last before remembered, and differeth in that, that the flowers of this plant are mixed, and do vary into sundry colours, being on the upper part of a flesh colour, and on the lower of a white or snowy colour, with a purple stork’s bill in the middle: the leaves are in taste bitter: the cods are small like those of Bird’s-Foot, and not much unlike the cods of *Orobus*. 
4. There is likewise another kind of *Securidaca* or Hatchet Vetch, which is dedicated unto Carolus Clusius by the aforenamed Dr. Penny, who found it in the North parts of England, having leaves, roots, and branches like unto the former: but the flowers of this are white, and mixed with some purple, and bitter also in taste: the cobs are like the claw of a crab, or (as Clusius saith) like the knife which shoe-makers do use in Flanders; in which cobs are contained small reddish seed: this root also is of long continuance. Clusius doth not say that Dr. Penny found this in the North of England, but in the territory of Geneva not far from Pontetremile, amongst the bushes, and nowhere else.

5. This in the stalks, leaves, colour, and shape of the flowers is like, yet less than the first described; the cobs are also smaller, lesser, and more crooked: and herein only consists the chief difference, it is an annual plant and grows only in some gardens. Matthiolus, Lobel, Dodonæus, and other, make this their *Hedysarum*, or *Securidaca minor*.

6. This hath many erected branches, whereon great winged leaves, that is, some twenty or more fastened to one rib: the flowers are like those of the other plants of this kind; but the cobs are of an inch long, flat, or indented or toothed on their sides. But of what colour the flowers and seeds are of it is not expressed by Clusius, who only set this forth by a picture, and some pieces of a dried plant thereof, which he received from Cortusua, by the name of *Scolopedria leguminosa* or *Hedysarum peregrinum*: Cortusus had it from Honoris Bellus, who observed it growing upon the rocks at Seberico, a city of Illyria.

7. There is also another sort of Hatchet Vetch, which hath very long and tough branches trailing upon the ground, beset with leaves like the former, but much greater:
the flowers do grow at the top of the branches, of a pale colour, and turn into rough round and flat cogs, fashioned like little bucklers: the root of this (as of the first) dieth at the first approach of winter, as soon as the seed is ripe. The stalks of this are stiff and crested, growing to the height of two cubits, with leaves as large as those of Liquorice: the flowers are of a fair bright red colour: the cogs are made as it were of many rough buckler-like seeds, or rather seed vessels wherein are contained small brown seeds.

8. Horseshoe hath many stalks slender and lying upon the ground: the leaves be thin, and lesser than those of Axseed: the flowers along the stalks are little: after which come up long cogs something broad, and a little bowing; which have upon the one side deep round and indented cuts, like after a sort to an horseshoe: the root is somewhat long.

The Place.

These plants do grow in my garden: the second kind I found growing in Suffolk, in the highway on the right hand, as you go from Sudbury to Corner Church, about an hundred paces from the end of the town; as also in sundry other places of the same country and in Essex about Dunmow, and in the towns called Clare and Hedingham. Also it grows by Purfleet, about the foot of the hill whereon the windmill stands; and in divers parts of Kent.

Horseshoe cometh up in certain untilled and sunny places of Italy and Languedoc: it groweth likewise in my garden.

The Time.

These plants do flower in June, and their seed is ripe in August.

The Names.

The Grecians name this, whether it be a pulse or an infirmity among corn, Edisaron: the Latins, of the form of the seed, Securidaca, and Hedysarum: in English Axseed, Axwort, Ax-Vetch, and Hatchet Vetch: it is unknown to the apothecaries.

The second is the Fenugraecum sylvestre of Tragus and Dodonæus: the Glycyrhiza sylvestris of Gesner; and the Glaux vulgaris of Lobel.

Horseshoe is commonly called in Italian Sferro de cavallo: you may name it in Latin Ferrum equinum: in English, Horseshoe.

The Temperature.

The seeds of these plants are hot and dry of complexion.

The Virtues.

A. Being drunk it is acceptable to the stomach, and removeth stoppings out of the entrails, and of like virtue be the new leaves and tender crops of the whole plant.

B. Dioscorides showeth that it is also good for the stomach being taken in drink, and is mixed with counterpoisons.

C. And it is thought to hinder conception, if it be applied with honey before the act.

D. The seed of Axwort openeth the stoppings of the liver, the obstruction of the spleen, and of all the inward parts.
E. Horseshoe is bitter and like in nature to Axseed.

1. The Pea Earth-Nut cometh up with slender and weak stalks: the leaves be thin, and little, growing upon slender stems, with clasping tendrils at the ends, with which it embraceth and taketh hold of such things as stand near unto it: the flowers on the tops of the stalks are like to those of Peas, but lesser, of a red purple colour, in smell not unpleasant: in their places come up long cods, in which are three or four round seeds: the roots be thick, long, like after a sort to acorns, but much greater, black without, grey within, in taste like to the Chestnut: out of which beneath doth hang a long slender string: there grow out of the same also other strings, hard to the setting on of the stalk, unto which creeping aslope do grow other kernelled roots whilst the plant doth thus multiply itself.

2. This with Thalius in his Sylva Hercynia, set forth by the name of Astragalus sylvaticus, was by our author taken for, and confounded with the Terræglandes, and therefore I have put it with it, that the difference might the better appear, which is not a little to such as heedfully observe it: But our author in this is to be pardoned, seeing Dr. Turner, a man more exquisite in the knowledge of plants, and who had seen the true Terræglandes in Germany, mistook this for it, as may appear by that little tract of his of the names of plants in Latin and English, set forth Anno. 1548; for there he saith, [I have seen this herb of late in Coombe Park more astringent than it of Germany] and indeed this grows there, and is much more astringent and woody than that of Germany, and no wise fit to be eaten. The root consists of many black tuberous
particles, here and there sending forth fibres: from hence arise cornered stalks some foot high, small below, & somewhat larger above: the leaves grow forth of the stalks, consisting sometimes of two, & otherwhiles of 4 longish narrow leaves fastened to one footstalk, which at the setting on hath two little leaves or ears: forth of the bosoms of these leaves grow stalks some two inches long, each of which usually carry a couple of Pea-fashioned flowers of a purple colour: which fading, usually become blue: after these follow cuds, straight, round, and, black; and in each of them are commonly contained nine or ten white round seeds: it flowers most part of summer, and perfects the seed in July and August.

**The Place.**

1. This groweth in corn fields; both with the corn itself and also about the borders of fields among briers and brambles: it is found in divers places of Germany, but not with us that I can yet learn.

2. This is found in the woods and pastures of England, especially in Hampstead wood near London: it groweth in Richmond Heath, and in Coombe park likewise.

**The Time.**

It flowereth in June and July, the nuts after harvest be digged up and gathered.

**The Names.**

It is called in High Dutch, *Erdnussen*: in low Dutch, *Erdnoten, Erdeekelen, and Muysen metsteerten*, that is to say, tailed mice, of the similitude or likeness of domestical mice, which the black, round, and long nuts, with a piece of the slender string hanging out behind, do represent: the later writers do call it in Latin *Terræe glandes* or *Terrestres glandes*: and in Greek, *Chama balani*: in English, Pea Earth-Nut.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

A. The Nuts of these Peas being boiled and eaten, are hardlier digested than be either Turnips or Parsnips, yet do they nourish no less than the Parsnips: they are not so windy as they, they do more slowly pass through the belly, by reason of their binding quality, and being eaten raw they be yet harder of digestion, and do hardlier and slowlier descend.

B. They be of temperature meanly hot, and somewhat dry, being withal not a little binding: whereupon also they do not only stay the fluxes of the belly, but also all issues of blood, especially from the mother or bladder.

C. The root of Pea Earth-Nut stoppeth the belly, and the inordinate course of women's sickness.
CHAP. 520. Of Milk Vetch.

**The Kinds.**

There be divers sorts of herbs contained under the title of *Astragalus*, whether I may, without breach of promise made in the beginning, insert them among the *Legumina*, pulses, or herby plants, it is doubtful: but seeing the matter is disputable, I think it not amiss to suffer them thus to pass, until some other shall find a place more convenient and agreeing unto them in neighbourhood.

**The Description.**

1. The first kind of *Astragalus* hath reddish stalks, a cubit high, a finger thick, somewhat crested or furrowed, and covered over with an hairy mossiness; which divide themselves into sundry small branches, beset with leaves consisting of sundry little leaves set upon a middle rib, like the wild Vetch, placed on the small pliant branches like feathers, which are likewise covered over with a woolly hoariness; in taste astringent at the first, but afterwards burning hot: among these leaves come forth many small white flowers, in fashion like the flowers of Lupines, which before their opening seem to be somewhat yellow; the root is marvellous great and large, considering the smallness of the plant; for sometimes it groweth to the bigness of a man's arm, keeping the same bigness for the space of a span in length, and after divideth itself into two or more forks or branches, black without, and wrinkled; white within, hard and woody, and in taste unpleasant, which being dried becometh harder than an horn.
2. The second kind of *Astragalus* is a rare and gallant plant and may well be termed *Planta Leguminosa*, by reason that it is accounted for a kind of *Astragalus*, resembling the same in the similitude of his stalks and leaves, as also in the thickness of his roots, and the creeping and folding thereof; and is garnished with a most thick and pleasant comeliness of his delectable red flowers, growing up together in great tufts, which are very seemly to behold.

3. There hath been some controversy about this third kind, which I am not willing to prosecute or enter into: it may very well be *Astragalus* of Matthiolus his description, or else his *Polygala*, which doth exceeding well resemble the true *Astragalus*: his small stalks grow a foot high, beset with leaves like *Cicer* or *Galega*, but that they are somewhat lesser: among which come forth small Pea-like flowers of an orange colour, very pleasant in sight: the root is tough and flexible, of a finger thick.

4. The fourth is called of Mutonus and other learned herbarists, *Astragaloides*, for that it resembleth the true *Astragalus*, which groweth a cubit high, and in show resembleth Liquorice: the flowers grow at the tops of the stalks, in shape like the Pea bloom, of a fair purple colour, which turn into small black cods when they be ripe: the root is tough and very long, creeping upon the upper part of the earth, and of a woody substance.

**The Place.**

They grow amongst stones, in open places, or as Oribasius writeth, in places subject to winds, and covered with snow: Dioscorides' copies do add, in shadowy places: it groweth plentifully in Phenea a city in Arcadia, as Galen and Pliny report: in
Dioscorides his copies there is read, in Memphis a city of Arcadia; but Memphis is a city of Egypt, and in Arcadia there is none of that name: some of them grow in my garden, and in sundry other places in England wild; they grow in the meadows near Cambridge, where the scholars use to sport themselves: they grow also in sundry places of Essex, as about Dunmow and Clare, and many other places of that country.

Thus our author, but I should be glad to know which or how many of these he here affirms to grow wild in England; for as yet I have not heard of, nor seen any of these wild; nor in gardens with us, except the last described, which grows in some few gardens.

The Time.

They flower in June and July; and their seed is ripe in September.

The Names.

Milk Vetch is called of Matthiolus, Polygala, but not properly: of most it is called Astragalus; in Spanish, Garavancillos: in the Portuguese tongue, Alphabeca: in Dutch, Cleyn Ciciren.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Astragalus, as Galen saith, hath astringent or binding roots, and therefore it is of the number of those simples that are not a little drying, for it glueth and healeth up old ulcers, and stayeth the flux of the belly, if they be boiled in wine and drunk: the same things also touching the virtues of Astragalus Dioscorides hath mentioned: the root, saith he, being drunk in wine stayeth the lask, and provoketh urine, being dried and cast upon old ulcers it cureth them: it likewise procureth great store of milk in cattle that do eat thereof, whence it took his name.

B. It stoppeth bleeding, but it is with much ado beaten, by reason of his hardness.
CHAP. 521. Of Kidney Vetch.

The Description.

1. Kidney Vetch hath a stalk of the height of a cubit, dividing itself into other branches, whereon do grow long leaves, made of divers leaves, like those of the Lentil, covered as it were with a soft white downiness: the flowers on the tops of the stalks of a yellow colour, very many joined together, as it were in a spoky roundel: after which grow up little pods, in which is contained small seed: the root is slender, and of a woody substance. This is sometimes found with white flowers: whereupon Tabernamontanus gave two figures, calling the one Lagopodium flore luteo, and the other Lagopodium flore albo.

2. The Starry Kidney Vetch, called Stella leguminosa, or according to Cortusus, Arcturo, hath many small flexible tough branches, full of small knots or knees, from each of which springeth forth one long small winged leaf, like Bird's-Foot, but bigger: from the bosom of those leaves come forth little tender stems, on the ends whereof do grow small whitish-yellow flowers, which are very slender, and soon faded, like unto them of Bird's-Foot: these flowers turn into small sharp pointed pods, standing one distant from another, like the divisions of a star, or as though it consisted of little horns; wherein is contained small yellowish seeds: the root is tough, and deeply growing in the ground.
3. There is another sort of Kidney Vetch called Bird's-Foot, or *Ornithopodium*, which hath very many small and tender branches, trailing here and there close upon the ground, set full of small and soft leaves, of a whitish green, in shape like the leaves of the wild Vetch, but a great deal lesser, and finer, almost like small feathers; amongst which the flowers do grow, that are very small, yellowish, and sometimes whitish; which being faded there come in place thereof little crooked cods, five or six growing together, which in show and shape are like unto a small bird's foot, and each and every cod resembling a claw; in which are enclosed small seed like that of Turnips.

4. There is also another kind of *Ornithopodium*, or Bird's-Foot, called small Bird's-Foot, which is very like unto the first, but that it is much smaller: the branches or sprigs grow not above a hand or half a hand in length, spreading themselves upon the ground with his small leaves and branches, in manner of the lesser *Arachus*: the flowers are like unto those of the former, but very small, and of a red colour.

5. This Small Horned Pulse may fitly here take place: the root thereof consists of many little fibres, from which arise two or three little slender straight stalks some handful and a half or foot high: at the tops of these grow little sharp pointed crooked horns, rounder and slenderer than those of Fenugreek, turning their ends inwards like the tails of scorpions and so jointed; the flowers are small and yellow; the leaves little, and winged like those of Bird's-Foot. Pena and Lobel found this amongst the corn in the fields in Narbonne in France, and they set it forth by the name as I have here given you it.
Gerard's Herbal

The Place.

1, 3, 4. These plants I found growing upon Hampstead Heath near London, right against the Beacon, upon the right hand as you go from London, near unto a gravel pit: they grow also upon Blackheath, in the highway leading from Greenwich to Charlton, within half a mile of the town.

The Time.

They flower from June to the middle of September.

The Names.

1. This Gesner calls Vulneraria rustica: Dodonæus, Lobel, and Clusius, call it Anthyllis, and Anthyllis leguminosa.

3, 4. I cannot find any other name for there plants, but Ornithopodium: the first is called in English, Great Bird's-Foot; the second Small Bird's-Foot.

The Nature and Virtues.

These herbs are not used either in meat or medicine, that I know of as yet; but they are very good food for cattle, and procure good store of milk, whereupon some have taken them for kinds of Polygala.
CHAP. 522. Of Black Milk Tare.

The Description.

The true *Glaux* of Dioscorides hath very tough and woody branches trailing upon the ground, set full of small winged leaves, in shape like the common *Glaux*; but a great deal smaller, resembling the leaves of Tares, but rather like Bird's-Foot, of a very grey colour: amongst which come forth knobby and scaly, or chaffy heads, very like the Meadow Trefoil, of a fair purple colour: the root is exceeding long and woody, which the figure doth not express and set forth.

The Place.

The true *Glaux* groweth upon Barton Hill, four miles from Luton in Bedfordshire, upon both the sides of the declination of the hill.

The Time.

These plants do flower and flourish about Midsummer.

The Names.

These plants have in times past been called *Glaux, i. folia habens glauca, sive pallentia*; that is, having sky coloured, or pale leaves. Sithens that in times past, some have counted *Glaux* among the kinds of *Polygala*, or Milk Vetches, we may therefore call this kind of *Glaux*, Black Milk Tare.

The Nature.

These herbs are dry in the second degree.
The Virtues.

A. The seeds of the common Glaux are in virtue like the Lentils, but not so much astringent: they stop the flux of the belly, dry up the moisture of the stomach, and engender store of milk.

The Description.

1. The first kind of *Onobrychis* hath many small and twiggy pliant branches, ramping and creeping through and about bushes, or whatsoever it growtheth near unto: the leaves and all the rest of the pulse or plant is very like to the wild Vetch or Tare: the flowers grow at the top of small naked stalks, in shape like the Pea bloom, but of a purple colour laid over with blue, which turn into small round prickly husks, that are nothing else but the seed.

2. The second kind of Vetchling or Cock's-Head, of Clusius his description, hath very many stalks, especially when it is grown to an old plant, round, hard, and leaning to the ground like the other pulses; and leaves very like *Galega*, or the wild Vetch, of a bitter taste and loathsome savour: among which come forth small round stems, at the ends whereof do grow flowers spike fashion, three inches long, in shape like those of the great *Lagopus*, or Meadow Trefoil, but longer, of an excellent shining purple colour, but without smell: after which there follow small cods, containing little hard and black seed, in taste like the Vetch. The root is great and long, hard, and of a woody substance, spreading itself far abroad, and growing very deep into the ground.
3. The third kind of Vetchling or Cock's-Head hath from a tough small and woody root, many twiggy branches growing a cubit high, full of knots, ramping and creeping on the ground. The leaves are like the former, but smaller and shorter: among which come forth small tender stems, whereupon do grow little flowers like those of the Tare, but of a blue colour tending to purple: the flowers being faded, there come the small cods, which contain little black seed like a Kidney, of a black colour.

4. The fourth kind of Vetchling hath firm green hard stalks a cubit and a half high, whereupon grow leaves like to the wild Tare or Galega; but smaller and somewhat hairy, bitter and unpleasant in taste, and in the end somewhat sharp. At the top of the stalks come forth long spiked flowers, of a pale colour, and in shape like those of the second kind; which being faded, there follow small bottle cods, wherein is contained little black seed like the seed of Fenugreek, but smaller. The root is thick and hard, and of a woody substance, and lasting very long.
5. The fifth kind of *Onobrychis* hath many gross and woody stalks, proceeding immediately from a thick, fat, and fleshy tough root: the upper part of which are small, round, and pliant, garnished with little leaves like those of Lentils, or rather *Tragacantha*, somewhat soft, and covered over with a woolly hairiness: amongst which come forth little long and naked stems, eight or nine inches long, whereon do grow many small flowers of the fashion of the Vetch or Lentil, but of a blue colour tending to purple; and after them come small cobs, wherein the seed is contained.

**The Place.**

The first and second grow upon Barton hill, four miles from Luton in Bedfordshire, upon both the sides of the hill: and likewise upon the grassy banks between the lands of corn two miles from Cambridge, near to a water mill towards London; & divers other places by the way from London to Cambridge: the rest are strangers in England.

**The Time.**

These plants do flower in July; their seed is ripe shortly after.

**The Names.**

It is *anonymos*, or without a name among the later writers: the old and ancient physicaans do call it *Onobrychis*: for all those things that are found written in Dioscorides or Pliny concerning *Onobrychis*, do especially agree hereunto. Dioscorides writeth thus: *Onobrychis* hath leaves like a Lentil, but longer; a stalk a span high; a crimson flower; a little root: it groweth in moist and untilled places: and Pliny in like manner; *Onobrychis* hath the leaves of a Lentil, somewhat longer, a red flower, a small and slender root: it groweth about springs or fountains of water.
All which things and every particular are in this anonymos, or nameless herb, as it is manifest: and therefore it is not to be doubted at all, but that the same is the Onobrychis of the old writers: it may be called in English Red Vetchling, or as some suppose Medick Vetch, or Cock's-Head.

The Temperature.

These herbs as Galen hath written in his books of the Faculties of Simple Medicines, do rarefy or make thin and waste away.

The Virtues.

A. Therefore the leaves thereof when it is green, being but as yet laid upon hard swellings, waxen kernels, in manner of a salve, do waste and consume them away, but being dried and drunk in wine they cure the strangury; and laid on with oil it procureth sweat.

B. Which things also concerning Onybrychis, Dioscorides hath in these words set down: the herb stamped and applied wasteth away hard swellings of the kernels; but being drunk with wine it helpeth the strangury, and rubbed on with oil it causeth sweatings.
CHAP. 524. Of Bastard Dittany.

Bastard Dittany is a very rare and gallant plant, having many brown stalks, somewhat rough, divided into sundry small branches, garnished with leaves like Liquorice, or rather like the leaves of the Ash tree, but blacker, thicker, and more full of juice, of an unpleasant savour: among which grow flowers, consisting of five whitish leaves striped with red, whereof one which growtheth undermost hangeth down low; but the four which grow uppermost grow more stiff and upright: out of the midst of this flower cometh forth a tassel, which is like a beard, hanging also downwards, and somewhat turning up at the lower end: which being faded, there come in place four husks joined together, much like the husks or cods of Columbines, somewhat rough without, slimy to handle, and of a loathsome savour, almost like the smell of a goat; whereupon some herbarists have called it Tragium; in the cods are contained small black shining seeds like Peony seeds in colour: the roots are white, a finger thick, one twisting or knotting within another, in taste somewhat bitter.

There is another kind hereof growing in my garden, not very much differing: the leaves of the one are greater, greener, harder, and sharper pointed: of the other blacker, not so hard, nor so sharp pointed: the flowers also hereof be something more bright coloured, and of the other a little redder.

The Place.

Bastard Dittany groweth wild in the mountains of Italy and Germany, and I have it growing in my garden.
Gerard's Herbal

The Time.
It flowereth in June and July: the seed is ripe in the end of August.

The Names.
The later herbarists name it *Fraxinella*: most, *Chamomilion*, as though they should say *Humilis fraxinus* or a low Ash: in English, Bastard, or False Dittany: the shops call it *Dictamnum*, and *Diptamnum*, but not truly, and use oftentimes the roots hereof instead of the right Dittany. That it is not the right Dittany it is better known than needful at all to be confuted; and it is as evident that the same is not Dioscorides his *Pseudodictamnum*, or Bastard Dittany: but it is plain to be a kind of *Tragium* of the old Writers, wherewith it seemeth to agree in show, but not in substance.

The root of this is only used in shops, and there known by the name of *Radix Diptamni*, or *Dictamni*.

The Temperature.
The root of Bastard Dittany is hot and dry in the second degreee, it is of a wasting, attenuating, and opening faculty.

The Virtues.
A. It bringeth down the menses, it also bringeth away the birth and afterbirth; it helpeth cold diseases of the matrix: and it is reported to be good for those that have ill stomachs and are short-winded.

B. They also say, that it is profitable against the stingings and bitings of venomous serpents; against deadly poisons, against contagious and pestilent diseases, and that it is with good success mixed with counterpoisons.

C. The seed of Bastard Dittany taken in the quantity of a dram is good against the strangury, provoketh urine, breaketh the stone in the bladder, and driveth it forth.

D. The like virtue hath the leaves and juice taken after the same sort, and being applied outwardly, it draweth thorns and splinters out of the flesh.

E. The root taken with a little Rhubarb killeth and driveth forth worms.

F. Dioscorides reporteth, that the wild goats being stricken with darts or arrows, will eat *Dictam*, and thereby cause them to fall out of their bodies; which is meant of the right *Dictam*, though Dodonæus reporteth that this plant will do the like (saith our author, which I do not believe, nor doth Dodonæus affirm it.)
CHAP. 525. Of Land Caltrops.

Land Caltrops hath long branches full of joints, spread abroad upon the ground, garnished with many leaves set upon a middle rib, after the manner of Vetches; amongst which grow little yellow branches, consisting of five small leaves, like unto the flowers of Tormentil: I never saw the plant bear yellow, but white flowers, agreeing with the description of Dodonæus in each respect, save in the colour of the flowers, which do turn into small square fruit, rough, and full of prickles, wherein is a small kernel or seed: the root is white, and full of strings.

The Place.

It groweth plentifully in Spain in the fields: it is hurtful to corn, but yet as Pliny saith, it is rather to be accounted among the diseases of corn than among the plagues of the earth: it is also found in most places of Italy & France; I found it growing in a moist meadow adjoining to the wood or park of Sir Francis Carew, near Croydon, not far from London, and not elsewhere; from whence I brought plants for my garden.

The Time.

It flowereth in Tune and July: the fruit is ripe in August.

The Names.

It is called in Latin *Tribulus*: and that it may differ from the other which groweth in the water, it is named *Tribulus terrestris*: it may be called in English, Land Caltrops, of the likeness which the fruit hath with caltrops, that are instruments of war cast in the way to annoy the feet of the enemy's horses, as is before remembered in the Water Saligot.
The Temperature and Virtues.

A. In this Land Caltrop there is an earthy and cold quality abounding, which is also binding, as Galen saith.

B. The fruit thereof being drunk wasteth away stones in the kidneys, by reason that it is of thin parts.

C. Land Caltrops, saith Dioscorides, being drunk to the quantity of a French crown weight, and so applied, cureth the bitings of the Viper.

D. And if it be drunk in wine it is a remedy against poisons: the decoction thereof sprinkled about killeth fleas.
CHAP. 526. Of Spring or Mountain Peas or Vetches.

The Description.

1. This, which Clusius calls *Orobus venetus*, hath many cornered stalks some foot long, whereon grow winged leaves, four or six fastened to one rib, standing by couples one against another, without any odd leaf at the end: these leaves are of an indifferent largeness, and of a light green colour: the flowers grow upon long footstalks coming forth of the bosoms of the leaves, many together, hanging down, small, yet shaped like those of other pulses, and of a purple colour: after these follow cogs almost like those of Vetches, but rounder, red when they be ripe, and containing in them a longish white seed: the root is hard and woody, running divers ways with many fibres, and living sundry years: this varies somtimes with yellower green leaves and white flowers. It flowers in May, and grows only in some few gardens with us.

2. The stalks of this also are a foot or more high, stiff, cornered, and green; on these do grow winged leaves six or eight on a rib, after the manner of those of the last described: each of these leaves hath three veins running amongst it: the flowers in shape and manner of growing are like those of the former, but of a more elegant purple colour: which fading, they become blue. The flowers are succeeded by such cogs as the former, wherein are contained longish small variegated seed: which ripe, the cogs fly open, and twine themselves round, as in most plants of this kind: the root is black, hard, tuberous and woody, sending forth each year new shoots. This flowers in April and May, and ripeneth the seed in June. This was found by Clusius in divers mountainous woody places of Hungary: he calls it *Orobus Pannonicus*.
3. This hath stalks some cubit high, stiff, straight, and crested; whereon by
turns are fastened winged leaves, consisting of four sufficiently large and sharp
pointed leaves, whereeto sometimes at the very end grows a fifth: the veins in these run
from the middle rib towards their edges: their taste is first somewhat sourish,
afterwards bitterish. The flowers grow upon short stalks coming forth of the bosoms
of the leaves, five or six together, like those of the Vetch, but of colour white, with
some little yellowness on the two little leaves that turn upwards. The pods are like
those of the last described, and contain in them a brownish seed, larger than in any of
the other kinds. This is an annual plant, and perishes as soon as it hath perfected the
seed. Clusius gives us this by the name of *Orobus Pannonicus*. Dodonæus gives the
same figure for his *Arachus latifolius*: and Bauhin affirms this to be the *Galega
montana*, in the *Hist. Lugd.* pag. 1139. But these seem to be of two several plants; for
Dodonæus affirms his to have a living root, and such seems also that in the *Hist.
Lugd.* to be: yet Clusius saith expressly that this is an annual, and flowereth in April
and May, and groweth in some woody mountainous places of the Kingdom of
Hungary.

4. This fourth hath straight firm cornered stalks some foot or more high,
whereupon grow leaves usually four upon a footstalk, standing two against two,
upright, being commonly almost three inches long, at first of a sourish taste, but
afterwards bitter: it hath no clavicles, because the stalks need no supporters; the
flowers grow upon long footstalks spike-fashion like those of Peas, but less, and white
of colour: after these follow long blackish pods, full of a black or else spotted seed:
the roots are about the length of one's little finger, fashioned like those of the
Asphodel or Lesser Female Peony, but lesser, black without, and white within.
Clusius found this on the mountainous places nigh the baths of Baden, and in the like places in Hungary: he calls it *Orobus Pannonicus 3*.

**The Temperature and Virtues.**

These are not known nor used in physic; yet if the third be the *Galega montana* of the *Hist. Lugd.*, then it is there said to be effectual against poison, the worms, the falling sickness, and the plague.
CHAP. 527. Of Some Other Pulses.

The Description.

1. The first of these hath cornered broad stalks like those like those of Everlasting Peas, and they are weak, and commonly lie upon the ground, unless they have something to support them: the lower leaves are broad, and commonly welt the stalk at their setting on, and at the end of the first leaf do usually grow out after an unusual manner, two, three, or more other pretty large leaves more long than broad, and the middle rib of the first leaf runs out beyond the setting on of the highest of the out-growing leaves, and then it ends in two or three clasping tendrils. Those leaves that grow the lowest upon the stalks have commonly the fewest coming out of them. The flowers are like those of other pulses, of colour white: the cods are some inch and half long, containing some half dozen dark yellow or blackish small peas: these cods grow one at a joint, on short footstalks coming forth of the bosoms of the leaves, and are welted on their broader side' which stands towards the main stalk. This grows with us only in gardens. Dodonæus, Pena, and Lobel call it Ochrus sylvestris, sive ervilia.

2. The stalks of this grow up sometimes a cubit high, being very slender, divided into branches, and set unordered with many grass-like long narrow leaves: on the tops of the stalks and branches, upon pretty long footstalks grow pretty pea-fashioned flowers of a fair and pleasant crimson colour: which fallen, there follow cods, long, small, and round, wherein are nine, ten, or more round hard black shining grains: the root is small, with divers fibres, but whether it die when the seed is
 perfected, or no, as yet I have not observed. This grows wild in many places with us, as in the pasture and meadow grounds about St. Pancras' Church. Lobel and Dodoneus call this *Ervum sylvestre*; and they both partly judge it to be the first *Catanance* of Dioscorides, and by that name it is usually called. It flowers in June and July, and the seed is ripe in August.

3. This also, though it be not frequently found, is no stranger with us; for I have found it in the corn fields about Dartford in Kent and some other places. It hath long slender jointed creeping stalks, divided into sundry branches, whereon stand pretty green three-cornered leaves two at a joint, in shape and bigness like those of the Lesser Bindweed. Out of the bosoms of these leaves at each joint comes a clasping tendril, and commonly together with it a footstalk some inch or more long, bearing a pretty little pea-fashioned yellow flower, which is succeeded by a short flattish pod containing six or seven little seeds. This flowers in June, July, and August, and so ripens the seed. It is by Lobel and others thought to be the *Aphace* of Dioscorides, Galen, and Pliny; and the *Pitine* of Theophrastus, by Anguillara.

I find mention in Stowe's Chronicle, in Anno 1555, of a certain pulse or pea, as they term it, wherewith the poor people at that time, there being a great dearth, were miraculously helped: he thus mentions it: In the month of August (saith he) in Suffolk, at a place by the seaside all of hard stone and pebble, called in those parts a shelf, lying between the towns of Orford and Aldeburgh, where neither grew grass, nor any earth was ever seen; it chanced in this barren place suddenly to spring up without any tillage or sowing, great abundance of Peas, whereof the poor gathered (as men judged) above an hundred quarters, yet remained some ripe and some blossoming, as many as ever there were before: to the which place rode the Bishop of Norwich and the Lord Willoughby, with others in great number, who found nothing
but hard rocky stone the space of three yards under the roots of these Peas: which roots were great and long, and very sweet.

Gesner also, De Aquatilibus, lib. 4, pag. 256, making mention, out of Dr. Caius his letters, of the spotted English Whale, taken about that time at Lynn in Norfolk, also thus mentions those peas: "These peas, which by their great increase did such good to the poor that year, without doubt grew there for many years before, but were not observed till hunger made them take notice of them, and quickened their invention, which commonly in our people is very dull, especially in finding out food of this nature."

My worshipful friend Dr. Argent hath told me, that many years ago he was in this place, and called his man to pull away the beach with his hands, and follow the roots so long, until he got some equal in length unto his height, yet could come to no ends of them: he brought these up with him to London, and gave them to Dr. Lobel, who was then living; and he caused them to be drawn, purposing to set them forth in that work which he intended to have published, if God had spared him longer life. Now whether these Peas be truly so called, and be the same with the Pisum sylvestre perenne, or different; or whether they be rather of the stock of the Lathyrus maior, or of some other pulse here formerly described, I can affirm nothing of certainty, because I have seen no part of them; nor could gather by any that had, any certainty of their shape or figure: yet would I not pass them over in silence, for that I hope this may come to be read by some who live thereabout, that may by sending me the things themselves, give me certain knowledge of them; that so I may be made able, as I am always willing, to impart it to others.

The Temperatue and Virtues.

A. I have not found anything written of the faculties of the two first; but of Aphace, Galen saith it hath an astringent faculty like as the Lentil, and also is used to he eaten like as it, yet it is harder of concoction, but it dries more powerfully, and heats moderately. The seeds (saith he) have an astringent faculty; wherefore parched, broken, and boiled, they stay fluxes of the belly. We know (saith Dodonæus) by certain experience, that the Aphace here described hath this astringent force and faculty.
CHAP. 528. Of Bastard Rhubarb.

The Description.

1. The great Thalietrum or Bastard Rhubarb hath large leaves parted or divided into divers other small leaves somewhat snipped about the edges, of a black or dark green colour: the stalks are crested or streaked, of a purple colour, growing to the height of two cubits: at the top whereof grow many small and hairy white flowers, and after them come small narrow husks like little cods, four or five growing together: the root is yellow, long, round, and knotty, dispersing itself far abroad on the upper crust of the earth.

2. The Small Bastard Rhubarb is very like unto the precedent, but that it is altogether lesser: his stalks are a span or a foot long: his leaves be thin and tender: the root fine and slender: the little flowers grow together in small bundles or tufts, of a light yellow colour, almost white, and are of a grievous savour.

3. There is kept in some gardens a plant of this kind growing up with large stalks to the height of three cubits: the leaves are very like those of Columbines: the flowers are made of many white threads: it flowers in June, and is called Thalietrum maius hispanicum, Great Spanish Bastard Rhubarb.
Gerard's Herbal

The Place.

These Plants do grow alongst the ditch sides leading from Kentish street unto Saint Thomas a-Waterings (the place of execution) on the right hand. They grow also upon the banks of the Thames, leading from Blackwall to Woolwich, near London, and in sundry other places also.

The Time.

The flower for the most part in July and August.

The Names.

Divers of the later herbarists do call it Pigamum, as though it were Rue; whereupon most call it Ruta palustris, or Fen Rue: others, Pseudo-Rhabarbarum, and Rhabarbarum monachorum, by reason of the yellow colour of the root. But neither of their judgements is greatly to be esteemed of: they judge better that would have it to be Thalictrum, which Dioscorides describeth to have leaves something flatter than those of Coriander; and the stalk like that of Rue, upon which the leaves do grow. Pena calleth it Thalictrum, Thalietrum, and Ruta pratensis: in English, Bastard Rhubarb, or English Rhubarb: which names are taken of the colour, and taste of the roots.

The Temperature.

These herbs are hot and dry of complexion.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of Bastard Rhubarb with other pot-herbs do somewhat move the belly.

B. The decoction of the root doth more effectually.

C. Dioscorides saith, that the leaves being stamped do perfectly cure old ulcers. Galen addeth, that they dry without biting.
CHAP. 529. Of Goat's Rue.

The Description.

_Galega_ or Goat's Rue hath round hard stalks two cubits or more high, set full of leaves displayed or winged abroad; every leaf consisting of sundry small leaves set upon a slender rib, resembling the leaves of the field Vetch or Tare, but greater and longer. The flowers grow at the top of the stalk, clustering together after the manner of the wild Vetch, of a light sky colour, which turn into long pods small and round, wherein the seed is contained. The root is great, thick, and of a white colour.

The Place.

It groweth plentifully in Italy everywhere in fat grounds and by rivers' sides: it groweth likewise in my garden.

The Time.

It flowereth in July and August.

The Names.

The Italians call it _Galega_, and _Ruta Caparia_: divers name it corruptly _Gralega_: Hieronymus Frascatorius calleth it _Herba Galleca_: the Etruscans, _Lavanese_; and it is also called by divers other names in sundry places of Italy, as Gesner saith, as are _Castracane_, _Lavanna_, _Thorina_, or _Taurina_, _Martanica_, _Sarracena_, _Capragina_, _Herbanesa_, _Fænum græcum sylvestre_, and as Brasavolus witnesseth, _Giarga_. It is named in English, Italian Vetch, and Goat's Rue.

Some judge that the old physicians were wont to call it _Onobrychis_: others, _Glauce_: divers would have it to be _Polemonium_, but not so much Petr. And. Matthiolus in his commentaries, as every one of the descriptions mentioned by
Dioscorides do gainsay them; as also those, who think that Galega is Polygalon, & that the name of Galega came of Polygalon, the very description also of Polygalon is against them, for Galega is higher and greater, than that it may be called a little shrub, only of an hand-breadth high.

**The Temperature.**

This plant is in a mean temperature between hot and cold.

**The Virtues.**

A. Goat's Rue is a singular herb against all venom and poison, and against worms, to kill and drive them forth, if the juice be given to little children to drink.

B. It is of like virtue if it be fried with linseed oil, and bound upon the child's navel.

C. It is ministered unto children which are possessed with the falling evil, a spoonful every morning in milk.

D. Being boiled in vinegar, and drunk with a little treacle, it is very good against the infection of the plague, especially if the medicine be taken within twelve hours.

E. The herb itself is eaten, being boiled with flesh, as we use to eat cabbage and other worts, and likewise in salads, with oil, vinegar and pepper; as we do eat boiled Spinach, and such like; which is most excellent being so eaten, against all poison and pestilence, or any venomous infirmity whatsoever, and procureth sweat.

F. It also helpeth the bitings and stingings of venomous beasts, if either the juice or the herb stamped be laid upon the wound.

G. Half an ounce of the juice inwardly taken is reported to help those that are troubled with convulsions, cramps, and all other the diseases aforesaid.

H. The seeds do feed pullen exceedingly, and cause them to yield greater store of ggs than ordinary.

I. The juice of the leaves, or the leaves themselves bruised and applied to any part swollen by the sting, of a bee or wasp, mitigate the pain, and are a present remedy, as Mr Cannon a lover of plants, and friend of mine, hath assured me he hath seen by frequent experience.
CHAP. 530. Of Pliny's Leadwort.

Fig. 1782. Leadwort

The Description.

Dentaria or Dentillaria hath offended in the superlative degree, in that he hath hid himself like a runagate soldier, when the assault should have been given to the plant Lepidium, whereof doubtless it is a kind. But if the fault be mine, as without question it is, I crave pardon for the oversight, and do entreat thee gentle reader to censure me with favour, whereby I may more boldly insert it in this place, rather than to leave it untouched. The learned of Narbonne (especially Rondeletius) have not without good cause accounted this goodly plant for a kind thereof, because the whole plant is of a biting taste, and a burning faculty, and that in such extremity, that it will raise blisters upon a man's hand: for which cause some of the learned sort have accounted it Pliny's Molybdæna, or Ægineta his Lepidium: but the new herbarists call it Dentaria, or Dentillaria rondeletii, who made the like use hereof, as he did of Pyrethrum, & such burning plants, to appease the immoderate pain of the toothache and such like. This plant hath great thick tough roots, of a woody substance, from whence spring up long and tough stalks two cubits high, confusedly garnished and beset with long leaves, in colour like Woad, of a sharp and biting taste. The flowers grow at the top of the stalks of a purple colour: which being past, there succeed close glistening and hairy husks, wherein is contained small blackish seed.

The Place.

Pena reporteth that Dentillaria groweth about Rome, nigh the hedges and corn fields: it likewise groweth in my garden in great plenty.

The Time.

It flowereth in July and August.
Gerard's Herbal

The Names.

Ladwort is called Molybdæna, Plumbago plini, & Dentillaria rondeletii: in Italian, Crepanella: the Romans, Herba St. Antonii: in Illyria, Cucurida: in English, Leadwort.

The Temperature.

Dentillaria is of a caustic quality.

The Virtues.

A. It helpeth the toothache, and that as some say if it be holden in the hand some small while.
CHAP. 531. Of Rue, or Herb-Grace.

The Description.

1. Garden Rue or planted Rue, is a shrub full of branches, now and then a yard high, or higher: the stalks whereof are covered with a whitish bark, the branches are more green: the leaves hereof consist of divers parts, and be divided into wings, about
which are certain little ones, of an odd number, something broad, more long than round, smooth and somewhat fat, of a grey colour, or greenish blue: the flowers in the top of the branches are of a pale yellow, consisting of four little leaves, something hollow: in the middle of which standeth up a little head or button four-square, seldom five-square, containing as many little coffers as it hath corners, being compassed about with divers little yellow threads: out of which hang pretty fine tips of one colour; the seed groweth in the little coffers: the root is woody, and fastened with many strings: this Rue hath a very strong and rank smell, and a biting taste.

2. The second being the wild or mountain Rue, called *Ruta sylvestris*, is very like to garden Rue, in stalks, leaves, flowers, seed, colour, taste, and savour, saving that every little leaf hath smaller cuts, and is much narrower: the whole plant dieth at the approach of winter, being an annual plant, and must either stand till it do sow himself, or else must be sown of others. Thus saith our author, but this second is a variety of the garden Rue differing from the former only in smallness.

3. This plant is likewise a wild kind of Rue, and of all the rest the smallest, and yet more virulent, biting, and stinking than any of the rest: the whole plant is of a whitish pale green, agreeing with the last before mentioned in each respect, save in greatness, and in that the venomous fumes or vapors that come from this small wild Rue are more noisome and hurtful than the former. The leaves lie spread upon the ground, & are very finely cut and divided: the whole plant is of such acrimony, that Clusius saith he hath oftener than once observed it to pierce through three pair of gloves to the hand of the gatherer; and if any one rub his face with his hand that hath newly gathered it, forthwith it will mightily inflame his face. He tells a history of a Dutch student of Montpellier that went with him a-simpling, who putting some of it between his hat and his head to keep him the cooler, had by that means all his face presently inflamed and blistered wheresoever the sweat ran down.

4. There is another wild Rue growing upon the mountains of Savoy and other places adjoining, having a great thick root, from which do arise great shoots or stalks; whereon do grow leaves very thick and fat, parted into divers longish sections, otherwise resembling the leaves of the first described, of a strong and stinking smell: the flowers grow on the tops of the stalks, consisting of four small yellow leaves: the seeds are like the other.

5. *Harmel* is one of the wild Rues: it bringeth forth immediately from the root divers stalks of a cubit high; whereupon do grow green leaves diversely cut into long pieces, longer and narrower than those of the wild strong smelling Rue: the flowers be white, composed of five white leaves: the fruit is three square, bigger than that of the planted Rue, in which the seed lieth: the root is thick, long, and blackish: this Rue in hot countries hath a marvellous strong smell; in cold countries not so.
6. This, which Matthiolus gave for Sideritis 3, and Lobel, Clusius, and others for Ruta canina, hath many twiggy branches some cubit and half high; whereon grow leaves resembling those of the Papaver Rhaea or Argeone, lesser, thicker, and of a blackish green: the flowers are of a whitish purple colour, fashioned somewhat like those of Antirrhinum: the seed is small, and contained in such vessels as those of Rue, or rather those of Blattaria. The whole plant is of a strong and ungrateful smell: it grows in the hot and dry places about Narbonne in France, Ravenna and Rome in Italy.

**The Place.**

Garden Rue joyeth in sunny and open places: it prospereth in rough and bricky ground, and among ashes: it cannot in no wise away with dung.

The wild are found on mountains in hot countries, as in Cappadocia, Galatia, and in divers provinces of Italy and Spain, and on the hills of Lancashire and York.

Pliny saith that there is such friendship between it and the fig tree, that it prospers nowhere so well as under the fig tree. The best for physic's use is that which groweth under the fig tree, as Dioscorides saith: the cause is alleged by Plutarch in the first book of his Symposiacs or Feasts, for he saith it becometh more sweet and mild in taste, by reason it taketh as it were some part of the sweetness of the fig tree, whereby the over-rank quality of the Rue is allayed; unless it be that the fig tree whilst it draweth nourishment unto itself, it likewise draweth away the rankness of the Rue.

**The Time.**

They flower in these cold countries in July and August; in other countries sooner.
Gerard's Herbal

The Names.


The Temperature.

Rue is hot and dry in the later end of the third degree; and wild Rue in the fourth: it is of thin and and subtle parts: it wastes and consumes wind, it cutteth and digesteth gross and tough humours.

The Virtues

A. Rue or Herb-Grace provokes urine, brings down the sickness, expels the dead child and afterbirth, being inwardly taken, or the decoction drunk; and is good for the mother, if but smelled to.

B. Pliny, *lib. 20. cap. 13*, saith it opens the matrix, and brings it into the right place, if the belly all over and the share (the breast say the old false copies) be anointed therewith: mixed with honey it is a remedy against the inflammation and swelling of the stones, proceeding of long abstinence from venery, called of our English mountebanks the colt's evil, if it be boiled with barrow's grease, Bay leaves, and the powders of Fenugreek and Linseed be added thereto, and applied poultice-wise.

C. It takes away crudity and rawnness of humours, and also windiness and old pains of the stomach.

D. Boiled with vinegar it easeth pains, is good against the stitch of the side and chest, and shortness of breath upon a cold cause, and also against the pain in the joints and huckle bones.

E. The oil of it serves for the purposes last recited: it takes away the colic and pangs in the guts, not only in a clyster, but also anointed upon the places affected. But if this oil be made of the oil pressed out of linseed it will be so much the better, and of singular force to take away hard swellings of the spleen or milt.

F. It is used with good success against the dropsy, being applied to the belly in manner of a poultice.

G. The herb a little boiled or scalded, and kept in pickle as Samphire, and eaten, quickens the sight.

H. The same applied with honey and the juice of Fennel is a remedy against dim eyes.

I. The juice of Rue made hot in the rind of a pomegranate and dropped into the ears, takes away the pain thereof.

K. St. Anthony's fire is quenched therewith: it killeth the shingles, and running ulcers and sores in the heads of young children, if it be tempered with ceruse or white lead, vinegar, and oil of roses, and made into the form of *nutritum* or *triapharmicon*.

L. Dioscorides saith, that Rue put up in the nostrils stayeth bleeding.
M. Of whose opinion Pliny also is; when notwithstanding it is of power rather to procure bleeding through the sharp and biting quality that it hath.

N. The leaves of Rue beaten and drunk with wine, are an antidote against poisons, as Pliny saith.

O. Dioscorides writeth, that a twelve-penny weight of the seed drunk in wine is a counterpoison against deadly medicines or the poison of Wolf's-Bane, Ixia, Mushrooms, or Toadstools, the biting of serpents, stinging of scorpions, spiders, bees, hornets, and wasps; and it is reported that if a man be anointed with the juice of Rue these will not hurt him; and that the serpent is driven away at the smell thereof when it is burned, insomuch that when the weasel is to fight with the serpent, she armeth herself by eating Rue against the might of the serpent.

P. The leaves of Rue eaten with the kernels of walnuts or figs stamped together and made into a mass or paste, is good against all evil airs, the pestilence or plague, resists poison and all venom.

Q. Rue boiled with Dill, Fennel seed, and some sugar, in a sufficient quantity of wine, assuageth the torments and gripping pains of the belly, the pains in the sides and breast, the difficulty of breathing, the cough, and stopping of the lungs, and helpeth such as are declining to a dropsy.

R. The juice taken with Dill, as aforesaid, helpeth the cold fits of agues, and alters their course: it helpeth the inflammation of the fundament, and pains of the gut called Rectum intestinum.

S. The juice of Rue drunk with wine purgeth women after their deliverance, driving forth the secondine, the dead child, and the unnatural birth.

T. Rue used very often either in meat or drink, quencheth and drieth up the natural seed of generation, and the milk of those that give suck.

V. The oil wherein Rue hath been boiled, and infused many days together in the Sun, warmeth and chafeth all cold members if they be anointed therewith: also it provoketh urine if the region of the bladder be anointed therewith.

X. If it be ministered in clysters it expels windiness, and the torsion or gnawing pains of the guts.

Y. The leaves of garden Rue boiled in water and drunk, causeth one to make water, provoketh the terms, and stoppeth the lask.

Z. Ruta sylvestris or wild Rue is much more vehement both in smell and operation, and therefore the more virulent or pernicious; for sometimes it fumeth out a vapor or air so hurtful that it scorched the face of him that looketh upon it, raising up blisters, weals, and other accidents; it venometh their hands that touch it, and will infect the face also, if it be touched with them before they be clean washed; wherefore it is not to be admitted unto meat or medicine.

The End of the Second Book.

End of Volume 4